User Guide

English

Brisque Part 2 - Preparing Files for Output

339Z1R388B

www.creo.com

Copyright

Copyright © 2002 Creo Inc. All rights reserved.

No copying, distribution, publication, modification, or incorporation of this document, in whole or part, is permitted without the express written permission of Creo. In the event of any permitted copying, distribution, publication, modification, or incorporation of this document, no changes in or deletion of author attribution, trademark legend, or copyright notice shall be made.

No part of this document may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, published, used for commercial exploitation, or transmitted, in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the express written permission of Creo Inc.

This document is also distributed in Adobe Systems Incorporated's PDF (Portable Document Format). You may reproduce the document from the PDF file for internal use. Copies produced from the PDF file must be reproduced in whole.

Trademarks

The Creo wordmark, Creo logo, and the names of the Creo products and services referred to in this document are trademarks of Creo Inc.

Adobe, Acrobat, the Acrobat logo and PDF are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Inc., and are registered in the US Patents and Trademark Office and may be registered in other jurisdictions.

Apple, AppleTalk, AppleShare, EtherTalk, LocalTalk, Macintosh, and Laserwriter are trademarks of Apple Computer Inc.

Microsoft, Microsoft Windows NT, Microsoft Windows 2000, and Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corp.

Xerox is a registered trademark of Xerox Corp.

Other brand or product names are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

FCC Compliance

The Creo equipment referred to in this document complies with the requirements in Part 15 of FCC Rules for a Class A computing device. Operation of the Creo equipment in a residential area may cause unacceptable interference to radio and TV reception, requiring the operator to take whatever steps are necessary to correct the interference.

Limitation of Liability

The product, software or services are being provided on an "as is" and "as available" basis. Except as may be stated specifically in your contract, Creo Inc. expressly disclaims all warranties of any kind, whether express or implied, including, but not limited to, any implied warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and non-infringement.

You understand and agree that Creo Inc. shall not be liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special, consequential or exemplary damages, including but not limited to, damages for loss of profits, goodwill, use, data or other intangible losses (even if Creo has been advised of the possibility of such damages), resulting from: (i) the use or the inability to use the product or software; (ii) the cost of procurement of substitute goods and services resulting from any products, goods, data, software, information or services purchased; (iii) unauthorized access to or alteration of your products, software or data; (iv) statements or conduct of any third party; (v) any other matter relating to the product, software, or services.

The text and drawings herein are for illustration and reference only. The specifications on which they are based are subject to change. Creo Inc. may, at any time and without notice, make changes to this document. Creo Inc., for itself and on behalf of its subsidiaries, assumes no liability for technical or editorial errors or omissions made herein, and shall not be liable for incidental, consequential, indirect, or special damages, including, without limitation, loss of use, loss or alteration of data, delays, or lost profits or savings arising from the use of this document.

Patents

This product is covered by one or more of the following U.S. patents:

4456924	5247352	5412737	5600448	5802034	5996499	6136509
4500919	5249067	5420702	5608822	5813346	5998067	6147789
4558302	5283140	5420722	5615282	5818498	6003442	6158345
4743091	5291273	5459505	5625766	5854883	6014471	6159659
4992864	5296935	5473733	5636330	5861904	6016752	6164637
5049901	5313278	5481379	5649220	5861992	6031932	6180325
5079721	5323248	5488906	5650076	5864651	6043865	6181362
5103407	5325217	5497252	5652804	5875288	6060208	6181439
5111308	5331439	5508828	5691823	5894342	6063528	6186068
5113249	5333064	5509561	5691828	5900981	6063546	6189452
5122871	5339176	5517359	5696393	5934196	6072518	6191882
5124547	5343059	5519852	5699174	5942137	6090529	6204874
5132723	5355446	5526143	5699740	5946426	6096461	6208369
5150225	5359451	5532728	5708736	5947028	6098544	6252522
5153769	5359458	5561691	5713287	5958647	6107011	6260482
5155782	5367360	5568595	5739819	5966504	6112663	
5157516	5367388	5576754	5742743	5969872	6115056	
5208818	5384648	5579115	5764381	5973801	6121996	
5208888	5384899	5592309	5771794	5986819	6130702	
5247174	5412491	5594556	5785309	5995475	6134393	

Creo Inc.
3700 Gilmore Way
Burnaby, B.C., Canada
V5G 4M1
Tel: (1) (604) 451-2700
Fax: (1) (604) 437-9891

http://www.creo.com

399Z1R388B

Table of Contents

16 Preview 1

Overview ... 2
Previewing PostScript Files ... 4
The Navigator Window ... 5
The Info Window ... 6
The Toolbar ... 8
Viewing the Image ... 11
Setting the PostScript Preview Parameters ... 12
HighRes. Handling ... 17
Modifying the RIP Processing Parameters ... 20
Viewing File Information ... 22
Exiting Preview ... 23
Previewing PDF Files ... 24
Brisque-support Acrobat Reader Version ... 24
Previewing Brisque Files, Jobs and Other Raster Files ... 25
Preview Information and Display Windows ... 26
Viewing Job and File Information ... 34
Undoing the Trapping of the File ... 36
Page Menu Options ... 36
Exiting Preview ... 37

17 PreFlight Check 39

Introduction ... 40
Starting PreFlight Check on the Brisque ... 40
PostScript PreFlight Check ... 42
Use Original APR/OPI Path ... 44
PreFlight Check Results ... 45
File Information ... 46
Results ... 46
PDF PreFlight Check ... 53
Using PitStop Preflight Profiles and Action Lists ... 53
Selecting PDF Pages to Check ... 66
Defining High Resolution Replacement Parameters ... 66
Defining the PDF Output File Parameters ... 67
Creating a PDF Report File ... 68
Show Report ... 72
Exiting the PreFlight Check Window ... 72

18 RIP 73

Overview ... 74
Activating the RIP Application on the Brisque ... 75
Defining RIP Parameters ... 76
- Output File Size and Orientation ... 77
- PDF Params ... 83
- Output File Type and Resolution ... 85
- Keep Blank Pages ... 87
- Separation Handling ... 88
- Vignette Handling ... 90
- CT Handling ... 95
- Color Handling ... 97
- HighRes. Handling ... 104
- Default Font ... 108
- Spot Colors ... 109
- Spot Handling ... 111
- Handling Spot Colors in a Template or for the Default RIP Parameters ... 119
- Defining the Destination of the Output Job ... 121
- Overwrite Output ... 126

19 High-Resolution File Paths 129

Introduction ... 130
Defining Global High-Resolution File Paths ... 132
Path Priority ... 134
- Rearranging Path Priority ... 135

20 Creo APR/OPI Workflow 137

Introduction ... 138
Preparing Jobs for Output Using APR Workflow ... 139
- Generating the Low Resolution Files ... 140

PDF APR Workflow ... 141
- Installing the SCDistillerStartup.ps file for Acrobat Distiller 4.x ... 141

21 Normalize 143

Overview ... 144
Typical Workflows ... 145
Activating Normalize on the Brisque ... 146
Defining Normalize Parameters ... 147
- Normalize Job Options ... 147
- Normalizer Window Tabs ... 149
- General Tab ... 149
- Compression Tab ... 152
- Fonts Tab ... 156

Security Tab 158
Advanced Tab 160

22 PDF2Go 163

Overview 164
PDF Conversion Process 165
Activating PDF2Go on the Brisque 166
Defining PDF2Go Parameters 167
PDF2Go Job Options 167
PDF2Go Window Tabs 169
General Tab 169
Compression Tab 175
Advanced Tab 179
Security Tab 183
Editing PDF2Go Files 185

23 Latin Font Handling 187

Font Library 188
Handling PostScript Fonts 189
Managing Latin Fonts 190
Font Substitution 191
Backing Up Fonts 191
Restoring Fonts 192
Deleting Fonts 193
Replacing a Corrupted Library 193
Downloading Additional Latin Fonts from Macintosh 194
Downloading PostScript Fonts from PC 195
Converting TrueType Fonts for Brisque 196

24 Composite Font Handling 199

Overview 200
Managing Composite Fonts 202
Font Substitution 203
Renaming Composite Fonts 203
Creating a New Composite Font Library 204
Checking the Security Function 205
Update OCF 205
Disable KanjiCID 205
Disable All Composite Fonts 205
Use In RIP 206
Installing Asian Fonts 207
Important Notes Prior to Installation 207
Installing Asian Fonts 208
Installing Morisawa and Adobe Type OCF Kanji Fonts (Optional) 210

Preliminary Step ... 210
Installing Morisawa and Adobe Type Kanji OCF Fonts ... 211
Verifying Font Installation ... 214
Installing FontWorks OCF Kanji Fonts (Optional) ... 215
Preliminary Step ... 215
Installing the FontWorks OCF Fonts ... 216
Verifying Font Installation ... 221
Installing Morisawa NewCID Kanji Fonts (Optional) ... 222
Important Notes Before Installation ... 222
Preliminary Step ... 222
Installing the Morisawa NewCID Fonts on Brisque ... 227
Installing FontWorks CID Kanji Fonts (Optional) ... 229
Important Notes Before Installation ... 229
Preliminary Step ... 229
Installing the FontWorks CID Kanji Fonts on Brisque ... 234

25 Full Auto Frames (Trapping) 237

Introduction ... 238
What is Framing ... 238
Full Auto Frames (FAF) ... 239
Accessing FAF ... 241
The General Tab ... 243
Use Interactive FAF Workflow ... 243
Frame Thickness ... 244
Frame Process Colors ... 244
Preserve Color Protection ... 245
Automatic White Frame ... 245
Automatic Zones Protection ... 246
Create Backup ... 246
The Advanced Tab ... 247
Decision ... 248
Frame Direction ... 251
Color ... 252
Full Black ... 252
Yellow Treatment ... 253
Frames for Colors That Include Spot Colors ... 255
Base Coat Definition ... 256
Varnish Definition ... 256
The CT Handling Tab ... 257
CT to LW ... 257
The Sep. Handling Tab ... 261
Appendix A. Frames for Colors That Include Spot Colors ... 263
Equations and Definitions ... 263
Spot Color and Spot Color ... 265
Overprint Spot Color and Overprint Spot Color / Spot Color ... 266
Multi-spot Color and Non-process Color ... 267

Multi-spot Color/Spot Color and Process Color 268
Full Black Color + Non-process Color 269
Overprint Spot Color and Process Color 270

26 Translate 271

Launching the Translate Application 273
Selecting the Input File Type 275
Defining the Translation Parameters 276
Translating Files 276
Defining the Mask Quality 277
Defining the Low Resolution (PSImage) Parameters 278
Defining the Output File Destination 280
TIFF/IT File Format Support 281
TIFF/IT File Formats 281
Translating TIFF/IT Files 282
Customizing the TIFF/IT-P1 File Extensions 283
Translate Workflows 284
Creating Brisque Hot Folders that Initiate the Translation (Preliminary Step) 284
PS/2-Brisque Workflow 287
Translating Multi-Page Files 289
Whisper-Brisque Workflow 290
SciNet Span Pro and SciNet Profile 292
Translate Workflows at a Glance 298
Raster File Descriptions, Notes and Limitations 300
Raster File Descriptions 300
Important Notes 301
General Limitations 302
TIFF/IT Limitations 302
Brisque Job to FLYT Limitations 302
Supported Translations 303
Translation Notes 304
Exiting the Translate Application 305

27 CopyDot Workflow 307

Overview 308
Scanning in LW Mode 310
Scanning in Bitmap Modes 311
LW Scanning Versus Bitmap Scanning 313
Half Resolution Workflow 314
Sample Workflows 315
PS Image for Partial Page Workflow 315
DCS 1/DCS 2 for Partial Page Composite Workflow 316
DCS 1/2 for Partial Page Pre-separated Workflow 317
NLW for Whole Page Workflow 318
PDF/EPS Composite (new format) for Whole Page Workflow 319

Appendix A. ... 321
The Renaissance File Formats on Brisque 4.0 ... 321
Appendix B. ... 323
The Purup-Eskofot Monoscan File Formats on Brisque 4.0 ... 323

28 Export PS 325

Supported Input and Output File Formats ... 326
Defining the Export PS Parameters ... 327
Defining the General PostScript Parameters ... 328
Defining the Screening Parameters ... 332
Defining the PostScript Transformation Parameters ... 334
Designating the Output Destination ... 334

29 Store 343

Defining the Store Parameters ... 345
Storage Modes ... 348
Short Term (Work in Progress) ... 348
On Press ... 349
Long Term ... 349
Defining the Storage Location ... 350
Defining a Host Storage Device ... 350
Defining a Removable Storage Device ... 355
Job Handling ... 358
Copy ... 358
Move ... 358
Move Job and Original Pages ... 359
Overwrite Files ... 359
Automatic Store of Marks ... 359
Attaching Files to the Stored Job ... 360
Updating the Storage Manager ... 362
Adding Comments ... 363
Monitoring the Store Progress ... 363
The Storage Folder on the Destination Volume ... 363
Controlling the Progress of the Store Operation ... 364
Viewing the Store Progress ... 364
Storage Mode Properties and Limitations ... 366

30 The Storage Manager 367

The Expanded Storage Manager ... 369
The Storage Mode Panes ... 370
Viewing Jobs ... 371
The Job Storage Icons ... 371
Viewing the Layout and Separation Data of a Stored Job ... 371
Viewing Jobs with the Filters ... 372

Viewing More than One List at a Time ... 372
Viewing the Store Information of a Job ... 373
Handling Jobs in the Storage Database ... 377
Selecting a Job ... 377
Quick Re-Expose of a Stored Job ... 377
Resume to Queue ... 381
Opening a Job Ticket Directly from the Storage Manager ... 382
Performing a Brisque Operation on a Job Stored in the Long Term Mode ... 384
Changing the Storage Mode of Stored Jobs ... 384
Deleting Jobs from the Storage Database ... 385

31 Versioning on the Brisque 387

Overview ... 388
The Creo Versioning XT ... 389
The Versioning Module ... 389
Output Operations ... 389
Using Creo Versioning XT ... 390
Creating the PS File (on the Macintosh) ... 390
RIPping the Composite PS File ... 402
Using the Versioning Module ... 403
Preparing Input Files ... 403
Setting the Versioning Operation Parameters ... 407
Outputting Version Jobs ... 414
Preview ... 415
FAF ... 417
Proof ... 418
Improof ... 420
Expose ... 423
Plate Expose ... 425

16

Preview

Overview 2
Previewing PostScript Files.....4
Previewing PDF Files.....24
Previewing Brisque Files, Jobs and Other Raster Files.....25

Overview

The **Preview** application enables you to interactively preview the following file types:

- PostScript files
- PDF files
- Brisque files (such as, CTs, LWs, Pages, Jobs, Imposition Jobs and Packaging Jobs)
- Raster files (such as TIFF/IT and 1-bit TIFF files)

The options and display windows vary according to the type of file previewed and, in the case of PostScript and Brisque files, also depend on the parameters of the related template.

You can preview **two** separate files at the same time. The files can be of the same type or of two different types. You can simultaneously perform all Preview operations on two open files.

Preview of PostScript files enables you to preview and modify the RIP parameters of PostScript files before sending them to RIP. Preview generates a simulated RIP to screen, which you can use to verify that the existing RIP parameters will create the desired output, before actually sending the files to RIP. You can scale, crop, rotate, and flip the image prior to actual RIP.

Preview of PDF files enables you to preview PDF files prior to RIP using Adobe's Acrobat Reader 4.0.5.



Note: Acrobat Reader (for UNIX platform) is installed as part of the Brisque software package.

Preview of Brisque files enables you to preview a CT, LW, Page, or Job file after the RIP, to verify the RIP results and color separations, check trapping and perform color measurement.

Brisque Preview also enables you to preview **Imposition Jobs** and **Packaging Jobs** before output in order to verify the availability of Pages, the position of the Pages in the Layout, color separations, trapping and marks.



For detailed information, see the *Chapter 34, Previewing An Imposition Job* and *BrisquePack Step-and-Repeat User Guide*, *Chapter 3, Previewing a Packaging Job*.

Preview of other raster files enables you to preview different types of raster formats such as TIFF/IT and 1-bit TIFFS.

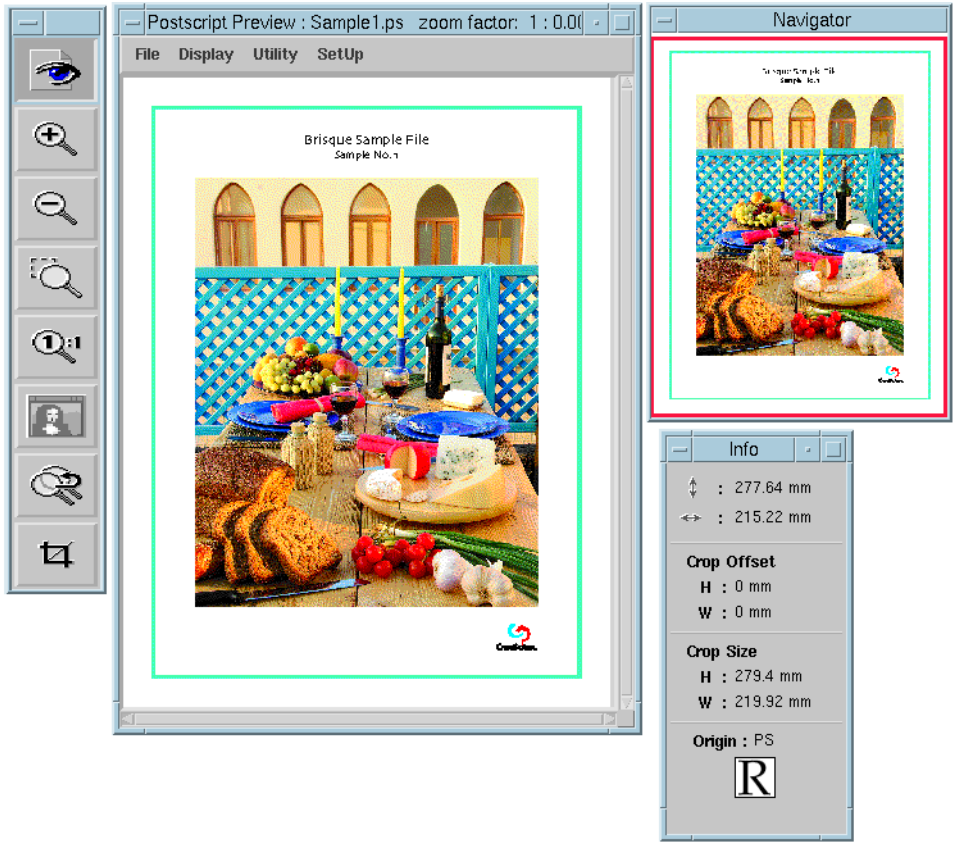
To preview a selected file, do one of the following:

- Drag the file from the File Manager onto the **Preview** icon.
- Include **Preview** as a step in a template/Hot Folder, and then drag a file to that template/Hot Folder.
- From the File Manager window, double-click an image file (but not a folder).
- Select a file in the File Manager, right-click and from the popup menu, select **Preview**.

Previewing PostScript Files

The **PostScript Preview** performs a simulated RIP to screen so that you can preview the results and adjust certain RIP parameters before actually RIPping the PostScript file.

When you preview a PostScript file, the Display window, the Navigator window, the Info window, and the toolbar appear.



The Display window enables you to preview all or part of the PostScript file.

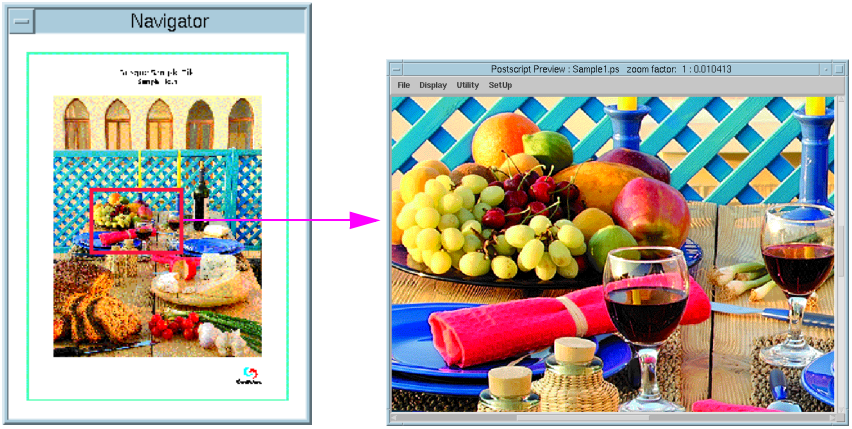
The Navigator window indicates which part of the image is displayed in the Display window. You can use the Navigator window to define exactly how much and which part of the image is displayed in the Display window.

The Info window displays the currently defined output values.

The toolbar provides a number of tools that facilitate working with the Preview application.

The Navigator Window

The Navigator window always displays the entire image regardless of how much of the image is displayed in the Display window. A rectangle (the band) surrounds the area of the image that appears in the Display window. If the entire image is displayed in the Display window, the band appears around the entire display area of the Navigator window.



- To open the Navigator window, from the **Utility** menu, select **Navigator**. Repeat to close the Navigator window.

To view more or less of the image, resize the band.

- To resize the band, point to a corner or side of the rectangle. When the mouse pointer becomes an arrow pointing to a short line or corner, click and hold the left mouse button and drag in or out until the rectangle surrounds the required portion of the image.

To display a different area of the image, move the band.

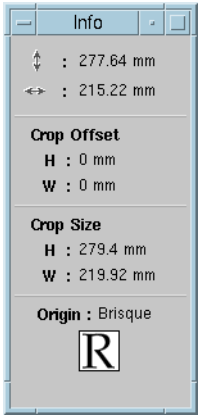
- To move the band, point inside the rectangle, and when the pointer becomes a four-headed arrow, click and hold the left mouse button and drag until the band surrounds the required portion of the image.
- To change the color of the band, from the **Utility** menu, select **Zoom Band Color**, and then from the popup list select a color.

The Info Window

The Info window indicates the current output values.

Note: If the Preview is part of a template that also includes RIP, these values overwrite the defined RIP parameters.

➢ To open the Info window, from the **Utility** menu, select **Crop Info**; the Info window is displayed. Repeat to close the window.



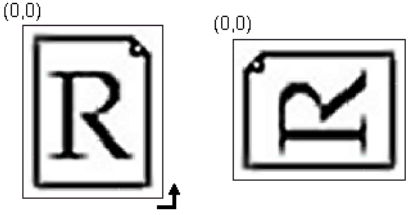
The first two values in the Info window indicate the location of the mouse pointer inside the Display window.

The **Crop Offset** values indicate the currently defined offset.

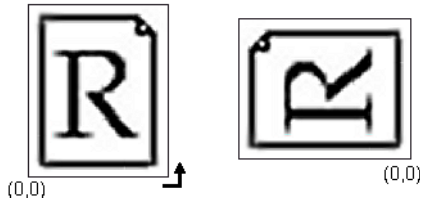
The **Crop Size** values indicate the final output size of the image.

The **Origin** value indicates whether the values displayed in the Info window are relative to the **Brisque** origin or to the **PostScript** origin:

- **Brisque** specifies that before and after the RIP, the (0,0) coordinate is located on the **top left** corner of the image (even if the image is rotated).



- **PostScript** specifies that before the RIP, the (0,0) coordinate is located on the **bottom left** corner of the image. During the RIP, if the image is rotated, the (0,0) coordinate moves with the image to a new position.



The **R** icon displayed below the **Origin** box illustrates the orientation of the image determined by the **Flip** and **Rotate** parameters. To change the orientation, see *Changing the Image Orientation on page 21*.

To switch the **Origin**, from the **Setup** menu, click **Origin type**, then from the popup list, select **PS** or **Brisque**; the values displayed in the Info window change accordingly.

The Toolbar

The toolbar provides tools that facilitate working with the Preview application.

➢ To display/hide the toolbar, from the **Utility** menu, select **Tools**.



Click the **Apply** tool after using the **Crop** tool and to confirm certain command options such as **Flip** and **Rotate**.



To zoom in on a selected point of the image, click the **Zoom-In** tool, and then double-click in the Display or Navigator window; the magnification of the image increases by 100%, centering around the point you clicked.



To zoom out from a selected point of the image, click the **Zoom-Out** tool, and then click in the Display or Navigator window; the magnification of the image decreases by 50%, centering around the point you clicked.



To zoom in on a specific area of the image, click the **Mark Area** tool, and then click in the Display window and while holding down the left mouse button, drag over the area that you want to zoom in. When you release the mouse, the defined area fills the entire Display window.

Alternatively, You can drag or resize the **band** in the Navigator window.



Click the **Preview 1:1** tool and then click in the Display window to view the image at its actual resolution, where one PostScript point equals one screen pixel.

In **Preview** of raster files, one picture pixel equals one screen pixel.



Click the **Fit Preview to Window** tool to resize the image so that the entire image is displayed in the Display window.



Click the **Undo** tool to undo the last commands (up to 5 actions).



The **Crop** tool is only relevant in a template workflow where the Preview step precedes a RIP. See the following Crop procedure for details.



Important: If you crop a single Page that is part of a multi-Page document, all the Pages in the document are also cropped the same way.

To crop the image using the mouse:

1. Click the **Crop** tool, then, in the Display window, drag the mouse pointer over the area that you want to output.
2. Release the mouse button; a *marching ants* rectangle indicates the area that remains after you confirm the Crop command.



Note: To change the color of the *marching ants* rectangle, from the **Utility** menu, select **Crop Band Color**, then from the popup list, select a color.

3. To redefine the location of the rectangle that defines the crop, click and hold the left mouse button inside the rectangle and drag.
4. To redefine the dimensions of the crop rectangle, point to a corner or side of the rectangle, and drag in or out.
5. To apply the resulting crop and view it, click the **Apply** tool (or, from the **Display** menu, select **Apply Interactive**); only the cropped portion of the original image is displayed in the Display window.



Note: Whether or not you click the **Apply** tool or the **Apply Interactive** option, as soon as a crop is defined it is automatically applied during the RIP operation, as long as you exit the Preview application using the **File>Exit** command or the **File>Exit and Continue** command.



Note: You cannot **Undo** the crop command without undoing all other changes made to the image during the work session. To **undo** all changes, from the **Display** menu, select **Revert to original**.

To crop the image using a precise size:

1. From the **Setup** menu, select **File Setup**; the Preview Parameters window is displayed.
2. In the **PS Preview** tab, select **Custom Size**, and define the **Size** and **Offset** values in the boxes on the left.
3. Click **OK** to exit the Preview Parameters window; the cropped rectangle is displayed in the Display window.

Viewing the Image

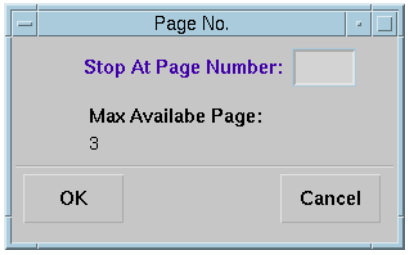
The Display window shows the PostScript file as defined in the template. If the entire image does not appear inside the window, for example, when it is zoomed in, you can use the scroll bars to move around.

Note: It may take a long time for a large file to display. To increase the speed of the simulated RIP, reduce the size of the Display window.

Stop at Page No.

When working with a multi-page PostScript file, this feature lets you page through the file until you reach the page you defined.

1. From the **Setup** menu, select **Stop at Page No.**; the Page No. dialog box is displayed.



2. In the **Stop At Page Number** box, type the number of the page that you want to go to and click **OK**.

3. Select the  tool; the application displays each page, one at a time until it reaches the designated page.

Note: Max Available Page displays the total number of pages the PostScript file contains.

Setting the PostScript Preview Parameters

If the PostScript Preview is a step in a template that also includes RIP, output parameters that you modify in the Preview are automatically implemented in the RIP operation that follows.



Note: If you preview a PostScript file by dragging it onto the **Preview** icon, or by double-clicking it in the File Manager, any changes you make to the simulated RIP are not implemented when you actually RIP the file.

To edit the Preview default operation parameters:

1. From the **Operations** panel, double-click the **Preview** icon; the Preview dialog box is displayed.
2. Select **Open Preview Parameters** and click **Open**; The Preview Parameters window is displayed.



Note: You can directly open the Preview Parameters window. To do so, access the **Preview Preferences** utility in the **Prefs** application and modify the default launch mode.

3. Make sure the **PS Preview** tab is selected.

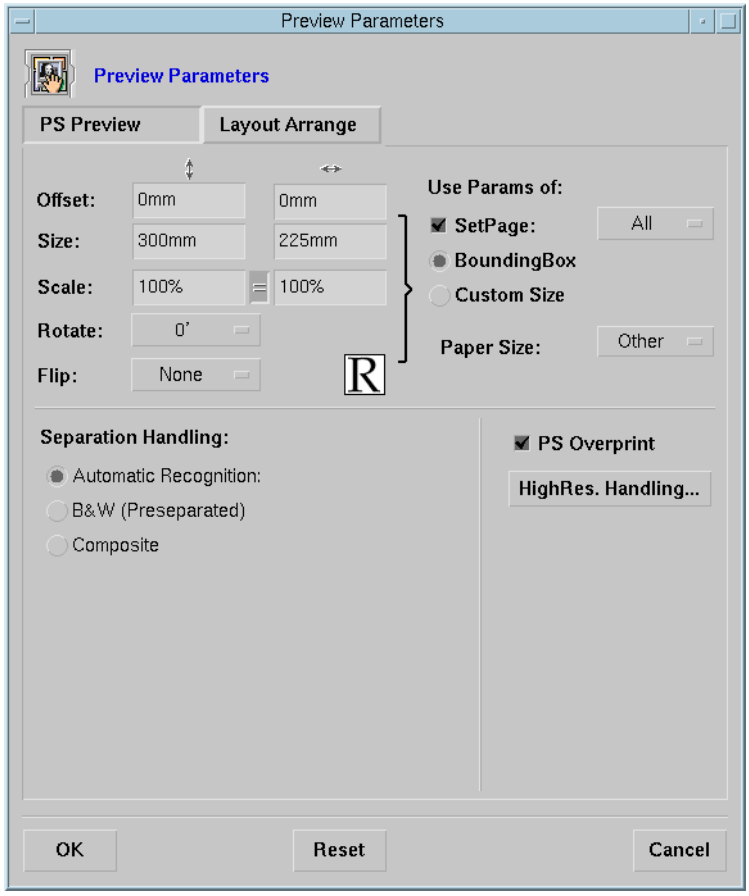
To edit the Preview parameters of a specific PostScript file:

1. From within the Job Ticket Editor, double-click the **Preview** icon; the Preview Parameters window is displayed.
2. Select the **PS Preview** tab.

To edit the Preview parameters of a specific template:

1. From within the Template Builder, double-click the **Preview** icon; the Preview Parameters window is displayed.
2. Select the **PS Preview** tab.

The options defined in the **PS Preview** tab of the Preview Parameters window determine how the application simulates the RIP.



Offset

Defines the position of the bottom left of the image relative to the PostScript Origin.

Size

Defines the size of the output file(s). Typing values in the **Size** boxes that are smaller than the values defined in the input file results in a cropped image.

Scale

Defines the size of the output file relative to the original (100%). A decrease from the default (100%) decreases the size of the output file.



Note: Make sure though that you do not press enter after typing in a value, otherwise the other box receives the same value as the one you just typed in.

To type different height and width values, click the equal button to change it to an unequal sign and type the value.



Note: If you scale the height and width of an image proportionately, the change is not reflected in the Preview Display window.

Rotate

Rotates the output file(s) counter-clockwise by 0^{o}, 90^{o}, 180^{o} or 270^{o}.

Flip

Flips the image vertically or horizontally.

Use Params of

Tells the application from where to take the output **Size** and **Rotate** parameters. The available options are: **SetPage**, **Bounding Box**, and **Custom Size**.



Note: If you access the Preview Parameters window via the Template Builder, or if you are editing the default operation parameters, the **Custom Size** option does not appear.

SetPage

This option is available only if the input PostScript file has **SetPage** parameters in its header.

Select the **SetPage** check box, then from the **SetPage** menu list, select either **All** or **Size Only**:

- Select **Size Only** to instruct the application to use only the **Size** and **Offset** information from the parameters defined in the header of the input file.
- Select **All** to use all **SetPage** parameters (**Size**, **Offset**, **Rotate**, and **Flip** values) defined in the header of the input file.



Note: The **Rotate** and **Flip** values defined by the SetPage device of the input file appear in the boxes on the left.

Bounding Box

Select the **Bounding Box** option, and the **Size** parameter defined by the Bounding Box of the input file overwrites any size values defined in the Preview Parameters window.

If you are editing the RIP parameters of a specific Job, via the Job Ticket Editor, as long as the file has already been RIPped at least once, the size values defined by the input file appear in the **Size** boxes on the left.

If you select both **SetPage** and **Bounding Box** options, then the Preview looks first for **SetPage** parameters. If none are found then it looks for a Bounding Box. If no Bounding Box information is available, the Preview uses the parameters of **Offset**, **Size**, **Rotate**, and **Flip**, defined in the **PS Preview** tab of the Preview Parameters window.

Custom Size

Select the **Custom** option, and the file is output according to the size parameters defined in the **PS Preview** tab. (This option only appears when you are modifying the parameters for a specific file, that is, when you drag and drop a PostScript file on the **Preview** icon).

Paper Size

Provides a list of predefined paper sizes.

- Select a paper size from the list (except for the **Other** option) and the size parameters automatically replace any existing values in the **Size** boxes.
- To define a custom paper size, select **Other** from the list, then type the desired Page dimensions in the **Size** boxes on the left.

Separation Handling

Select one of the following options to determine whether the input PostScript file is handled as a composite file or as a pre-separated file during the simulated RIP.

Automatic Recognition

This option enables **Preview** to automatically identify the input file as either a composite file or a pre-separated file. This is the default option.

B&W (Preseparated)

This option instructs the application to handle the input file as a pre-separated file. You can use this option as a manual override for the **Automatic Recognition** option.

Composite

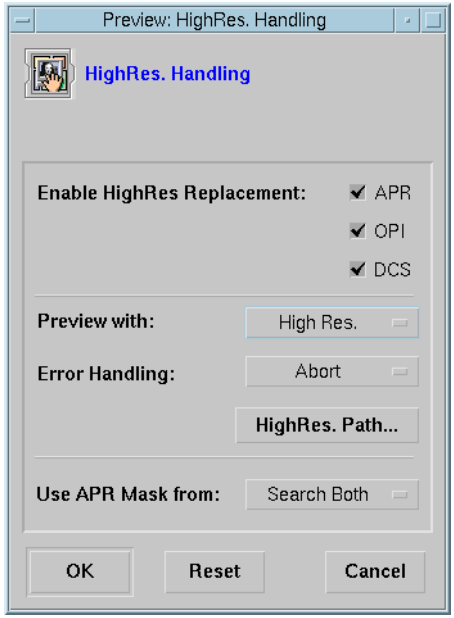
This option instructs the application to handle the input file as a composite file only. Only use this option if for some reason Preview is identifying your file as pre-separated and you are certain the file is a composite file. You cannot use this option to force the application to handle a pre-separated file as if it were a composite color file.

PS Overprint

Select this option to instruct the Preview application to use the overprint information defined in the input file. This option is relevant only to composite files.

HighRes. Handling

➢ Click the **HighRes. Handling** button; the Preview: HighRes. Handling dialog box is displayed.



Enable HighRes Replacement

This option is only relevant when the **Preview with High Resolution** option is selected (see next option). It instructs the Preview application to selectively search specific formats (APR, OPI, DCS) for the high-resolution replacement files during the simulated RIP.

➢ Select any of the high-resolution format(s) check boxes (**APR**, **OPI**, **DCS**) that you want to include in the Preview. High-resolution formats not selected are not included in the simulated RIP Preview.

Preview with

High Resolution

Instructs the application to use the indicated high-resolution file path to search for the high-resolution replacement files during the simulated RIP.

Proofing Data

Instructs the application to use the low-resolution file (PSImage) for the simulated RIP and to ignore the high-resolution file.

Error Handling

This option is only relevant when using a template with **Preview** and **RIP** and when the **Preview with High Resolution** option is selected. It defines what happens if the high-resolution image is not located.

Continue

If you select **Continue**, and the high-resolution image is not located, the Preview does not fail and continues to the RIP.

Abort

If you select **Abort**, and the high-resolution image is not located, the Preview fails and does not continue to the RIP and an error message is displayed.

HighRes. Path...

Click this button to display the HiRes Handling dialog box. See *Chapter 19, High-Resolution File Paths* for more details.

Use APR Mask from

During the RIP, masking data can be taken from the low-resolution file, the high-resolution file, or from both. Use this parameter to tell the RIP from where to retrieve the masking data.

PSImage

The RIP uses the masking data contained in the PSImage file.

High Res

The RIP uses the masking data contained in the high-resolution file.

Not all high-resolution files contain masking data. Brisque CTs cannot contain masking data. If you select this option, and the high-resolution file is a Brisque CT, the RIP uses the masking data contained in the PSImage file anyway.

Search Both

This option instructs the RIP to use masking data taken from the PSImage files over masking data taken from the high-resolution files. When selected, RIP searches first in the PSImage files and if not found, it searches in the high-resolution files. This is the default option.

Modifying the RIP Processing Parameters

To modify the RIP processing parameters of the file that you are previewing, you can access the Preview Parameters window, or use various menu options.

If the PostScript Preview is a step in a template that also includes RIP, output parameters that are modified within Preview are automatically implemented in the RIP parameters.

To modify the RIP parameters via the Preview Parameters window:

1. From the **Setup** menu, select the **File Setup** option; the Preview Parameters window is displayed.



For a detailed description of the options contained in this window, see *page 13*.

2. Select the **PS Preview** tab, define the desired parameters, and click **OK**; you are returned to the Display window.

Specifying the Source of Crop Values

Use the following options in the **Display** menu to specify whether the Crop parameters are defined by the input file, or by the custom parameters defined in the Preview Parameters window.

- To define the **SetPage device** in the input PostScript file as the source of cropping and orientation parameters, from the **Display** menu, select **Apply to SetPage Params**.
- To define the **Bounding Box** as the source of cropping information, from the **Display** menu, select **Apply to Bounding Box**.

Changing the Image Orientation

The **Rotate** and **Flip** commands in the **Setup** menu change the orientation of an image.

To rotate an image counter-clockwise:

1. From the **Setup** menu, select **Rotate.**
2. Select a **Rotate** value (90^{o}, 180^{o} or 270^{o}).
3. Click the **Apply** tool; the image is rotated counter-clockwise accordingly.

To undo a Rotate command:

1. From the **Setup** menu, select **Rotate** and then **Reset.**
2. Click the **Apply** tool.



Note: In addition to the Rotate commands, the rotated state of the image in the Display window may be due to a template definition or a SetPage parameter. The Navigator window, however, reflects the orientation defined by the file, but not the rotate commands applied from within the Preview application.

To flip an image:

1. From the **Setup** menu, select **Flip.**
2. Select a **Flip** option (**Horizontally**, **Vertically** or **Both**).
3. Click the **Apply** tool; the image is flipped accordingly.

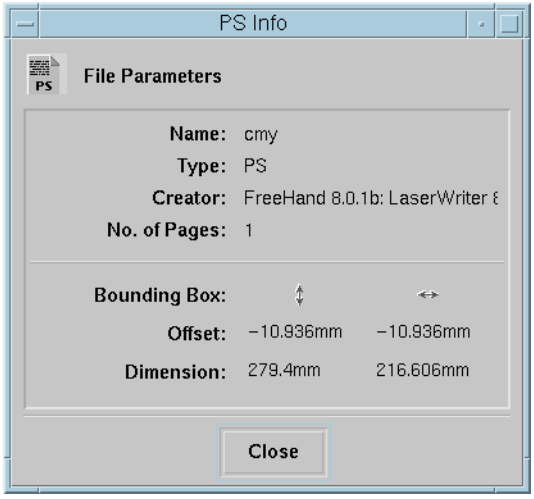
To undo a Flip command

1. From the **Setup** menu, select **Flip** and then **Reset.**
1. Click the **Apply** tool.

Viewing File Information

You can view information about the PostScript file from within the Preview application.

➢ From the **File** menu choose **File Info**; the PS Info window is displayed.



Note: Bounding Box information appears only if comments are found in the Bounding Box of the input PostScript file.

Exiting Preview

Before exiting the PostScript Preview, you can revert to the output parameters of the PostScript file as they were defined when the Preview operation was activated, or you can save the changes that you made during the PostScript Preview.

As long as the PostScript Preview is a step in a template that also includes RIP, any changes that you made during the PostScript Preview are automatically applied to the RIP operation that follows.

- To revert to the original parameters, from the **Display** menu, select **Revert to Original**.
- To exit the PostScript Preview and proceed to the next step in the Job Ticket (such as, PreFlight Check or RIP), from the **File** menu, select **Exit & Continue.**
- To exit the PostScript Preview and put the Job Ticket on hold, from the **File** menu, select **Exit & Hold Job**. To learn how to release the hold, see *Chapter 9, The Queue Manager*.
- To exit the PostScript Preview and terminate the Job Ticket (if one exists), from the **File** menu, select **Exit & Terminate Job**.
- To create a template with RIP parameters based on the parameters defined in the PostScript Preview operation, from the **Utility** menu, select **Create JT template**; a Template Builder window is displayed, showing the RIP operation icon. You can modify the template, then name it and save it (the file extension is added automatically).

Previewing PDF Files

The Brisque **PDF Preview** displays the PDF file in the Adobe Acrobat Reader application that is installed as part of the Brisque package.

The PDF Preview does **not** perform a simulated RIP of the file, and cannot be used to modify the RIP parameters prior to RIPping. You can however, use all the operations and features available in Acrobat Reader.

To preview a PDF file:

1. Apply the Preview application to a PDF file; The Job Ticket Editor is displayed.



Note: You cannot modify the Preview parameters from this window. Double-clicking the Preview icon or any button in the window results in an error message.

2. Click **Submit**; the Acrobat Reader application is launched.

Brisque-support Acrobat Reader Version

The Acrobat Reader version supplied with the Brisque package is almost identical to the standard UNIX version, except for some slightly enhanced features for operation on the Brisque.



Note: Some of the regular options such as **Open** and **Print** are unavailable in this version.

New Option	Description
Exit And...	In Acrobat Reader, the **File** menu command contains the added **Exit And...** option. This command has two settings: • **Terminate Job** - exits and closes the PDF Preview (Acrobat Reader) and aborts the workflow. • **Hold Job** - exits and closes the PDF Preview (Acrobat Reader) and places the workflow on hold. Use the Queue Manager to view the status of the Job and to proceed with the workflow (see *Chapter 9, The Queue Manager*).

Previewing Brisque Files, Jobs and Other Raster Files

On the Brisque, you can preview **CT** files, **LW** files, **Brisque Pages** and **Brisque Jobs** (including **Imposition** and **Packaging Jobs**) and verify their color separations.

When you preview an **Imposition** or **Packaging Job**, the Preview application enables you to also edit the Job.



For details, see the*Chapter 34, Previewing An Imposition Job, Chapter 35, Working with a Layout* and the *BrisquePack Workflow Solutions* User Guide.

When you preview Brisque files (CT, LW, Page, Job), you can easily switch to the Layout mode to create a layout.

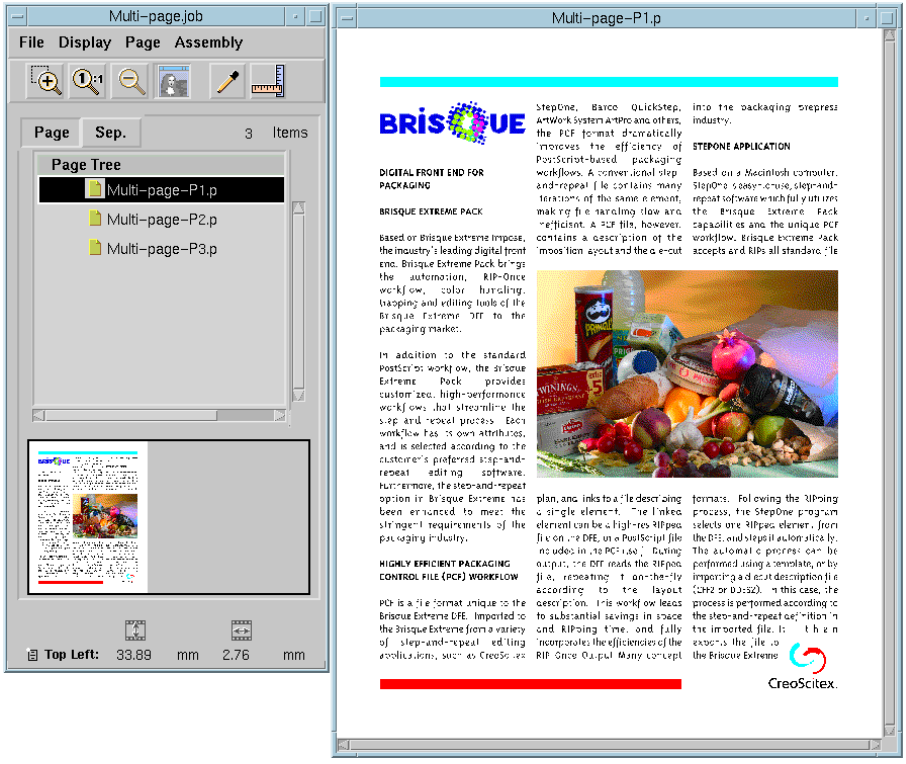
When you preview raster files, such as TIFF/IT or 1-bit TIFF files, several menu options are slightly different.

To activate Preview, perform one of the following:

- While holding down the CTRL key, drag a Job, an Imposition Job, a Packaging Job, a Page, a CT, or a LW file onto the **Preview** icon.
- Define a Hot Folder/Template that includes the **Preview** operation after the RIP operation.
- Double-click a file (but not a folder, that is, only CT or LW files) from the File Manager window.
- Right-click a file, and select **Preview** from the popup menu.

Preview Information and Display Windows

When a Brisque file activates the Preview application, the Preview Information window and the Preview Display window are displayed.



The Information window contains the toolbar, the List section (**Page** and **Sep.** tabs) and the Navigator section. Its menu options enable you to manipulate the image in different ways.

Note: The **Page** menu is active only for multi-Page files.

The Display window displays a Brisque file. For a multi-Page file, it displays the first Page (p suffix). To preview another Page, you select its name from the **Page** tab in the List section of the Information window.

The Toolbar

The **toolbar** tools help you work with the image.



To zoom-in on a selected point of the image, click the **Zoom-In** tool, and then click in the Display window or Navigator section; the magnification of the image increases, centering around the point you clicked.
To zoom in on a specific area of the image, click the **Zoom-In** tool, and then, click in the Display window and while holding down the left mouse button, drag over the area that you want to zoom in. When you release the mouse, the defined area fills the entire Display window.
Alternatively, you can drag or resize the **band** in the Navigator section.



Click the **Preview 1:1** tool to view the image at its actual resolution, where one picture pixel equals one screen pixel.



To zoom out to the previous magnification level of the image, click the **Zoom-Out** tool.



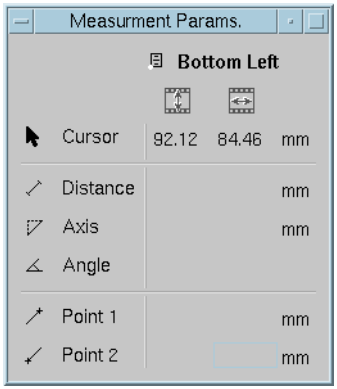
Click the **Fit Preview to Window** tool to resize the image so that the entire image is displayed in the Display window.



Click the **Color Select** tool to view the separation values of a selected point on the image. For further instructions, see *Spot Checking* on page 32.



Click the **Measurement** tool to measure the distance between two points on the image; the Measurement Params dialog box is displayed.



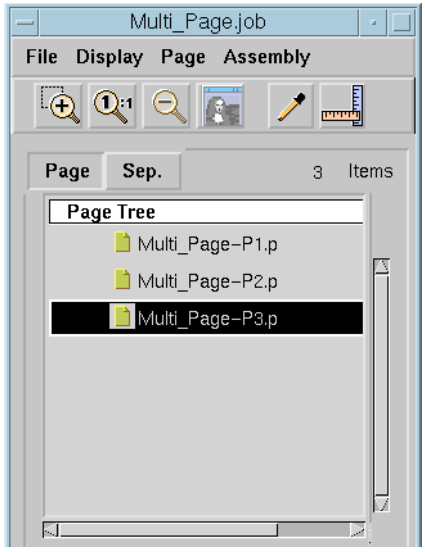
1. To define Point 1, click on the desired point in the Display Area.
2. To Define Point 2, click on the desired point in the Display area; a connecting line is displayed between Point 1 and Point 2.

The dialog box updates the values of the points and the connecting line as follows:

- **Cursor** - the location of the pointer
- **Distance** - the length of the line connecting Point 1 and Point 2
- **Axis** - the distance of the line from the axis
- **Angle** - the angle of the line relative to the axis
- **Point 1** - the location of Point 1
- **Point 2** - the location of Point 2

The Page Tab

When previewing multi-Page Job, the **Page** tab displays a Page Tree that lists all Pages in the previewed Job.



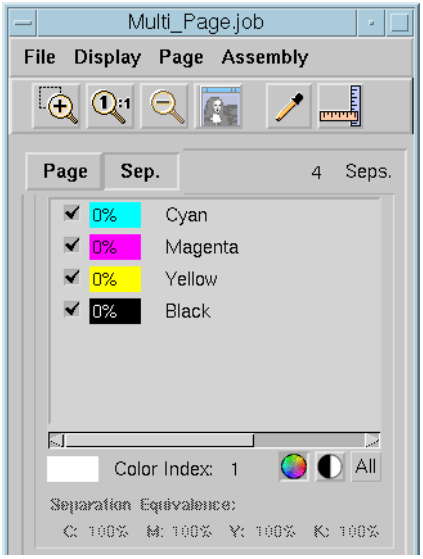
➢ To preview one of the Pages, select it from the tree.

Alternatively, use the **Page** menu as described in *Page Menu Options on page 36*.

When previewing a single Page, a CT file or an LW file, the Page Tree lists one page.

The Sep. (Separations) Tab

The **Sep.** tab displays information about the color separations in the previewed Page.



The main area of the Separations tab lists the four basic color separations plus any spot color separations detected by the RIP application in the PostScript file.

- To display the file in black and white, one separation at a time, click the **B&W** icon.

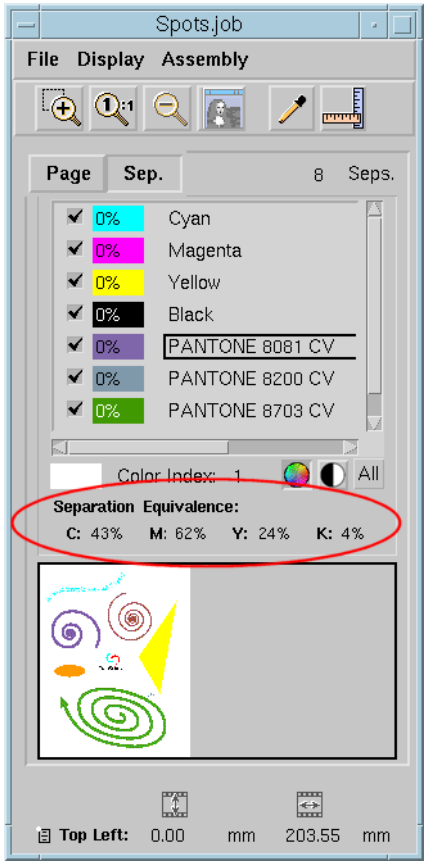
Note: The **B&W** option does not allow you to select multiple separations simultaneously.

- To view a selected separation(s) in color, click the **Color** icon, and then verify that the check box next to the particular separation(s) you want to view is selected. The Display window displays the selected separation(s). You may select several color separations.
- To display a color composite with all its separations, make sure the **Color** icon is selected, and then click the **All** button.
- To clear all color separations, click **All** again.
- To clear a separation, click the check box of the separation.

➢ To switch between viewing LW elements only, CT elements only, and viewing LW and CT elements together, from the **Display** menu, select either **LW Only**, **CT Only** or **LW & CTs**. For example, if the image was FAFed, you may want to view the LW elements only.

Separation Equivalence

Separation equivalence values indicate the percentage of each process color necessary to simulate the spot color with process colors. You can view only one set of color separation equivalence values at a time. You cannot view separation equivalence values for the Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, or Black separations.



➢ In the **Sep.** tab, click the name of a spot separation; the Separation Equivalence boxes indicate the percentage values for this spot color.

Spot Checking

You can check colors in various locations on the image to verify that color information was properly transferred during the RIP.

- To resize an image so that it is easier to work with, from the **Display** menu select **Zoom In** or **Zoom Out**, or use one of the **Zoom** Tools.



- Click the **Color Select** tool from the toolbar; the Preview Information window displays the Sep. tab. Click a point on the image in the Display window. The separation percentage values of the selected point are indicated in the column to the left of the color separation names.



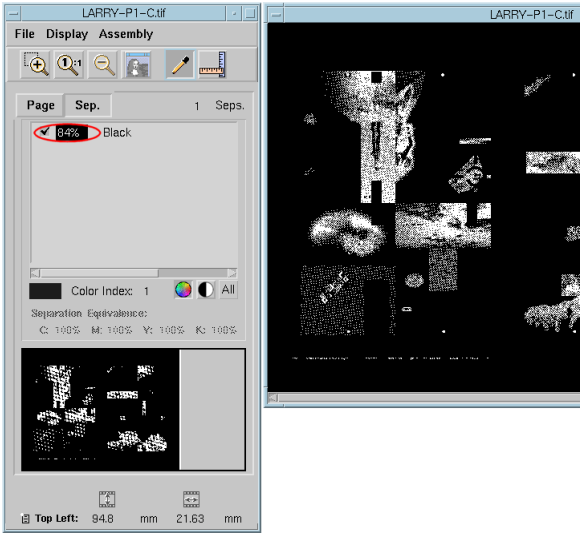
Important: When previewing an Page, a **Color Index** number and a color sample appear at the bottom of the Preview Information window.

Tint Checking (in 1 bit TIFF files only)

When you preview 1 bit TIFF files, you can check the average tint value of a rectangular area in the file.

- To check the tint value of an area, click the **Color Select** tool and drag the mouse over the area you want to check in the Preview Display window.

  A red rectangle appears over the area you select and the tint value (in percent) is indicated in the Preview Information window, in the column to the left of the color separation names. Once you stop dragging the mouse, the red rectangle disappears.

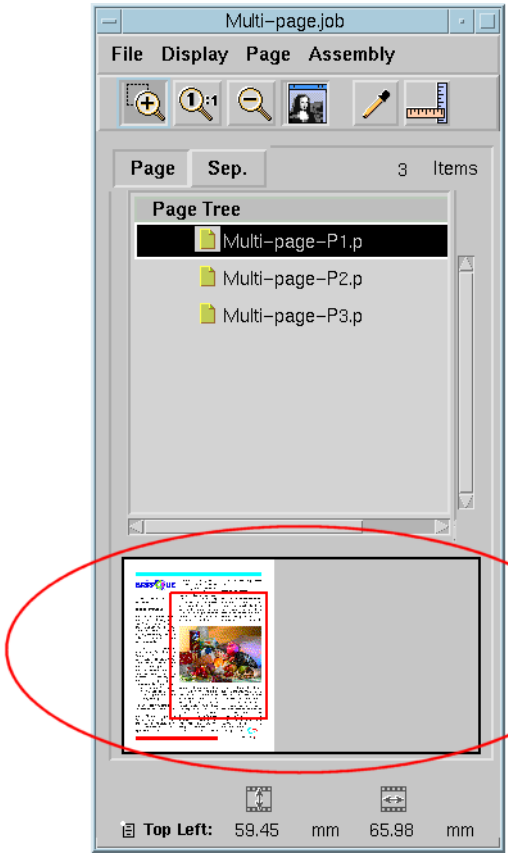


The Navigator Section

The **Navigator** section is described in detail in the PostScript Preview section in *The Navigator Window on page 5*.

The following differences are present when previewing Brisque files:

- To move the band, right-click inside the **band**, and drag.
- To resize the band, right-click on a side or corner of the band, and drag.

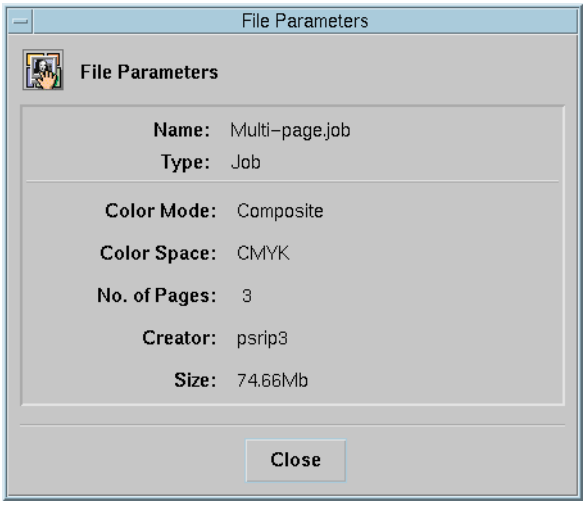


The boxes below the Navigator section indicate the coordinates of the mouse pointer on the image in the Display window. By default, the coordinates are set relative to **Top Left**. To change the default to **Bottom Left**, access the **Preview Preferences** of the **Prefs** application. See *Chapter 4, Brisque Utilities & Preferences*.

Viewing Job and File Information

To view Job information:

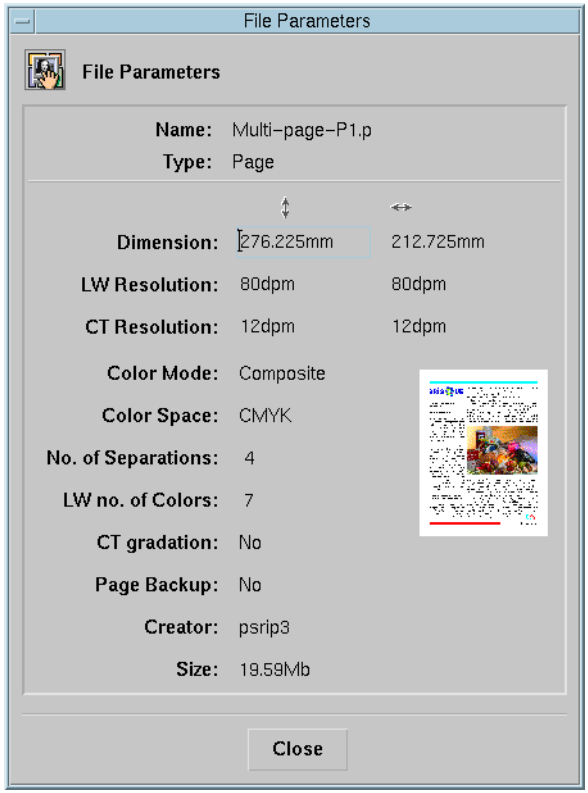
➢ From the **File** menu, select **Job Info**; the File Parameters window is displayed. You may view, but not edit, the information that is displayed in this window.



To view file information:

➢ From the **File** menu, select **File Info**; the File Parameters window is displayed. You may view, but not edit, the information displayed in this window.

Note: Depending on the type of the previewed file, different parameters appear in the window.



Undoing the Trapping of the File

If the file you are previewing was FAFed, and the trapping is unsatisfactory, you can undo the FAF if the applied FAF parameters included the **Create Backup** option and if you did not select **LW Res** in the **CT Quality** section of the RIP3 - CT Handling dialog box (see *Chapter 18, RIP*).

- To undo the FAF, from the **File** menu, select **Revert to Untrapped File**; the file that you are previewing is replaced by the backup file created just prior to the FAF.



Note: For multi-Page Jobs, you must perform **Revert to Untrapped File** separately for each Page.

Page Menu Options

The Page menu is active only when you preview a multi-Page file. The options in this menu allow you to switch between the different Pages.

Next

- To move to the next Page of a Job, select this option.

  If, for example, you are working on Page 2 of a 4-Page Job, select **Next** to move to Page 3, and select it again to move to Page 4, at which point the option becomes inactive. Notice that when you move to the next Page (or Layout) of a Job, both the Display window and the Navigator section display the selected Page (or Layout).

Previous

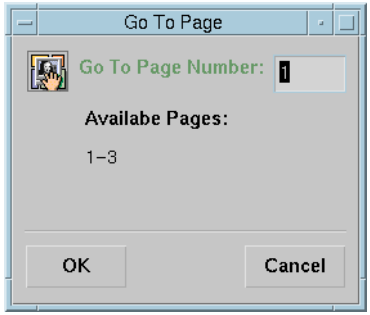
- To move to the previous Page of a Job, select **Previous**. When the first Page of the Job is displayed, this option is inactive.

Go To Page

Use this option to jump to a specific Page.

To jump to a specific Page:

1. From the Page menu, select **Go To Page**; the Go To Page dialog box is displayed.



2. In the **Go To Page Number** box, type the number of the Page you want to preview.
3. Click **OK**; the designated Page is shown in the Display window and in the Navigator section.

Exiting Preview

Use one of the following:

- From the **File** menu, select **Exit** to exit the Preview application and continue directly with the next operations in the Job Ticket (such as, Proof or Expose).
- If Preview is one of the steps in the template, from the **File** menu, select **Exit and Hold Job** to exit the Preview application and place the current Job Ticket on hold. (See *Chapter 9, The Queue Manager* for details.)
- From the **File** menu, select **Exit and Terminate Job** to exit the Preview application and terminate the Job Ticket.

17 PreFlight Check

Introduction 40
Starting PreFlight Check on the Brisque 40
PostScript PreFlight Check 42
Use Original APR/OPI Path 44
PDF PreFlight Check 53
Exiting the PreFlight Check Window 72

Introduction

PreFlight Check enables you to easily check your pre-RIP files on the Brisque prior to output. The preflight check results are presented in a report, which can be viewed directly from the Brisque.



Note: Profiles and action lists are created and managed by the Enfocus PitStop 4.05 plug-in for Adobe Acrobat and then imported into the Brisque from the Adobe Acrobat software application.

Portions of this chapter's text in this chapter have been taken from the *Enfocus PitStop 4.05 User Guide*.

Starting PreFlight Check on the Brisque

You can start PreFlight Check on the Brisque manually as a single-step operation, or automatically as part of Brisque template.

To start PreFlight Check on the Brisque:

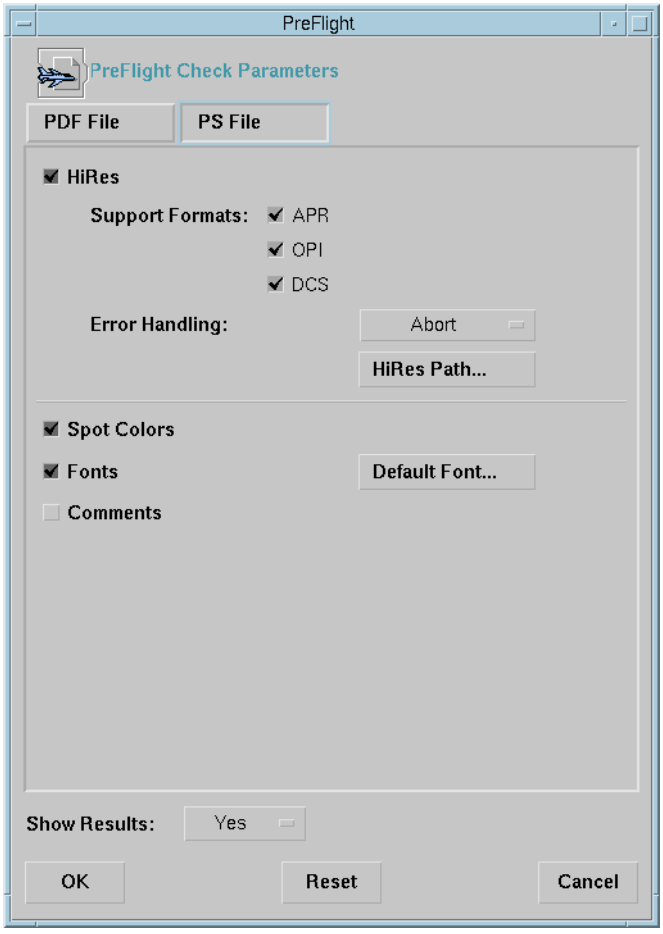
1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, double-click the **Files** icon to open the Brisque file browser.
2. Point to a file you wish to process, and do one of the following
   - Right-click the file, and select **PreFlight** from the popup menu.
   - Drag the file to the **PreFlight** icon located in the **Operations** panel on the Brisque Launch Pad.
   - Drag the file to a Brisque template containing the **PreFlight** operation.



Note: PostScript preflight parameters are completely separated from PDF preflighting parameters (Postscript parameters are on the **PS File** tab, while PDF parameters are on the **PDF File** tab). If the dragged files contain both PS and PDF files, each file is processed by the relevant parameters.

3. From the Job Ticket Editor window that appears, click **Submit** to process the file according to the default PreFlight Check parameters.

   Or, double-click the **PreFlight** icon to modify its parameters before processing the file; the PreFlight main window appears.



The PDF and PostScript tabs are described in the following sections.

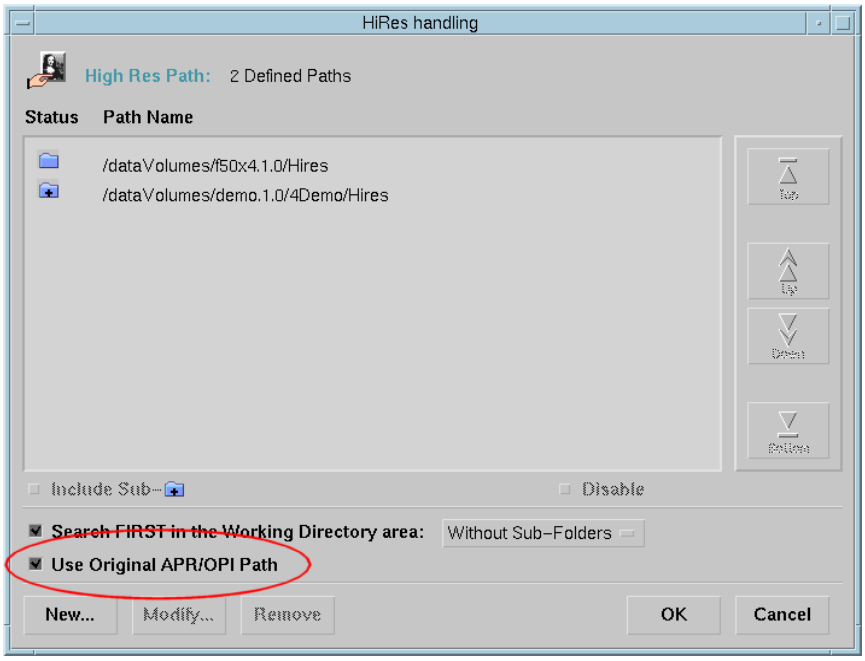
PostScript PreFlight Check

Selecting This	Does This
HiRes	Defines how to search for the high-resolution Files during the PreFlight Check operation. **Support Formats** You can instruct the PreFlight Check application on how to selectively search for any of the available APR, OPI, or DCS HiRes formats. ➢ Select the HiRes Format(s) you want to include in the HiRes File Check.
HiRes Path	Lets you define the parameters of the HiRes check by designating the high-resolution file path(s). See *Chapter 19, High-Resolution File Paths* for more information. ➢ Click **HiRes Path**; the HiRes Handling dialog box appears.
Error Handling	Determines whether a High Res image is found in the defined high-resolution file path(s) during the PreFlight Check. ➢ In the **Error Handling** box, select **Abort** or **Continue**. **Abort** If the high-resolution image is not found during the PreFlight Check, then the file will not continue to the RIP operation, and an error message appears. **Continue** If the high-resolution image is not found during the PreFlight Check, then the file continues to the RIP operation anyway, where it is RIPped without the high-resolution image.
Spot Colors	Lets you preview spot color data during the PreFlight Check.
Fonts	Verifies whether or not the fonts that are found in the input file are available on the Brisque. (See *Font Results* on page 50).

Selecting This	Does This
Default Font	Designates a replacement font to be used during RIP in case a font that is found in the input file is not available on the Brisque. ➢ Click **Default Font**; the Default Font dialog box appears. See *Chapter 23, Latin Font Handling*. **Note:** If you disable the Font Substitution option and a font from the input file is not available on the Brisque, the RIP aborts with a message. (The PreFlight Check will not abort, but it will indicate that the RIP will not be successful.)
Comments	Shows PostScript comments from the Results dialog box. This option is especially useful for PostScript experts.
Show Results	**Yes** After the PreFlight Check operation is finished, the Results dialog box appears. **No** After the PreFlight Check is finished the Results dialog box does not displayed. If a problem is detected during the PreFlight Check, an error message appears. **On Error** This a default. Only if a problem is detected during the PreFlight Check, the Results dialog box appears. Regardless of which **Show Results** option you select, you can monitor the progress of the operation from the Queue Manager. (See *Chapter 9, The Queue Manager* for instructions.)

Use Original APR/OPI Path

The PostScript's original APR/OPI path appears in the file comments of the APR/OPI Low-Resolution file. You do not need to manually define the OPI/APR path of the high- resolution file in the HiRes Handling dialog box.



Important: When using this option, make sure that the high-resolution file has not been moved from its original location. If it has, it cannot be located, as its specific location is identified in the low-resolution file's comments.

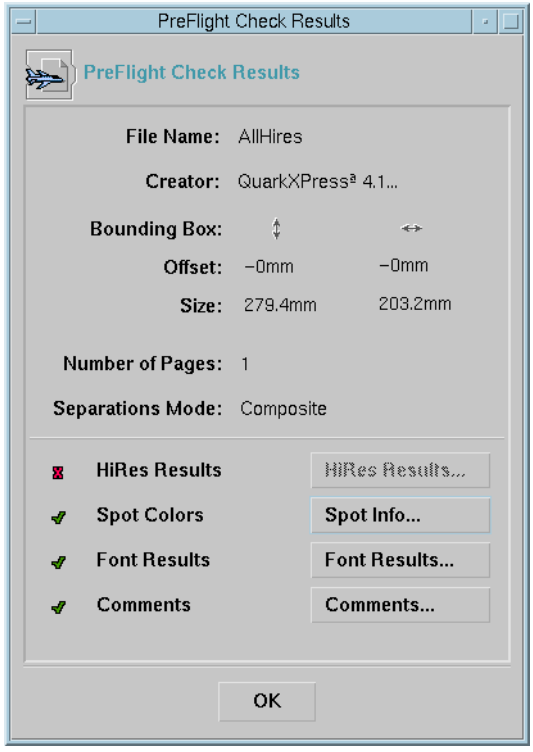
PS Preflight Check scans the following paths for high-resolution picture replacement in the following order:

- The path appearing in the low resolution file (the **Use Original APR/OPI Path** option must be selected).
- The working directory of the file being processed (the **Search FIRST in the Working Directory area** option must be selected).
- All other paths listed in the HiRes Handling main window.

Note: This option is supported only by the low-resolution files (PSImage) created using PhotoShop 5.0.2 with the Creo PSImage Exporter 4.05 plug-in.

PreFlight Check Results

When the PreFlight Check operation ends, you can view its results in the PreFlight Check Results dialog box. This window also displays information about the input PostScript file. The informationin this window depends upon the selected **Show Results** option.



File Information

The top part of the Results dialog box displays information about the input PostScript file.

This Box	Displays this Information
File Name	The name of the input file.
Creator	The application that was used to create the input file.
Bounding Box	The Offset and Size values defined in the bounding box if bounding box data exists in the input file.
Number of Pages	The number of Pages contained in the input file.
Separations Mode	Indicates whether the input file has been identified as a Composite or a Pre-separated file.

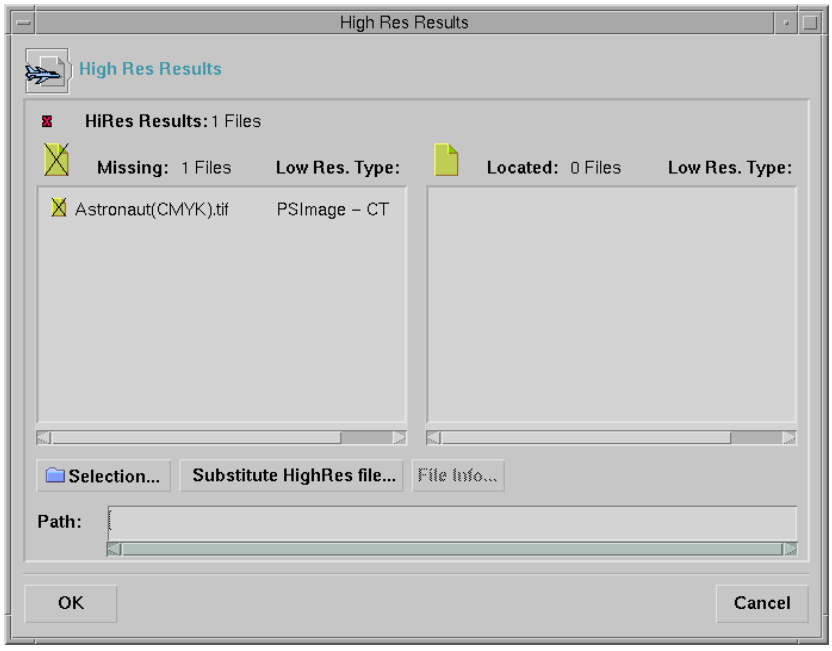
Results

The bottom part of the PreFlight Check Results window displays the results of the PreFlight Check. Any combination of the following boxes may appear: HiRes results, Spot Colors, Font Results, and Comments.

- If no errors were found in a category during the PreFlight check, then a ✓appears next to the box.
- If an error was found during the PreFlight Check, an✖ appears next to the relevant box.
- An inactive button indicates that no relevant information was found in the PostScript file.
- If a box does not display at all, that particular check was not selected as a PreFlight Check parameter.

HiRes Results

➢ Click **HiRes Results** to display the High Res Results dialog box.



This window displays information about the High Resolutions that are named by the input PostScript file.

The **Missing** column lists the files that are not located in the defined high-resolution file paths.

When RIP is performed after Preflight Check, and a file appears in the **Missing** column, you can copy the missing file to a folder defined by the high-resolution file path, or you can modify the paths from this window so that one of them points to the file. Any new information that you define in this dialog box is automatically applied in the RIP.

To modify the high-resolution file path:

1. Click the missing file with the cursor.
2. Click **Selection**; a browser appears.
3. Use the browser to define a path to the folder where the high-resolution file is located, and click **OK**.
4. If you select a path that points to the selected file, the file is moved to the **Located** list.

   If you selected a path that does not point to the selected file, an error message appears.
5. Repeat this process for each file that displays in the **Missing** column.

Alternatively:

- From the RIP or High Resolution Handling main window, define a new high-resolution file paths and perform PreFlight Check.

Low Res Type

The **Low Res Type** column provides information about the corresponding low resolution file type.

Located

The **Located** column lists the files that were located during the PreFlight Check.

- To select a file from the **Located** list, click it; the **File Info** button becomes active and its path is displayed.
- To clear a file from the **Located** list, click it again.
- To view the path to a file that appears in the **Located** list, select it; the path to the selected file appears in the **Path** box.
- To view information about a Located file, select it from the **Located** list, then click **File Info**; the File Parameters dialog box appears.

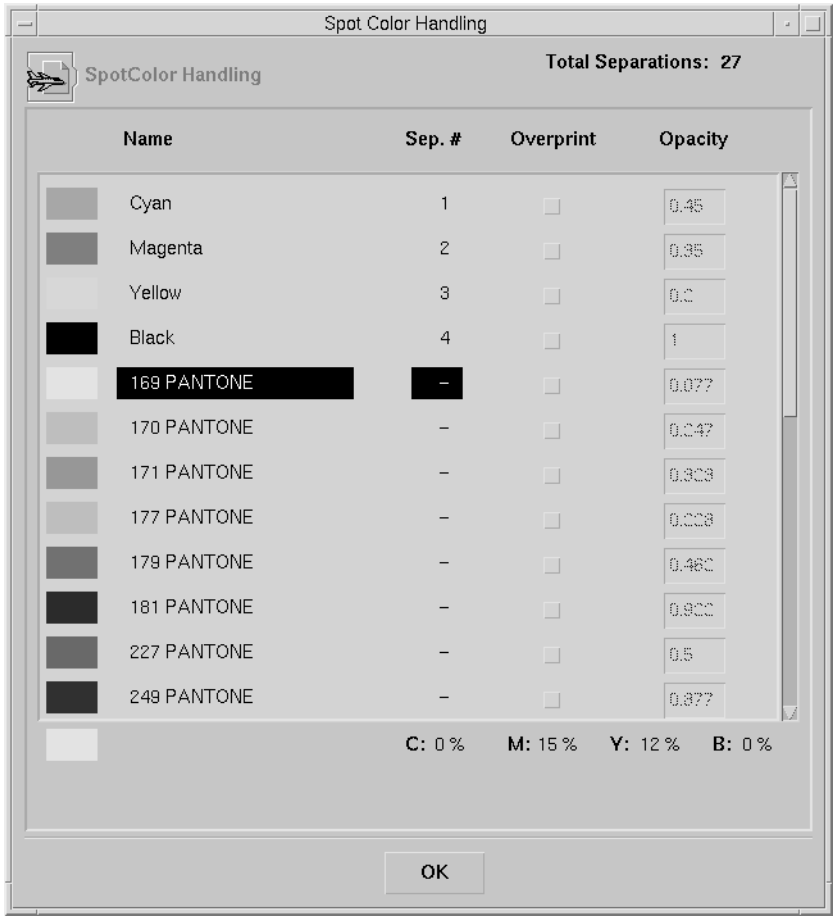
Alternatively:

- Double-click a file that appears in the **Located** list; the File Parameters dialog box appears. (For a description of the File Parameters utility, see *Chapter 4, Brisque Utilities & Preferences*, *Station Information* on page 44.)

Spot Colors

The Spot Color Handling window displays the separations found in the input PostScript file. This window is for display purposes only and any changes to spot color handling must be defined in the RIP application.

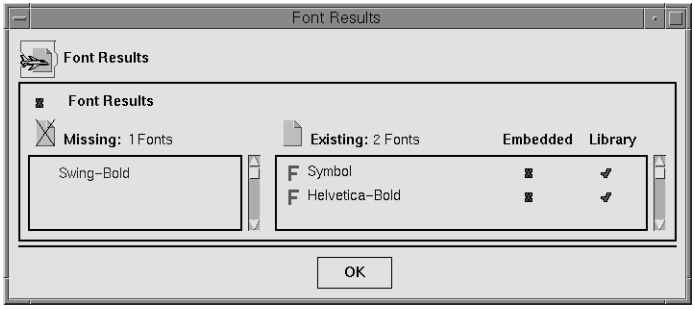
➢ To display the Spot Color Handling dialog box, click **Sep Info**.



Font Results

Font Check searches for fonts in the input file. After a list of fonts is compiled, the application searches for the font descriptions embedded in the PostScript file and in the Font Library on the Brisque. The results of the Font Check are displayed in the Font Results dialog box, under the **Embedded** and **Library** columns.

➢ From the PreFlight Check Results dialog box, click **Font Results**; the Font Results dialog box appears.



- The names of supported fonts found in the input file appear in the **Existing** column.
- A ✓ in the **Embedded** column indicates that the font description was found in the PostScript file.
- A ✓ in the **Library** column indicates that the font description was found in the Brisque Font Library.
- An ✘ in the **Embedded** column indicates that the font description was not found in the PostScript file.
- An ✘ in the **Library** column indicates that the font description was not found in the Brisque Font Library.
- The names of unsupported fonts (fonts whose description is not found in the PostScript file nor in the Brisque Font Library) appear in the **Missing** list.

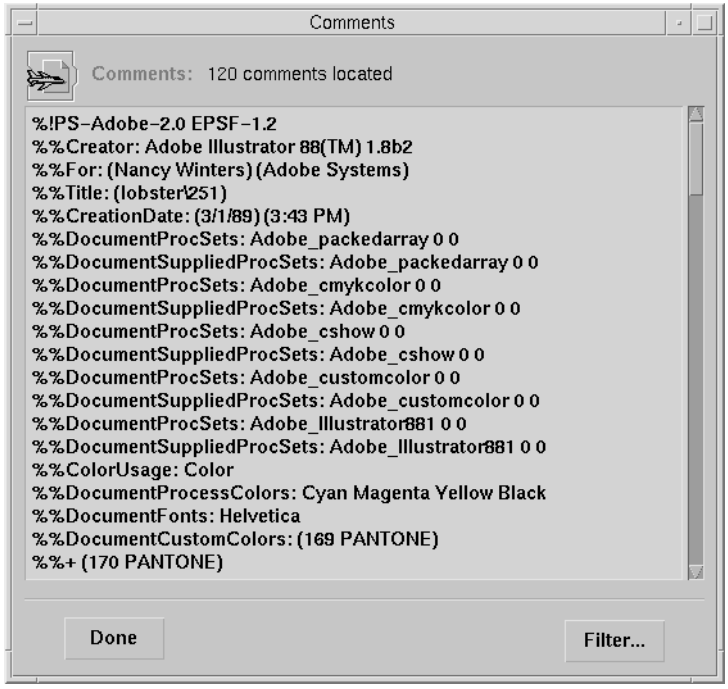
You can either add or assign a substitution font (see *Chapter 23, Latin Font Handling*).

➢ Click **OK** to return to the Results Dialog box.

Comments

The Comments window displays the file's PostScript comments. PreFlight Check identifies a PostScript comment as any line that has a maximum of 256 characters and begins with the % character. This information may be useful to a technical or application specialists.

➢ To view the PostScript comments, click **Comments**; the Comments dialog box appears.

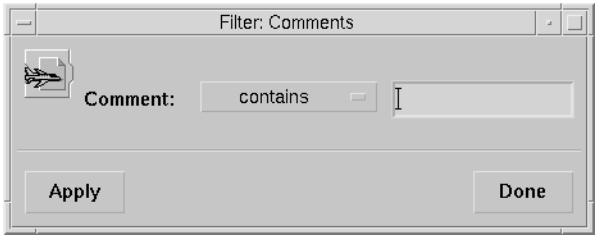


Filter

Use the Filter option to generate a partial list of Comments.

To generate a partial list of Comments:

1. Click **Filter**; the Filter: Comments dialog box appears.



2. In the **Comment** box, select one of the following filter options: **contains**, **matches**, **starts with**, **ends with**, or **does not contain**.
3. In the text box, type the filter option.

   For example, if you are searching for comments that might provide clues to a missing font, select **contains**, and in the box type **font**. Only comments that contain the word font will be displayed.
4. When the Filter parameters are defined, click **Apply**; both the Comments dialog box and the Filter: Comments dialog box remain open.

PDF PreFlight Check

Creo together with Enfocus Software, Inc. created the PitStop plug-in for Adobe Acrobat.

PDF PreFlight Check allows you to compare the properties of a PDF file to a set of properties in a pre-designated preflight profile, created in Enfocus PitStop. The preflight profile may include page, text, color, image, font formatting properties, and more.

You can apply a PitStop action list, which defines a sequence of tasks to be performed on the PDF file such as: change text format, perform repetitious color changes, or page layout properties. These can be executed on a PDF file, on a page range or on a complete PDF document.

PitStop facilitates smooth PDF submission, checks and corrects a PDF file using Brisque's current Job Ticket and Hot Folder mechanism.

Using PitStop Preflight Profiles and Action Lists

PitStop preflight profiles and action lists are created and managed directly from Adobe Acrobat. To implement the PitStop preflight profiles and action lists in PDF PreFlight Check, you must first copy them to the Brisque.

This section explains how to:

- Edit and manage Enfocus PitStop 4.05 preflight profiles and action lists in Adobe Acrobat.
- Export preflight profiles and action lists from Adobe Acrobat to the Brisque.
- Select Enfocus PitStop 4.05 preflight profiles and action lists from PreFlight Check on the Brisque.



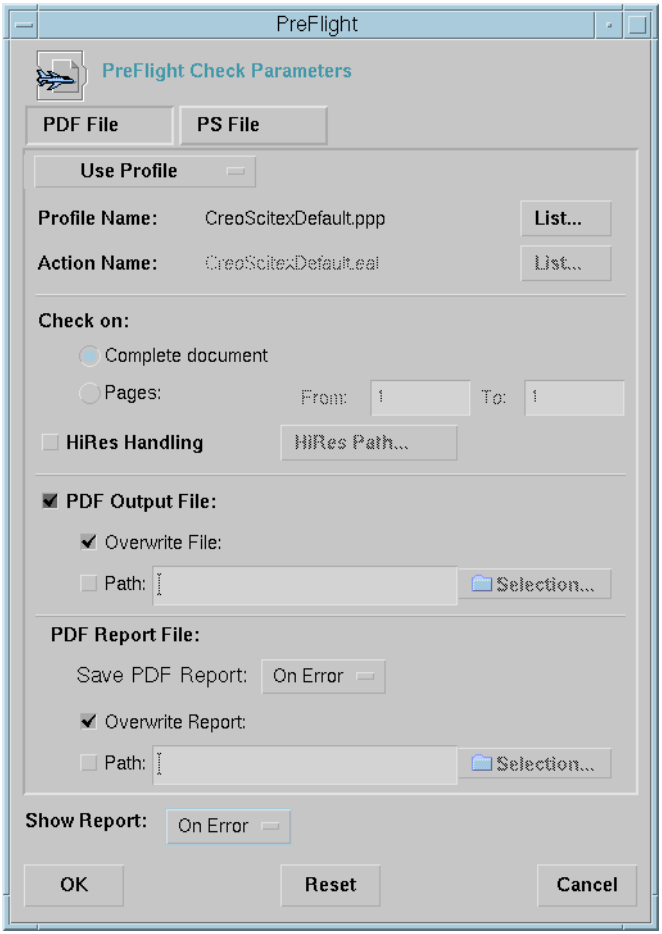
Note: Although PDF files can be checked with PitStop preflight check profiles and action lists directly from Adobe Acrobat, performing the check from the Brisque streamlines your workflow and enhances throughput.



Refer to the *Enfocus PitStop 4.05 User Guide* for detailed information about handling preflight profiles and action list. See the **Documentation** subfolder in the Enfocus PitStop application folder (for example, on a PC, locate the folder **…\Enfocus\Documentation**).

Selecting Preflight Profiles and Action Lists Located on Brisque

1. Start PreFlight Check on the Brisque; the PreFlight main window is displayed.
2. On the PreFlight main window, click the **PDF** tab.



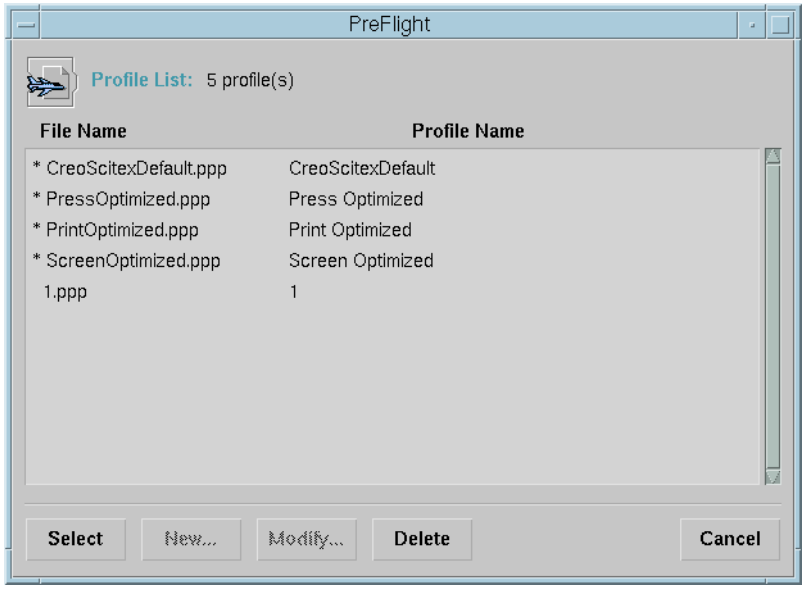
3. Select one of the following options from the menu list on the top of the window:

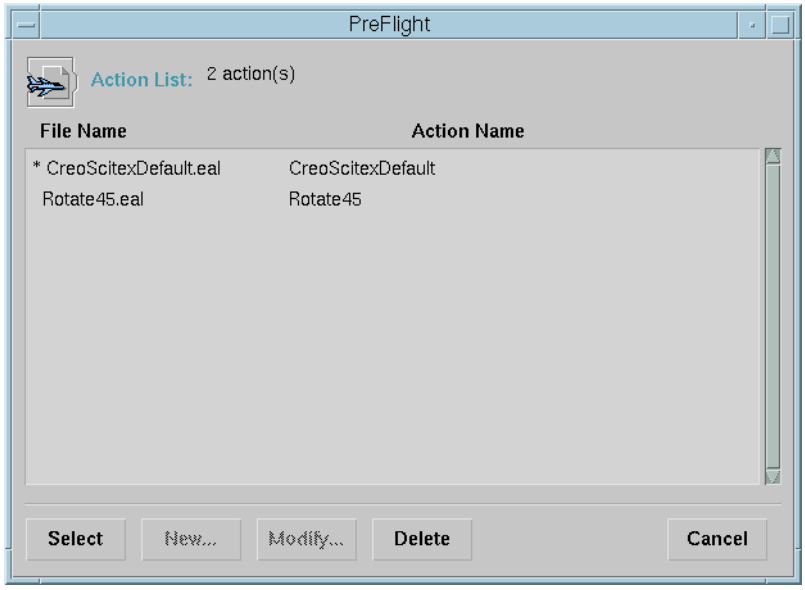
Use Profile	To use a PitStop preflight profile.
Use Action	To execute a PitStop action list.
Use Profile & Action	To use a PitStop preflight profile and then execute a PitStop action list.



4. Click the appropriate **List** button(s) to independently select a PitStop profile (**.ppp** extension) and/or action list (**.eal** extension).

Note: Preflight profiles and action lists, must reside in the **PitStopProfileAndAction** system folder in the **<hostname>.Shareditems** folder. Refer to *Exporting PitStop Preflight Profiles and Action Lists to Brisque on page 64*, for more information.





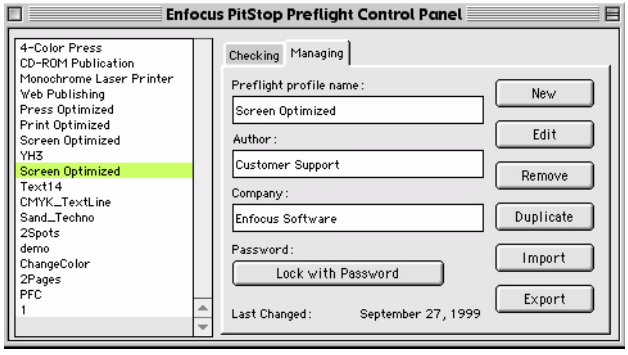
Note: An asterisk preceding the name of a profile or action list denotes a default PitStop file that cannot be moved, deleted, or modified. You may use default files as a basis for creating customized preflight profiles or action lists, and then saving them under a different name.

Editing and Managing PitStop Preflight Profiles

PitStop preflight profiles are created, edited, and managed in Adobe Acrobat using the **Enfocus PitStop Preflight Profile Editor**. You then export the profiles from Adobe Acrobat to the Brisque and select them from the Brisque PreFlight Check module.

To start the Enfocus PitStop Preflight Profile Editor:

1. Start Adobe Acrobat with Enfocus PitStop 4.05 plug-in installed.
2. From the Window menu, choose Show PitStop Preflight Panel; the Enfocus PitStop Preflight Control Panel appears. The left pane contains list of preflight profiles.
3. Click the **Managing** tab.



Use the **Managing** tab options to edit, remove, duplicate, import, export, rename a preflight profile, and to lock profiles with a password.

4. To edit a profile, select it from the list on the left, and click **Edit**.

   If your profiles are shared by multiple Brisque users, it is recommended you secure the profile with a password. Profiles locked with a password cannot be edited unless you unlock the profile.

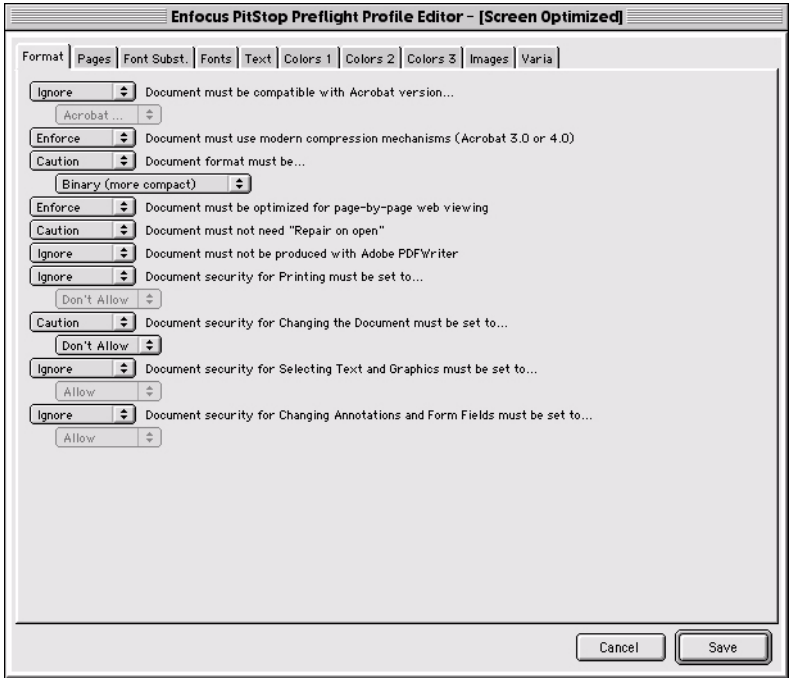
   To lock a profile, select the profile, and under the **Managing** tab, click **Lock with Password,** and then enter a password in the dialog box that opens.

5. To create a new preflight profile, click **New.** Enter the general information related to the preflight profile, and click **Advanced Edit** (clicking **Next** instead, opens the Enfocus PitStop Preflight Profile Wizard).

   The Enfocus PitStop Preflight Profile Editor dialog box appears.



Important: The "Editor" enables you to specify more properties than the "Wizard" (for example, the Editor offers more control over the textual features).



6. PDF preflight properties are categorized into groups. Click the respective tab to display each group's settings:

   Format Settings on the document level, such as Acrobat compatibility level, compression level, document formatting (ASCII or binary), optimization, and security.

   Pages Blank page alert, page number, media size, inline PostScript descriptions.

   Font Subst. Settings for controlling font substitution.

   Fonts Font-related settings, such as font embedding, font types, and artificial font formatting.

   Text Minimum point size, text color, blank text overprint, and white text knockout.

   Colors 1-3 Color control settings are separated into three tabs.

   Color 1. For text/line art and pixel images in various color formats (RGB, CMYK, indexed color, etc.).

   Color 2. Spot color handling settings.

   Color 3. CMYK ink coverage and removal of customized functions, such as transfer, halftone, blank generation, and under color removal for text/line-art and pixel images.

   Images Minimum and maximum resolutions for color/grayscale and B&W images, rotation/skewing, horizontal flipping, X-Y scaling, and OPI information type.

   Varia Line-art settings (maximum number of nodes in a single path), and trimming settings (trimming page size and bleeding for trimmed pages).

7. Define the desired preflight profile settings. Each option in the various tabs is categorized as **severity level** or **action**.

8. The **Severity level** options are defined by the following properties:

Ignore	PitStop will ignore the deviation.
Caution	PitStop will try to match the respective property in the checked PDF document. Any failed attempts will be logged in the preflight report and labeled as 'caution', but the PDF document will not be flagged as 'failed'.
Enforce	PitStop will try to match the respective property in the checked PDF document. Any failed attempts will be logged in the preflight report and labeled as 'error'. The PDF document will be flagged as 'failed', but the actual property will not be changed. Use this severity level for problems which must be corrected before moving the PDF document to the next stage in the workflow.

9. The **Action** options indicate a correction or change that will be performed:

Do Not	PitStop does not perform the action.
Do & Log; Remove & Log; Embed & Log; Re-embed & Log; Correct & Log	PitStop performs the action where applicable and logs this action in the preflight report.
Do; Remove; Embed; Re-embed; Correct	PitStop performs the action where applicable.

10. Click **Save**.

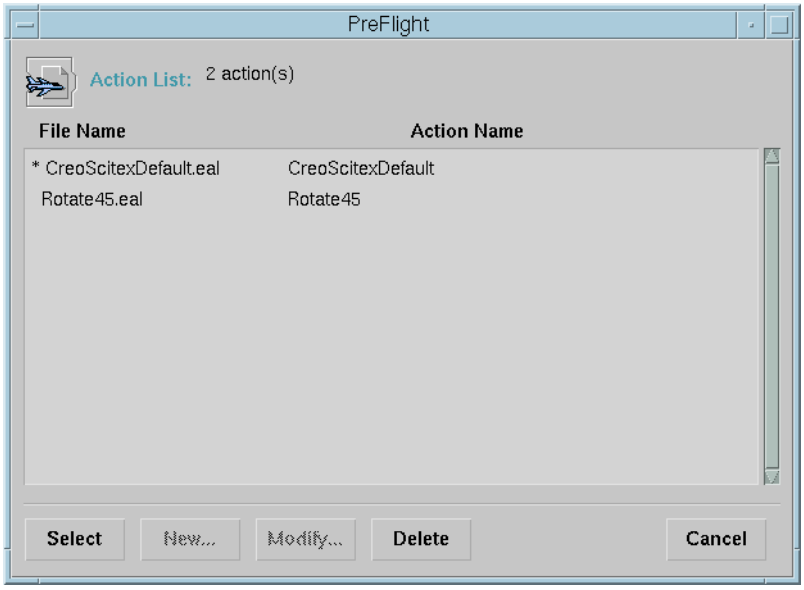
Editing and Managing PitStop Action Lists

PitStop action lists are created, edited, and managed from Adobe Acrobat using the Enfocus PitStop Action List Control Panel. You then export the action lists from Adobe Acrobat to the Brisque and select them from the Brisque PreFlight Check module.

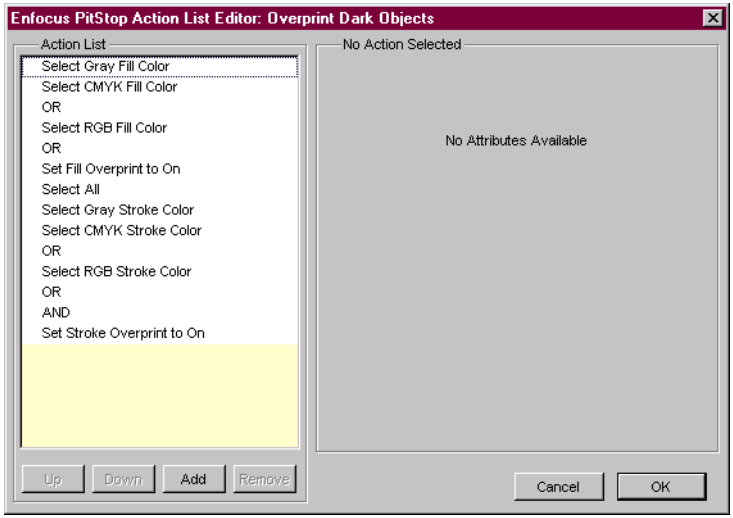
To start the Enfocus PitStop Action List Control Panel:

1. Start Adobe Acrobat with Enfocus PitStop 4.05 plug-in installed.
2. From the Window menu, select Show PitStop Action List Panel; the Enfocus PitStop Action List Control Panel dialog box appears.

   The left pane lists action lists.



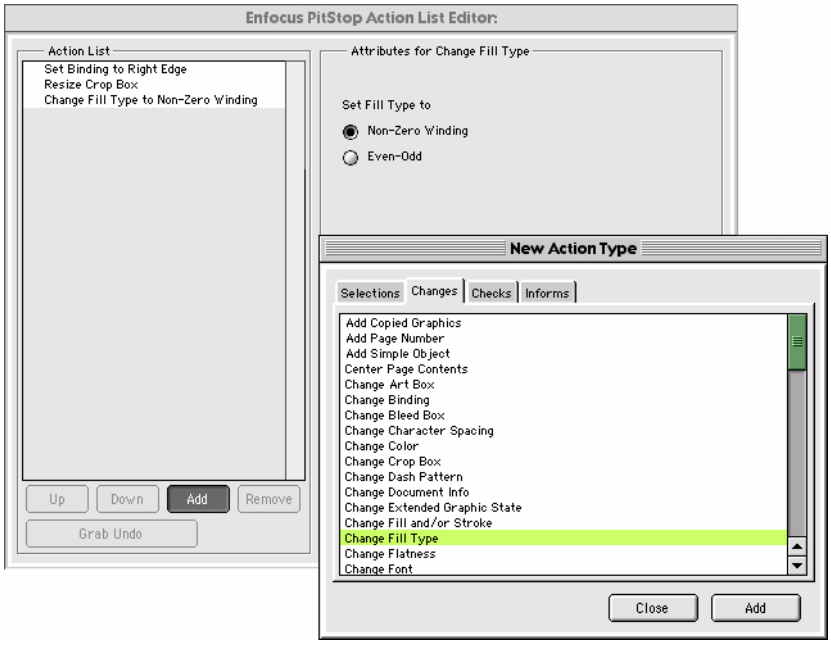
3. Click the **Managing** tab.
4. To edit an existing action list, select it from the list on the left, and click **Edit**. The Enfocus PitStop Action List Editor is displayed.



If your action lists are being shared by multiple users on the Brisque, away from the Adobe Acrobat application, we strongly recommend you secure the action lists with a password. Action lists locked with a password, cannot be edited unless you unlock them. From the **Managing** tab (see screen capture above), click **Lock with Password** and enter a password in the dialog box that follows.

5. To create a new action list, click **New.** The Enfocus PitStop Action List Editor dialog box appears.

Refer to the Automating Tasks chapter in the Enfocus PitStop 4.05 User Guide for detailed information on setting up and creating PitStop action lists.



6. After completing to create/edit the action list, click **OK.**

   The Enfocus PitStop Action List Control Panel dialog box appears.

7. If you created a new action list, enter the general information (name, creator, and company) for the newly created “untitled” action list.

Exporting PitStop Preflight Profiles and Action Lists to Brisque

PitStop preflight profiles and action lists must be copied to the Brisque. These files are small, which makes them easy to transfer between stations over the network or using diskettes.

PitStop preflight profiles and action lists MUST reside on the Brisque in the following folders:

- Customized and editable PitStop preflight profiles -in the **Profiles** folder.
- Read-only default profiles - in the **Profiles\DefaultProfiles** subfolder.
- Customized and editable PitStop action lists - in the **Actions** folder.
- Read-only default action lists - in the **Actions\DefaultProfiles** subfolder.

Exporting from the Macintosh

To transfer PitStop preflight profiles and action lists from a Macintosh station to the Brisque, first mount your Brisque on the Macintosh station.

To mount the Brisque's PitStop preflight profile and action lists folder on the Mac:

1. On the Macintosh, start the Chooser application.
2. From the Chooser window, select the zone and Brisque station you wish to mount, and click **OK**.
3. Connect as a Registered User.
4. Login as a **macuser** without a password. Click **Connect**.
5. Select the **<hostname>.Shareditems** folder, and click **OK**. The selected Brisque volume is mounted onto your Macintosh desktop.

To export an Enfocus PitStop preflight profile or action list from your Mac to the Brisque:

1. From the list of profiles on Enfocus PitStop Preflight Control Panel, select the preflight profile (or action list) you wish to export.
2. On the **Managing** tab, click **Export**.
3. If the preflight profile (or action list) is not secured with a password, a message appears querying whether to continue without protecting the profile. It is recommend securing the profile with a password.
4. From the file browser that appears, specify the file name and select the **PitStopProfilesAndActions => Profiles** (or **Actions**) folder on the mounted Brisque station. Do not save the preflight or action to any other folder.
5. Click **Save**.

Exporting from the PC

To transfer your PitStop preflight profiles and action lists to your Brisque from your PC, use one of the following methods.

- NFS networking utility, such as:
  - Microsoft's MS Client/Server NFS™
  - Intergraph's AccessNFS Solutions (DiskAccess™ or DiskAccess™)
  - NFS Hummingbird™.

  If you are not familiar with NFS software applications, contact your network administrator for assistance.



Important: To see the Brisque via the NFS network on Windows NT, make sure to add the hostname of the NT station and its TCP/IP address to the **/etc/hosts** file on the Brisque.

- FTP client application, such as WS_FTP or CuteFTP.

  Enter your Brisque station name as a Host Name. Login as **root** and enter your password (**ripro**, by default), then locate the **scitex\version\pfcProfAndAct** folder.

  Make sure you transfer the preflight profiles and action lists to the appropriate folders on the Brisque.

Selecting PDF Pages to Check

One of the advantages of the PDF over the PostScript format, is its page-independence. This enables you to selectively check only a portion of the PDF document. This option is useful for executing a PitStop action list, so that only a portion of the PDF is processed.

To define the range of pages to preflight, select one of the following options in the PDF File tab:



- **Complete document** - to check the entire PDF file.
- **Pages** - to check a specific range of pages within the PDF file. Type the page numbers in the **From** and **To** boxes, respectively. To check a single page, type the same number in both boxes.

Defining High Resolution Replacement Parameters

PDF PreFlight Check allows you to check whether OPI or API high-resolution replacement images can be located in their defined high-resolution paths (actual high-resolution image replacement takes place during the RIP).



Note: If your PDF was distilled with APR (Automatic Picture Replacement) images using the **CreoDistillerStartup.ps** file, the APRs will behave as OPI (Open Pre-Press Interface). The **CreoDistillerStartup.ps** file is not needed for distilling with Brisque Normalizer.

- Select the **HiRes handling** box to check whether OPI or APR high-resolution replacement images are located in the defined high-resolution paths.

  Clear this option to avoid OPI high-resolution image replacement.

- Click **HiRes Path** to start the High-Resolution File Paths utility on the Brisque. This utility enables you to define the OPI locations that are searched for high-resolution image replacement, in the current Brisque template.

  For information on this option, refer to *Chapter 19, High-Resolution File Paths*.

Note: If you edit the PDF PreFlight Check parameters from a Brisque template where **RIP** immediately follows **PreFlight Check**, the PreFlight Check settings are used during RIP.

Defining the PDF Output File Parameters

This option defines the parameters associated with the modified PDF after a preflight check has implemented a PitStop action list on the PDF file being checked (see *Selecting Preflight Profiles and Action Lists Located on Brisque* on page 54).

The modified output PDF is given a unique name, preventing the original preflight PDF file from being deleted or modified by mistake.



- If you do not want the PDF PreFlight Check to create a modified PDF at all, clear the **PDF Output File** box. You may wish to do this when performing a preflight check that will only create a preflight report file (see *Creating a PDF Report File* on page 68).

To define the parameters of the modified PDF:

1. Select the **PDF Output File** box.
2. To prevent overwriting a PDF file which already exists in the destination folder:



Note: You cannot define a customized file name for the output PDF file. The modified PDF receives the original file name of the file being checked, with the **_out** suffix added to it. This prevents the original PDF file from being modified or overwritten. For example, **Sample.pdf** (original PDF)=>**Sample_out.pdf** (modified PDF).

   - To overwrite any file with the same file name, select the **Overwrite File** box.
   - To prevent a file from being overwritten, clear the **Overwrite File**.
3. Define the destination path of the modified PDF.
   - To save the modified PDF to the working folder of the PDF file being checked, clear the **Path** box.
   - To define a different destination folder for the modified PDF, select the **Path** box and click **Selection**. From the file browser that is displayed, select a new destination folder.

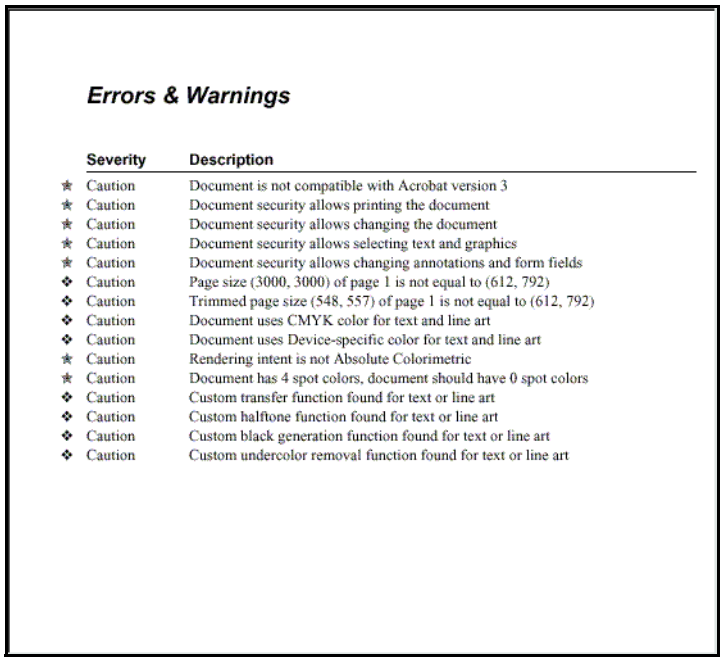
Creating a PDF Report File

PDF PreFlight Check can create a preflight report file (in the form of a new PDF document), for each preflight performed. The preflight report file includes the following information, regarding the PDF file(s) being checked:

- Errors, problems and discrepancies
- Statistical information

In addition, the preflight report contains the following information (some of this information is transparently embedded within the PDF, and is required at a later stage by the RIP):

- Who created the preflight report file.
- Automated corrections performed (if any).
- A complete copy of the PitStop preflight profile used to create the report.



Errors & Warnings

	Severity	Description
★	Caution	Document is not compatible with Acrobat version 3
★	Caution	Document security allows printing the document
★	Caution	Document security allows changing the document
★	Caution	Document security allows selecting text and graphics
★	Caution	Document security allows changing annotations and form fields
❖	Caution	Page size (3000, 3000) of page 1 is not equal to (612, 792)
❖	Caution	Trimmed page size (548, 557) of page 1 is not equal to (612, 792)
❖	Caution	Document uses CMYK color for text and line art
❖	Caution	Document uses Device-specific color for text and line art
★	Caution	Rendering intent is not Absolute Colorimetric
★	Caution	Document has 4 spot colors, document should have 0 spot colors
❖	Caution	Custom transfer function found for text or line art
❖	Caution	Custom halftone function found for text or line art
❖	Caution	Custom black generation function found for text or line art
❖	Caution	Custom undercolor removal function found for text or line art

The PDF preflight report file is divided into the following sections:

Section	Description
Errors & Warnings	Problems (actual or potential) according to the selected preflight profile. It warns you when your PDF document does not comply with the settings you specified in the preflight profile and, consequently, may not output correctly.
General File Information	Information about the current PDF document, such as title, author, profile used, data format, etc.
Font Information	All fonts used in the PDF document, along with their attributes (type of font, embedded or subsetted, etc.).
Color Information	All color spaces (RGB, CMYK, etc.) used in the PDF document, with additional information where required.

Section	Description
Image Information	All images in the PDF document, along with additional information (for example,, physical and effective resolution, page, angle, custom color functions, etc.).
OPI Information	OPI usage in the PDF document.

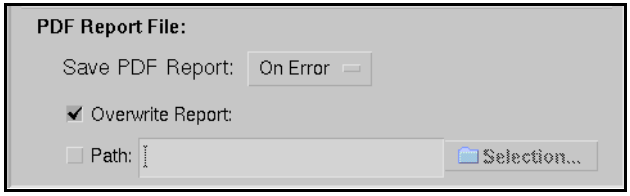
The items in the preflight report file are hyperlinked to the corresponding object in the checked PDF document. Two types of hyperlinks are available:

(diamond) - Links directly to the object in the original PDF document.

(star) - Links back to the original PDF document and starts the PitStop Navigator Panel.

Defining the PDF Report File Parameters

The name of the PDF preflight report file consists of the original name of the file being checked plus the **_rep** suffix and **.pdf** extension (for example, **Sample.pdf** => **Sample_rep.pdf**).



Save PDF Report

To save a PDF preflight report file in the selected path.

If you clear this option and select **Yes** or **On Error** for the Show Results option, and an error is detected during the preflight check, the Preview application on the Brisque will show a temporary preflight report. When you close Acrobat Reader, the report file is automatically deleted and will no longer be available to you.

Overwrite Report

To overwrite any preflight report file in the destination path that has the same file name as the new preflight report file.

If you clear the option, a new report file is created and a numerical suffix is added to file name. For example, **Sample.pdf => Sample_rep_1.pdf.**

Path

Select to define the destination path of the preflight report file, and click **Selection** to display a file browser from which you select the destination folder.

If no path is selected, the preflight report is saved to the working folder of the PDF file being checked.

Show Report

This option determines which errors are detected during the PDF preflight check.



Note: Regardless of which Show Report option you select, you can monitor the progress of the operation at any time, from the Brisque's Queue Manager.

- Select one of the following options from the **Show Report** menu:

No	No PDF preflight report is displayed after the preflight check is complete. If a problem is detected during the preflight check, an error message prompt will be displayed in the Brisque Queue.
Yes	A PDF preflight report is always displayed in Acrobat Reader 4.05 after the check is complete, irrespective of whether a problem was detected or not.
On Error	This is the default. Only if a problem is detected in the preflight check, will the Brisque display the PDF preflight report in Acrobat Reader 4.05, after the entire preflight check is complete.

Exiting the PreFlight Check Window

- Click **OK** to save the settings and exit the Preflight Check main window.
- Click **Reset** to revert to the parameters that existed when you opened the window. The Preflight Check main window remains open.
- Click **Cancel** to exit the Preflight Check main window without modifying the defined parameters.

18 RIP

Overview 74
Activating the RIP Application on the Brisque 75
Defining RIP Parameters 76

Overview

Before PostScript and PDF files can be exposed to a Creo imagesetter or printed on a proofer, they must be converted into a Creo supported format. This conversion is commonly known as **RIPping** (RIP is the acronym for Raster Image Processing).

The RIP application on the Brisque converts PostScript and PDF files into Creo raster format.



Note: A Brisque on SMP (Symmetrical Multiple Processors) can RIP in parallel several PDF files and several PostScript files.
If **Pipeline mode** is selected in the Job Ticket Options dialog box and you are RIPping a multi-page PDF file, you can RIP each page of the PDF file on separate CPUs at the same time.

You define the following parameters via the RIP application:

- Output file size and orientation
- Output file type and resolution
- PDF handling
- CT handling
- Vignette handling
- Separation handling
- Color handling
- Spot color handling
- High-resolution file handling
- Font handling
- File names
- File destination.

Activating the RIP Application on the Brisque

You can activate RIP manually as a single-step operation, or automatically as part of a Brisque template.

Proceed as follows:

1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, double-click the **Files** icon to open the Brisque file browser.
2. Point to an input file (PS or PDF) you want to process, and do one of the following:

   ➢Right-click the item, and select **RIP** from the popup menu.

   ➢Drag the file to the **RIP** icon located in the **Operations** panel on the Brisque Launch Pad.

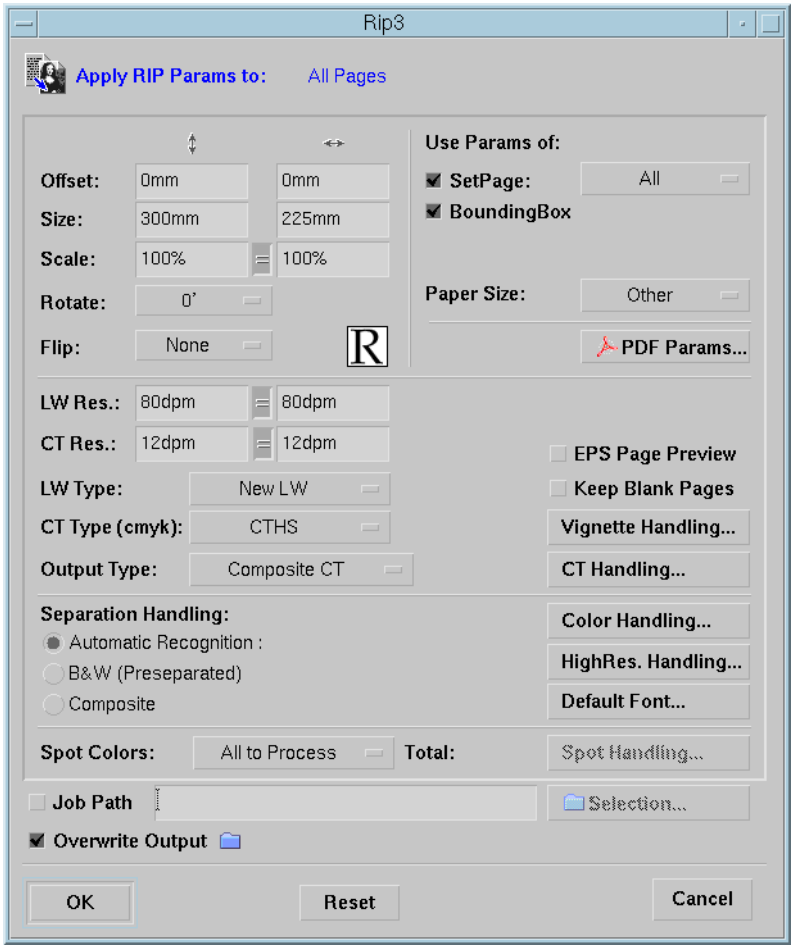
   ➢Drag the file to a Brisque template containing the **RIP** operation.
3. From the Job Ticket Editor window that is displayed, do one of the following:

   ➢Click **Submit** to process the file according to the default RIP parameters.

   ➢Double-click the **RIP** icon to modify its parameters before processing the file.

   The Rip3 window is displayed.

Defining RIP Parameters



Please note the following:

- The **Apply RIP Params to** section indicates **All Pages** when editing the default parameters or the **total number** of pages in the file (in brackets) when editing the parameters of a specific file.

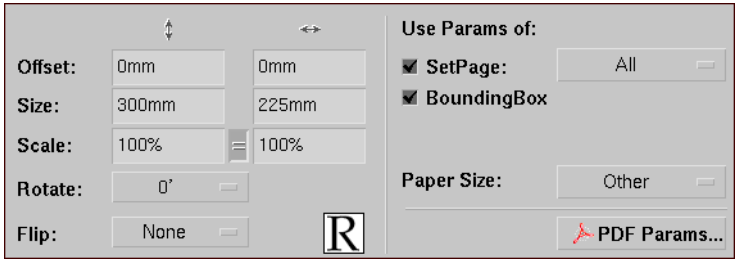


- When editing the parameters of a specific file, the name of the handled file appears in the **Overwrite Output** box and various options in the Rip3 window become unavailable.
- The **EPS Page Preview** check box is relevant only in the Packaging workflow. It is available only when obtaining a license from the Creo Care Center.

Output File Size and Orientation

The size and orientation of the final rasterized file is based on one of the following values:

- The values in the Rip3 window
- The **header** of the input file
- The **Bounding Box** of the input file



➢ To instruct where to search for the output size and orientation parameters, select a **Use Params of** option.

Use Params of

SetPage

➢ Select **SetPage**, and from the **SetPage** popup menu, select **Size Only** or **All**.

Size Only - Uses the **Size** and **Offset** information defined in the header of the input file, and the **Rotate** and **Flip** values defined in the Rip3 window.

All - Uses all the information defined in the header of the input file (overwriting the corresponding values in the Rip3 window).



Note: SetPage is available only if such information is found in the header of the input file.
If you RIP a PDF file with a defined crop area, the **SetPage** option must be cleared.

BoundingBox

Uses the information found in the Bounding Box in the header of the input file (overwriting the **Offset** and **Size** values in the Rip3 window).



Note: BoundingBox is available only if such information is found in the header of the input file.



Note: If you select both **SetPage** and **BoundingBox**, the RIP first looks for SetPage parameters and, if none are found, it then looks for a Bounding Box. If no such information is available, it uses the values defined on the Rip3 window.

Custom Size

Defines a predefined or custom output size.

- To define a predefined size, choose a paper size from the **Paper Size** popup menu; the related values appear in the Size boxes.
- To define a custom size, select **Other** from the **Paper Size** popup menu, and type the desired values in the **Size** boxes.



Note: Custom Size is available only when dragging a PostScript or PDF file on the **RIP** icon or to a template containing the **RIP** operation.

Size

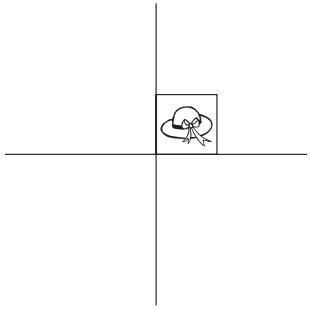
Defines the size of the output area.

- To crop the image, type values that are smaller than the values defined in the input file. To crop from the top, type a height value that is smaller than the input height value. To crop from the right, type a width value that is smaller than the input width value.
- To 'crop out' the image, type values that are larger than the values defined in the input file.

Offset

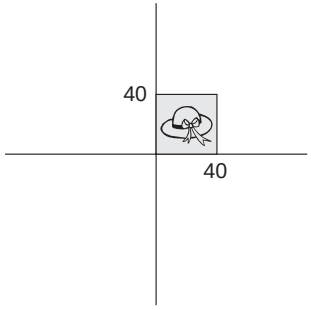
Note: The shaded parts in the following illustrations indicate the areas that are exposed to film/plate.

The input file contains an image positioned relative to the file's axis. When the offset values are (0,0), the bottom left corner of the output image is located on the origin (0,0).

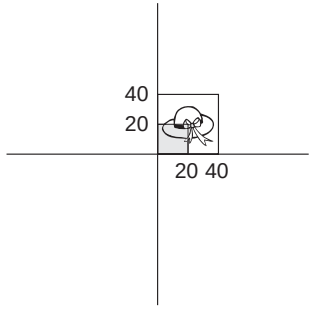


Offset=0,0

Usually, the input image is located within the top right quadrant of the axis. When the offset is (0,0), and the defined **Size** is not smaller than the image, the entire image is preserved during RIP (as shown in the left figure below).

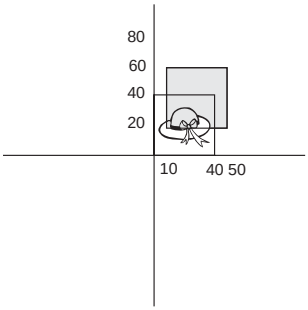


Offset = 0,0
Output size = 40,40



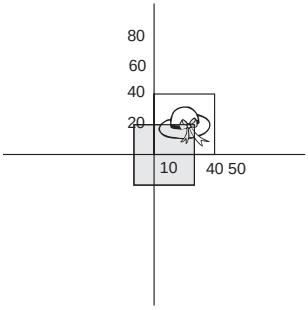
Offset = 0,0
Output size = 20,20

Positive offset values crop the image from its bottom and its left part.



Offset = 10,20
Output size = 40,40

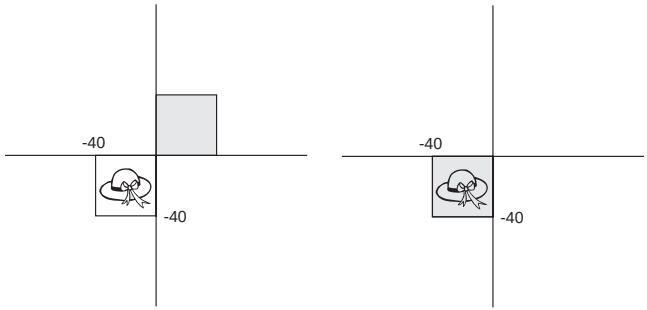
Negative offset values crop the image from its top part and right part.



Offset = -10,-20
Output size = 40,40

Note: Depending on the defined **Size**, negative offset values may also crop the image from its top and right part.

If a part of the image is outside the top-right quadrant of the axis, to prevent cropping, you must redefine the offset (that is, the bottom left of the output image) to match the location of the bottom left of the input image, relative to the origin.



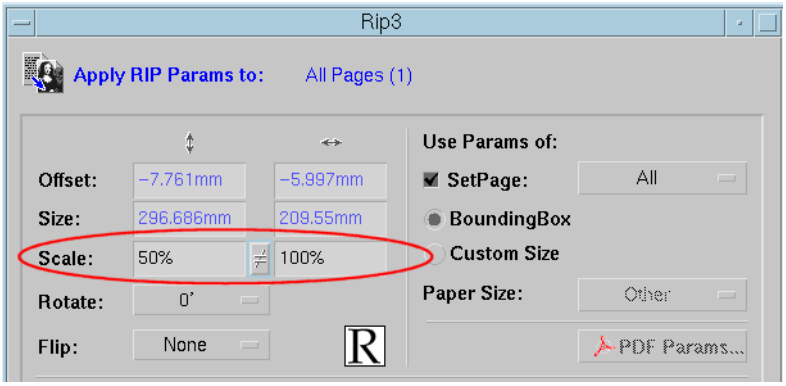
Offset = 0,0
Output size = 40,40

Offset = -40,-40
Output size = 40,40

Scale

Defines the size of the output file relative to the original (100%).

- Type a percentage value in one of the boxes. Values that are larger or smaller than the default size (100%) increase or decrease the size of the output file, without cropping the image.
- To scale without keeping the original proportions between the horizontal and vertical values, type different values in the boxes and click the button; the button switches to .



Rotate

Rotates the output file counter-clockwise by 90, 180 or 270 degrees.

➢ From the **Rotate** popup menu, select the desired value.

Note: In the Imposition workflow, it is recommend to use Preps to define the orientation of pages in the Layout (and not the **Rotate** option).

Flip

Flips the image horizontally and/or vertically.

➢ From the **Flip** popup menu, select the desired value.

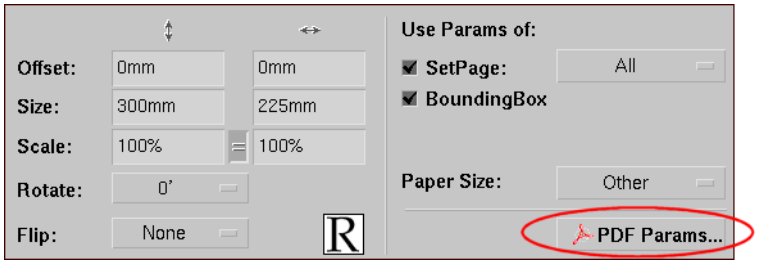


The icon that appears next to the Flip box shows the resulting orientation of the page according to the Rotate and Flip parameters.

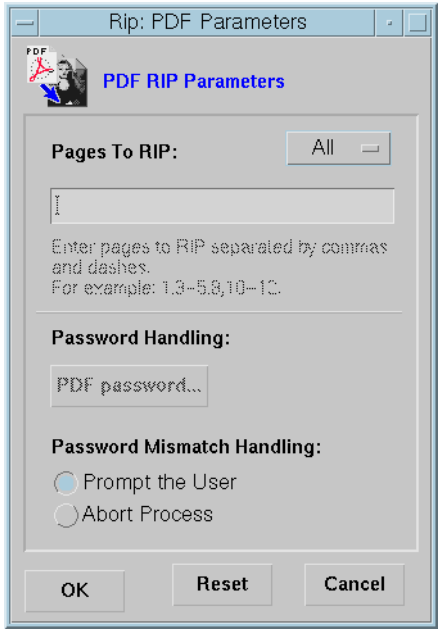
PDF Params

PDF is a format that is page-independent, enabling you to RIP the whole file or selected pages, according to your needs.

➢ To define special PDF-related parameters, click **PDF Params**.



The Rip: PDF Parameters window is displayed.



Pages To RIP

Defines which pages to RIP.

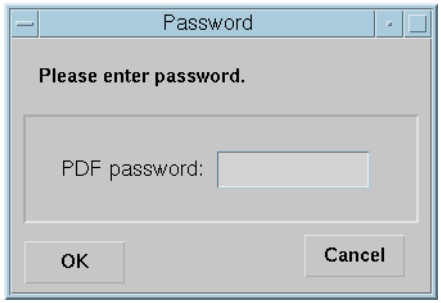
- From the **Pages To RIP** popup menu, select **All**, **First**, **Even** or **Odd**.

  Alternatively, select **Range** and in the **Pages To RIP** box, type the number of a specific page and/or range of pages (such as, 2, 5-24, 32).

Note: The **Pages To RIP** option is relevant for multi-page PDF files only.

PDF Password...

1. When creating a template, click **PDF Password...** to open the Password dialog box.



2. Type the relevant password and click **OK**.

Note: This option is active if RIP was activated by dragging a PDF, that was already assigned a password, to the RIP icon or when creating a template that contains RIP.

Password Mismatch Handling

Instructs how the RIP handles a mismatch between the typed password and the assigned password in the PDF file.

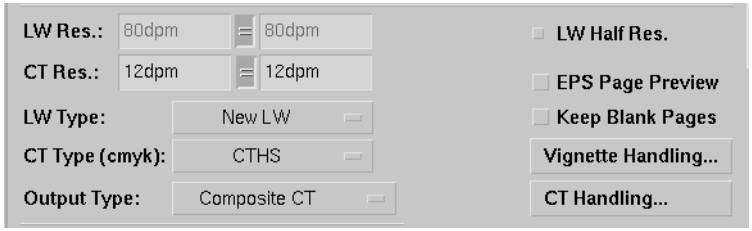
- Select **Prompt the User** to hold the RIP, enable the user to type the correct password, and continue the process.

Note: If a password is not typed before the timeout limitation is reached (2 minutes) or if a user typed an incorrect password three times, the Job fails.

- Select **Abort Process** to completely stop the RIP process automatically.

Output File Type and Resolution

The following parameters define the resolution of the CT and LW files created during RIP and the types of CT and LW formats.



LW Res.

Defines the output resolution (height and width) of the LW files created during RIP.

Important: If the template contains both **RIP** and **Expose** (or **PlateExp**), the selected Screen Set in the Expose (or Plate Expose) window sets the value of the **LW Res.** parameter in the RIP3 window and you are unable to modify it here.

LW Half Res.

Note: This option is available only when the template contains both **RIP** and **Expose** (or **PlateExp**).

- Select the **LW Half Res.** check box to expose pages (on film or plate) using an LW resolution that is exactly half of the defined output resolution.

  Half the **LW Res.** value defined in the Expose/Plate Expose window is automatically used as the LW Res. parameter in the RIP3 window (and cannot be modified here).

- Clear the **LW Half Res.** check box to expose the pages using the full LW resolution.

CT Res.

Defines the output resolution (height and width) of the CT files created during RIP.

LW Type

Defines the format of the LW files created during RIP.

LW HS (Handshake)

An LW format supported by the Whisper, PS/2, Macintosh, and PC platforms.

LW Native

An LW format supported by the Whisper and PS/2 platforms.

New LW

An LW format supported by the Brisque. This is the default option.



Note: LW files containing more than 256 colors, or that are generated for spot color separations, are automatically created in the **New LW** format.

CT Type (cmyk)

If the defined **Output Type** (see page 87) is **Composite CT** or **CT Only**, you can further define the format of the output CT, as follows:

- Select a CT format that is supported by the application in which you intend to re-edit the image after RIPping.

CT HS (Handshake)

A CT format supported by the Whisper and PS/2 platforms, and by the Photoshop application (on the Macintosh and PC). This is the default option.

CT Native

A CT format supported by the Whisper and PS/2 platforms.

New CT

A CT format supported the Brisque.



Note: CT files containing spot color separations are automatically created in the **New CT** format.
A **New CT** file can also be edited using Adobe Photoshop if the **Creo NewCT Plug-In for Photoshop** is installed.

Output Type

Specifies which files (CT and/or LW) are created during the RIP.

Composite CT

Creates a CT that includes all the CT elements in the input using the **CT Res.** (see *page 85*) and a New CT for each spot separation. This is the default option.

CT Only

Creates one CT that includes all the CT and LW elements.

Note: LW Type (see *page 85*) and the options in the CT Handling dialog box, except for **Smooth Scale**, (see *page 95*) become unavailable.

No CTs

Creates LW files only; elements that would have been converted to CT are not RIPped.

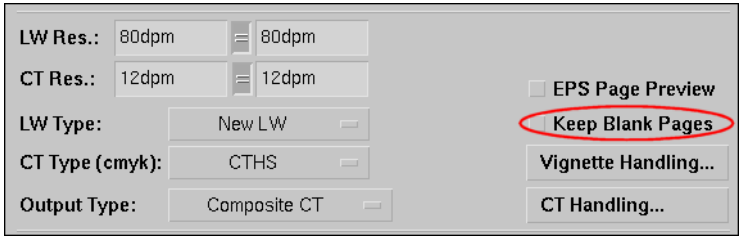
This option is useful when modifying LW elements of an already RIPped file whose CT elements do not need to be modified.

Note: The **CT Handling** and **CT Type (cmyk)** options (see *page 95* and *page 86*, respectively) become unavailable.

Keep Blank Pages

This option instructs the RIP how to handle empty pages encountered during a multi-page RIP.

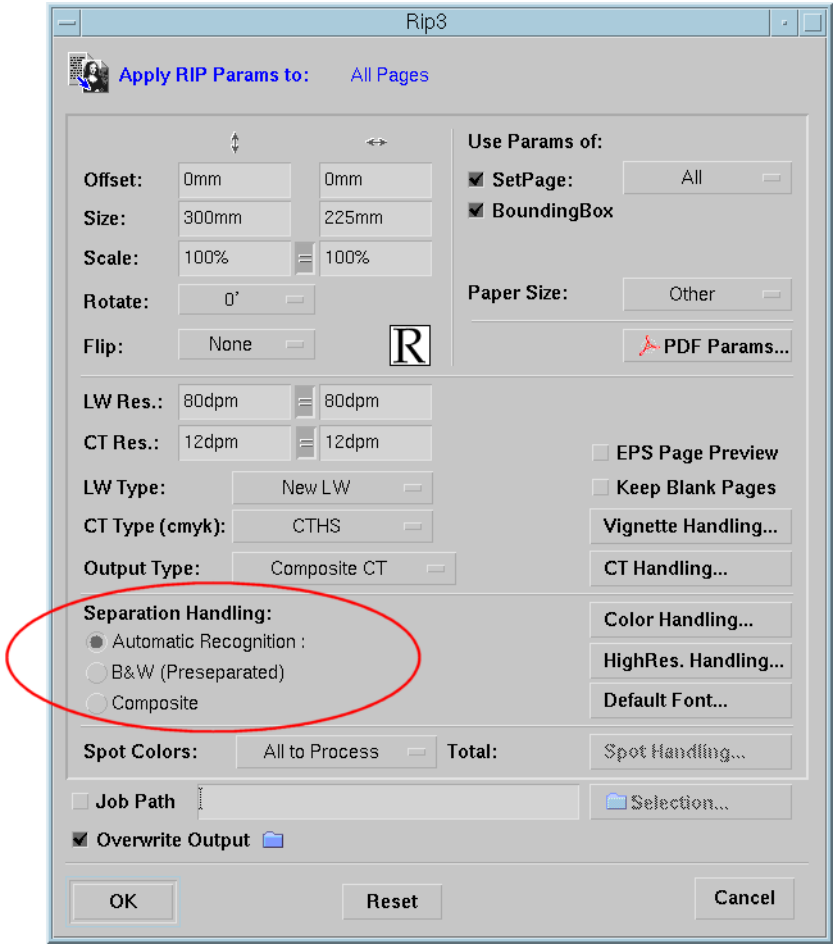
- Select **Keep Blank Pages** so that empty pages are taken into account and the original numbering of the pages in the input file is maintained.



- Clear **Keep Blank Pages** so that empty pages are eliminated and only non-empty pages found during the RIP are sequentially numbered.

Separation Handling

These parameters determine whether the input file is handled as a composite color file or as a pre-separated file.



Automatic Recognition

Lets the RIP application automatically identify the input file as a composite color file or a pre-separated file.



Note: The file is assumed to be composite unless information that indicates it to be pre-separated is found. Since this information may reside at the end of the file, for the RIP to properly identify a pre-separated file, select **B&W (Preseparated)** or make sure that **Full** is selected in **Parsing Level** box of the RIP Preferences window (see *Chapter 4, Brisque Utilities & Preferences, RIP Preferences* on page 50).

B&W (Preseparated)

Handles the input file as a pre-separated file.



Note: Use this option as a manual override for **Automatic Recognition**.

Composite

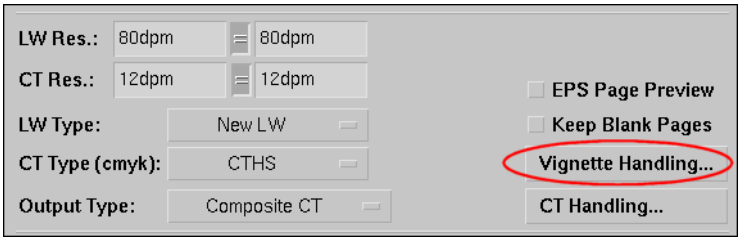
Handles the input file as a composite file. Only use this option if for some reason RIP is identifying your file as pre-separated and you are certain the file is a composite file. You cannot use this option to force the application to handle a pre-separated file as if it were a composite color file.

Vignette Handling

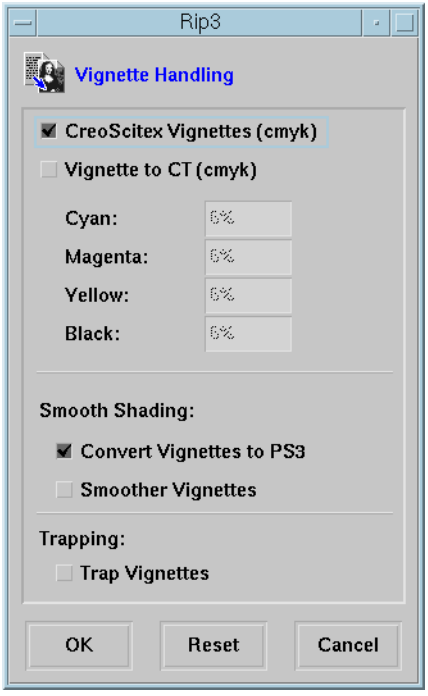
Use the parameters in the Vignette Handling dialog box to:

- Specify whether vignettes (gradients) are converted to CTs or LWs during the RIP
- Specify when color pairs are converted to CTs
- Define smooth shading and trapping.

➢ Click **Vignette Handling**.



The RIP3 - Vignette Handling dialog box is displayed.



Creo Vignettes (cmyk)



Note: Intended for CMYK vignettes created in graphic applications using Creo vignette tools (for example, the Creo Blends™ XTension for QuarkXPress, the Creo.prp plug-in for Freehand, and EPSF Riders, required for Illustrator 6 only).

Normally, vignettes are converted to LWs during the RIP.

- Select **Creo Vignettes (cmyk)** (the default option) to force the RIP to convert the vignettes into CTs, resulting in a better quality output image. This option also adds noise to the resulting CTs, creating a smoother image.



Note: If the Creo vignettes contain spot colors, they are converted to CMYK.

Vignette to CT (cmyk)



Note: Intended for CMYK vignettes created in graphic applications without using Creo vignette tools.

Determines which blends or color pairs are converted to CT and which remain part of the LW.

The following is relevant only if **PS Overprint** is selected (see *page 98*).

- Select **Vignette to CT (cmyk)**, and in the Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black boxes, define the color difference (in %) that triggers the conversion of elements to CT.

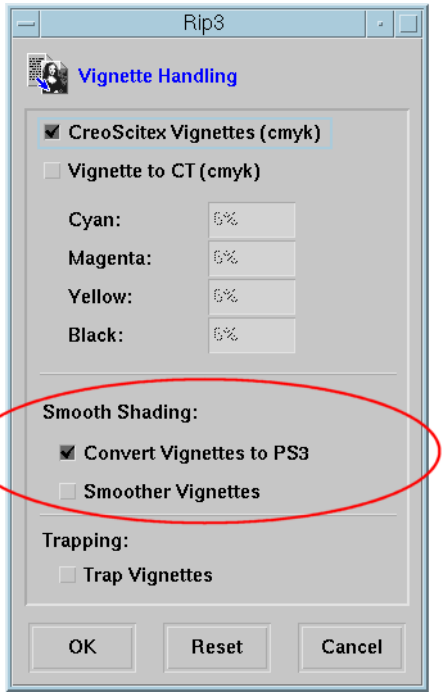
  Note: The higher the value, it is more likely that elements are converted to CTs; the lower the value, it is more likely they are processed as LWs.

  If the color difference between a color pair is *equal to or less than* the value defined in the related box, the elements are converted to CT (if it is larger, they remain in the LW). For example, 6% (the default option) converts elements with color difference of 6% or less to CTs.



Note: If the vignette was created in the graphic application with Overprint, it is always converted to LW and the overprint is preserved.

Smooth Shading



The **Smooth Shading** parameters enable you to create high quality gradient blends in the CT layer.

Note: The parameters fully support CMYK and spot colors (unless **Spot Colors** is set to **All to Process**; see *page 109*). Some of the **Creo vignettes** are also affected by the **Smooth Shading** options (for example, vignettes created in Freehand using the Creo.prp plug-in).

Convert Vignettes to PS3

Converts non-Creo vignettes (such as vignettes created in QuarkXPress) from the PostScript level 2 environment to smooth shading vignettes in the PostScript 3 environment so that when RIPped they are converted to CT data.

Note: This option does not affect vignettes created in Illustrator 9 (they are always converted to CT data). If you want conversion to LW data, save the vignettes on an earlier Illustrator version.

Smoother Vignettes

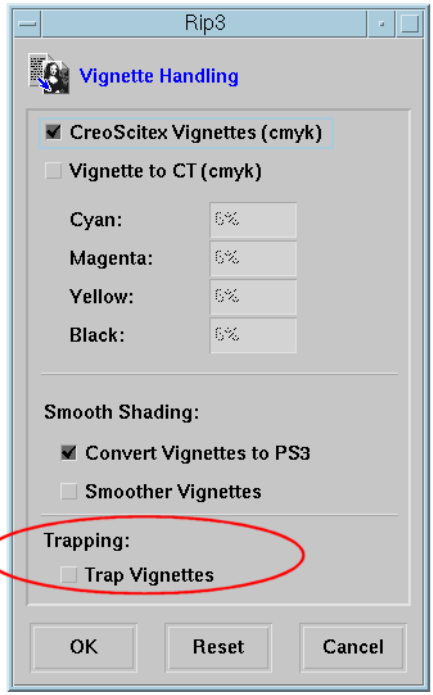
Note: Relevant for non-Creo PostScript 3 vignettes only (that is, vignettes that were originally created as native PostScript 3 vignettes in Illustrator version 7.01 and later or PostScript level 2 vignettes converted to PostScript 3 vignettes using **Convert Vignettes to PS3**).

Use this option for smooth shading vignettes with a narrow transformational range that appear coarse.

The RIP adds noise to the vignette, which lowers the degree of transformational change throughout the vignette, resulting in a much smoother looking vignette.

Tip: Since most vignettes do **not** require smoothing enhancement and the algorithm increases RIPping time, it is strongly recommended **not** to set this option as a default but only use it when necessary.

Trapping



Trap Vignettes

Specifies whether the CT vignettes (such as, Smooth Shading vignettes, Creo vignettes and Vignette to CT vignettes) are trapped by the FAF application.

- Select **Trap Vignettes** to trap all vignettes.
- Clear **Trap Vignettes** so that no vignettes are trapped.

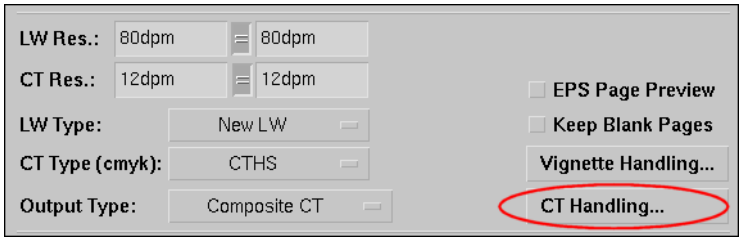


Note: The template does **not** need to contain both **RIP** and **FAF** for this option to function. You may first RIP the file and FAF it later on.

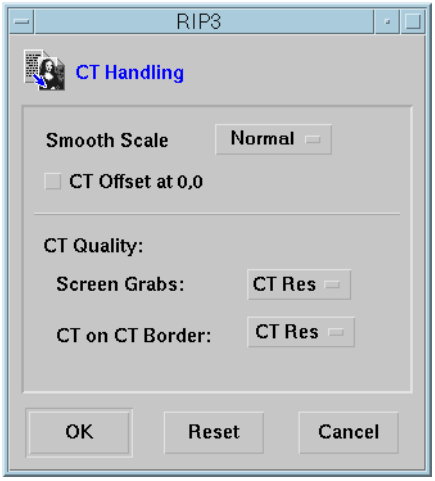
CT Handling

When the defined **Output Type** (see *page 87*) is Composite CT, you can further define the **CT Handling** parameters, as follows.

➢ Click **CT Handling**.



The RIP3 - CT Handling dialog box is displayed.



Smooth Scale

This option is useful when the resolution of the image in the input file is different from the resolution of the output CT, or when the image has been rotated.

➢ Select **None** to disable any smooth scaling (resampling) effect.

➢ Select **Normal** to apply a basic bicubic resampling algorithm. This is the default option.



Note: This algorithm averages the pixels in a sample area and replaces the entire area with the average pixel color at the specified resolution. Use it both for upscaling and for downscaling images.

- Select **Bicubic** to apply a more advanced bicubic resampling algorithm.



Note: This algorithm uses a weighted average to determine pixel color and usually yields better results. This option is the slowest, but most precise method providing the smoothest tonal gradations. Use it specifically for downscaling images.

CT Offset at 0,0

- Select **CT Offset at 0,0** when handling PS/2 or Whisper CT files.



Note: The top left is defined as 0,0 and is aligned to the top left of the base LW. The bottom right can be less than or equal to the height and width of the entire page.

- For other files, clear the **CT Offset at 0,0** for a quicker RIP and a smaller Job.



Note: The image is RIPped from the actual top left corner of the CT image (and not from the corner of the actual page on which the image is placed).

CT Quality

Screen Grabs

Determines whether screen captures are converted to CTs or to LWs.

- Select **LW Res** to convert the captures to LW. This results in a higher resolution, but takes up more disk space and increases RIPping time.
- Select **CT Res** to convert the captures to CT. This results in a smaller file, with a lower resolution. This is the default option.

CT on CT Border

When two neighboring CTs overlap, the transition from one CT to the next may appear jagged.

- To prevent the jagged effect, select **LW Res**. This improves the resolution of the overlap area, but increases RIP time and the size of the output file.
- For a quicker RIP and a smaller output file, select **CT Res**. The resolution of the overlap area is lower than when selecting **LW Res**. This is the default option.

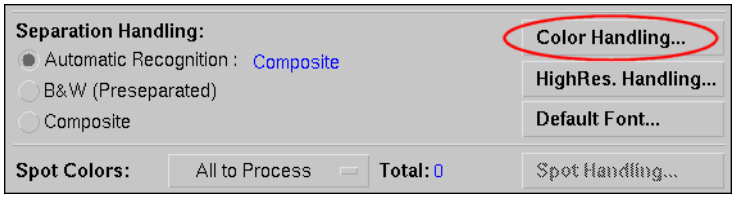


Note: If the template contains both **RIP** and **FAF**, and **CT to CT** is selected in the *FAF* parameters, ***LW Res*** is automatically selected in **CT on CT Border** (and cannot be modified here).

Color Handling

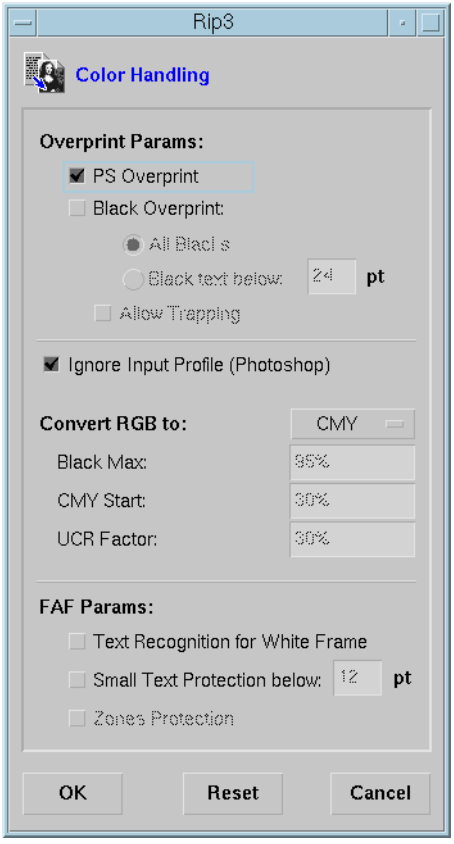
The Rip3 - Color Handling dialog box contains parameters that let you further define the handling options for a color file.

➢ Click **Color Handling....**



Note: The **Color Handling...** button is not available if **B&W (Preseparated)** is selected in the **Separation Handling** section of the RIP parameters (see *page 89*).

The Rip3 - Color Handling dialog box is displayed.

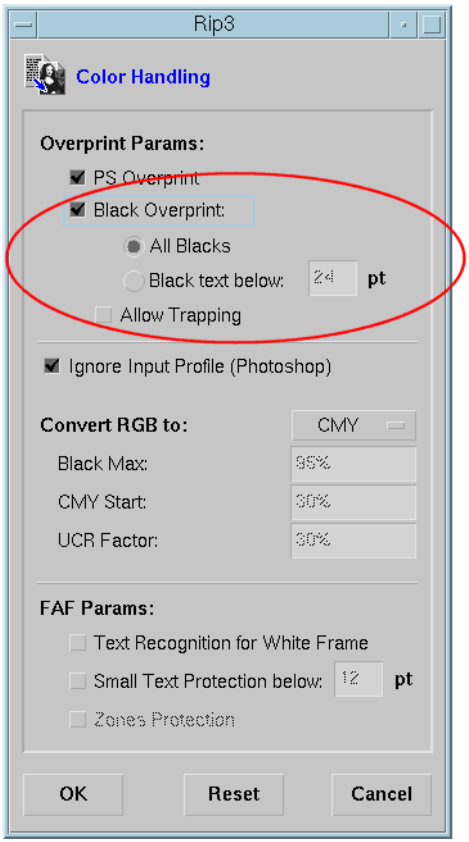


Overprint Params

PS Overprint

➢ Select **PS Overprint** so that the RIP uses the overprint information that exists in the input file.

Black Overprint



➢ Select **Black Overprint** (the default option) so that RIP identifies all the elements that have a 100% Black process value and redefines the values of the color separations underlying these areas to prevent knockouts.

For example, the Black and Magenta separations of a composite file contain a Black letter A on a Magenta background:

	C	M	Y	K
Background (Magenta)	80	20	0	0
Black element (letter A)	0	0	0	100
Final Black element	80	20	0	100

After selecting **Black Overprint**, the letter A is identifies as a Black element and the separations that have a zero value for this element are assigned the value of the underlying separation (such as, Cyan 80). The Black separation remains unchanged.

- Select **All Blacks** to identify as Black Overprint all text and graphic elements that have a 100% Black process value. This is the default option.
- Select **Black text below** to identify as Black Overprint all text elements that are smaller than the specified point value (by default, 24 pt) and have a 100% Black process value.



Note: If this value (for example, 24) is larger than the value (for example, 12) of **Small Text Protection below** (see *page 103*) and **Allow Trapping** is selected, only the difference between the values is trapped (in this example, text with point size 13-24).



Note: .The FAF process uses the settings of the above options only if **Preserve Color Protection** is selected in the FAF Parameters window.

Allow Trapping

By default, this check box is cleared to prevent Trapping (FAFing) of elements that are identified as **Black Overprint**.



Note: If the template contains both **RIP** and **FAF**, selecting **Preserve Color Protection** in the FAF parameters and leaving **Allow trapping** cleared will not prevent the overprint elements from being FAFed (that is, they are FAFed).

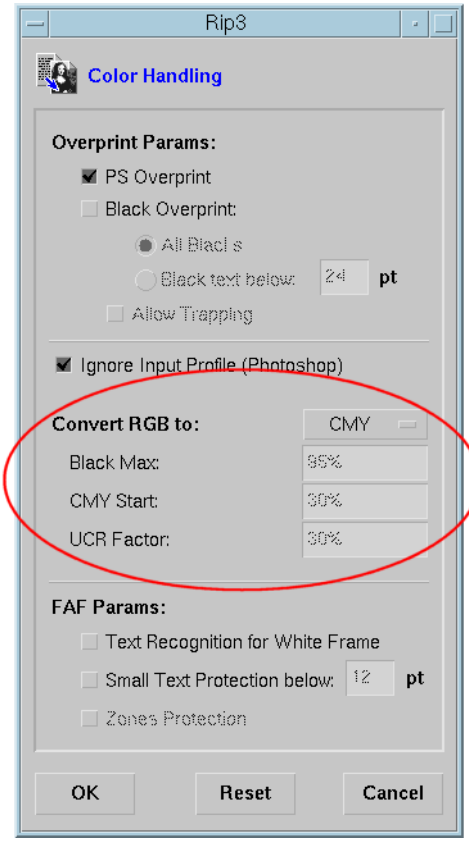
- Select **Allow Trapping** to trap overprint elements.

Ignore Input Profile (Photoshop)

- Select this check box so that CMYK values remain unchanged after the RIP. This is the default option.
- Clear this check box so that RIP transforms the CMYK values according to the embedded CSA profile.

Note: Relevant only for EPS files saved in Photoshop with PostScript Color Management (CSA) profiles and for composite CMYK/grayscale EPS images (either embedded or as high-resolution replacement images in the APR/OPI workflow).

Convert RGB to:



Convert RGB to determines whether RGB colors (device-dependent) are converted to CMY or CMYK.

➢ From the popup menu, select **CMY** (the default option) or **CMYK**. If you select **CMYK**, the boxes described below become active.



Note: Under most circumstances, **CMY** produces excellent results. Color experts may select CMYK and customize the conversion by inserting values into the boxes.

Black Max defines the maximum amount (0% - 100%) of Black to be created if Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow are 100%.

CMY Start defines the minimum (0% - 100%) value of the lightest color (from C, M, Y) at which the system starts to create Black.

For example, if the value is 30%, then for C=60, M=80, Y=28, no Black is created. However, for C= 60, M=35, Y=32, Black is created.

UCR Factor defines how much CMY (0% - 100%) to remove, based on the values of the Black that was created.

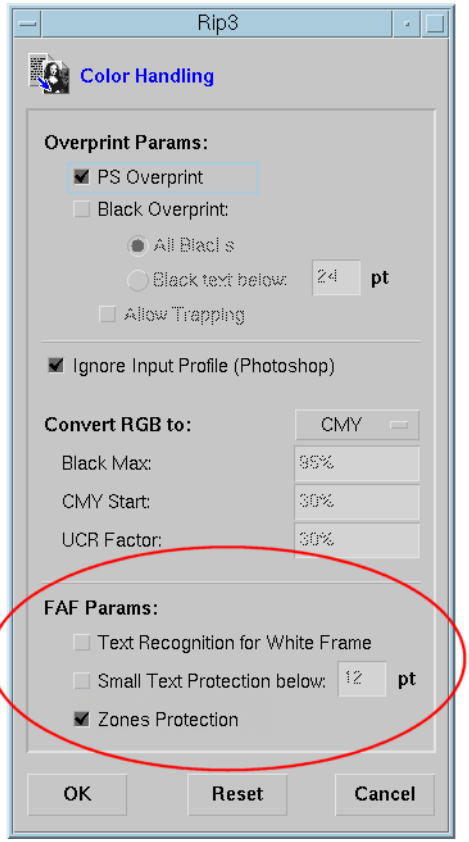
For example, for C=50, M=70, Y=90, the system creates 40% Black. If the UCR value is 50%, 50 percent of 40 are subtracted from the CMY values (i.e., 20%). (0.50 x 40)=20%

The final result is: C=30, M=50, Y=70, K=40



For device-independent color space conversion, see the **Select CRD** option *Chapter 4, Brisque Utilities & Preferences, RIP Preferences* on page 50.

FAF Params



FAF Params are relevant for a Job to be trapped by the FAF application on the Brisque after being RIPped.

Note: The FAF process uses the settings of the following options only if **Small Text Protection** is selected in this dialog box and **Preserve Color Protection** is selected in the FAF Parameters window. See *Chapter 25, Full Auto Frames (Trapping)* for detailed information.

Text Recognition for White Frame

Marks text elements so that when the RIPped Job is FAFed, the FAF decides whether to place a white frame around text which is positioned over a colored CT.

If the template contains both RIP and FAF, and **Automatic White Frame** is selected in the FAF Parameters window, **Text Recognition for White Frame** is automatically selected (and cannot be modified). Similarly, clearing **Automatic White Frame** clears **Text Recognition for White Frame**.

When RIP and FAF are not part of the same template, both options must be selected (that is, **Text Recognition for White Frame** on the RIP3 window and **Automatic White Frame** on the FAF Parameters window).

Small Text Protection below

Protects text that is equal to or smaller than the defined point size from being FAFed.



Note: If the value (for example, 24) of **Black Text Below** (see *page 98*) is larger than this value (for example, 12) and **Allow Trapping** (see *page 99*) is selected, only the difference between the values is trapped (in this example, text with point size 13-24).

Zones Protection



Note: Only active if the file contains zones that were generated using the **Creo FAF Plug-In for Acrobat**.

By default, this option is selected to enable the RIP to detect areas to be protected from trapping.

If the template contains both RIP and FAF, and **Zones Protection** is selected in the FAF Parameters window, **Zones Protection** is automatically selected here (and cannot be modified). Similarly, clearing it in the FAF Parameters window clears it here.

When RIP and FAF are not part of the same template, the option must be selected both on the RIP3 window and on the FAF Parameters window.

If you drag a PostScript or PDF file to the RIP icon and the file contains a defined zone(s), the **Zones Protection** option is selected automatically.

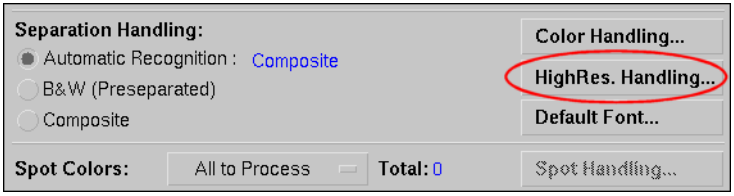
HighRes. Handling

When working with low-resolution images for layout purposes, you can RIP the high-resolution or low-resolution image. When RIPping the high-resolution image, then Automatic Picture Replacement (APR) occurs during the RIP.

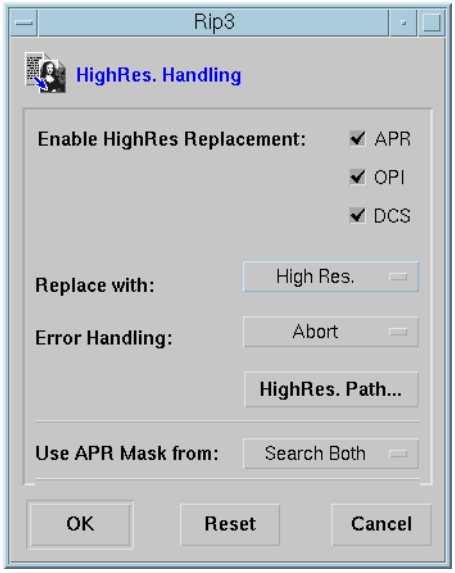
Use **HighRes. Handling** to:

- Define which type of image is RIPped
- Define which format of high-resolution file to use
- Define the path to the high-resolution file
- Define what happens if a high-resolution file is missing (see *Chapter 20, Creo APR/OPI Workflow*).

➢ Click **HighRes. Handling**.



The Rip3 - HighRes. Handling dialog box is displayed.



Enable High Res Replacement

This option instructs the RIP to selectively search specific formats (**APR**, **OPI**, **DCS**) for the high-resolution replacement files. This saves time during the RIP and can prevent confusion when several files, with the same name, exist in multiple formats.

- Select the check boxes next to the formats (**APR**, **OPI** and/or **DCS**) you want to use for the RIP.



Note: When printing via an OPI server, and the PostScript file contains all the high-resolution files embedded within, clear all three options to prevent the unnecessary search for the high-resolution files, thereby decreasing the overall RIP time.

Replace with

This option instructs which resolution to use for the picture replacement.

High Res.

Instructs to perform the high-resolution picture replacement during the RIP, so that the high-resolution image is RIPped. This takes longer but creates the highest quality output file.



Note: When RIPping a file for final output, make sure to activate this option.

Proofing Data

Instructs to RIP the low-resolution file. This is quicker but creates a lower quality output file.



Note: If the PSImage does not contain proofing data and you select this option, there is no replacement and no low-resolution data in the picture area.

Error Handling



Note: Relevant only if **High Res.** is selected in the **Replace with** parameter.

This option defines what happens if a high-resolution file is not located during the RIP.

- Select **Continue** so that if a high-resolution image is not found, the RIP proceeds anyway, and creates windows without any CT elements attached to them or a low-resolution preview (if it exists in the input file).

  When you view the file, you see gray areas marking the place of the missing CT elements.

- Select **Abort** so that if a high-resolution image is not located, the RIP fails and an error message is displayed.

HighRes Path...

By default, the currently defined global high-resolution file paths are used.

Use this option to define different paths for a specific template or operation.



Note: If a high-resolution file is not found in the specified path, the RIP automatically searches for the files in the global high-resolution path list, as defined in the **HiRes** application (see *Chapter 19, High-Resolution File Paths*).

- Click **HighRes. Path...**; the High Res Path dialog box is displayed. See *Chapter 19, High-Resolution File Paths* for detailed instructions.



Note: Changing the global high-resolution file paths has no retroactive effect on the path definitions in existing templates.

Use APR Mask from

During the RIP, masking data can be taken from the low-resolution (PSImage) file, the high-resolution file, or from both.

This option instructs from where to retrieve the masking data.

PSImage



Note: Relevant only if the PSImage file was created in Photoshop.

This option instructs the RIP to use the masking data contained in the PSImage file.

High Res.

This option instructs the RIP to use the masking data in the high-resolution file (if such is contained).



Note: In case of Creo CTs, the masking data contained in the PSImage file is used.

Search Both

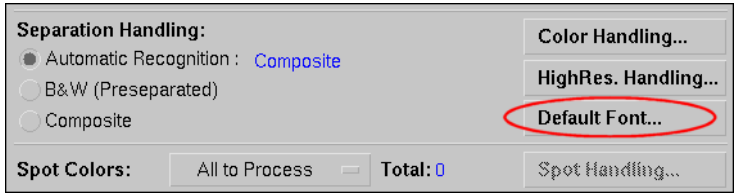
This option instructs the RIP to use masking data taken from the PSImage files over masking data taken from the high-resolution files. When selected, RIP searches first in the PSImage files and if not found, it searches in the high-resolution files.

Please note the following:

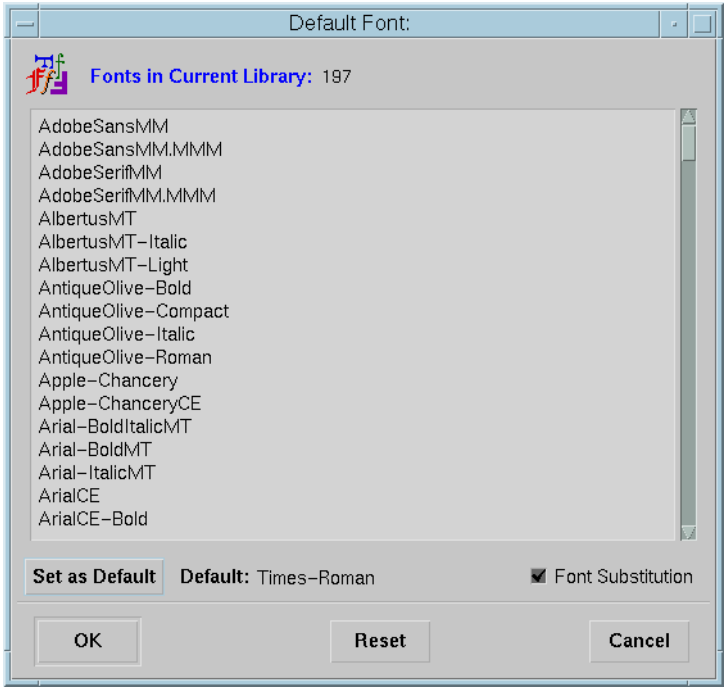
- When HandShake and Native masks are translated into EPSF or DCS files, the mask is translated to a clipping path.
- HandShake and Native mask formats can also be translated into other CT formats, but the masking data is lost.

Default Font

When the RIPped file contains font(s) that do not reside on the Brisque, **Font Substitution** allows the file to be rasterized anyway, by replacing the non-embedded font with the default font.



1. Click **Default Font**; the Default Font dialog box is displayed, listing the fonts that reside on the Brisque.



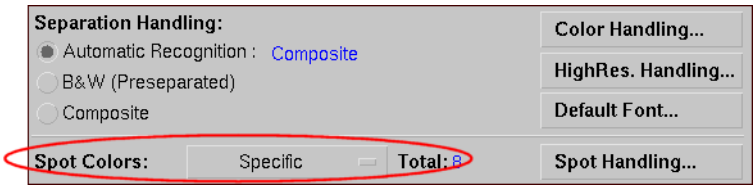
2. Select the **Font Substitution** check box.
3. To designate a substitution font, select the desired replacement font from the Font list, and click **Set as Default**; the selected font is indicated in the Default box.

➢ Clear the **Font Substitution** check box to deactivate Font Substitution.

Spot Colors

The DTP application that creates the file defines and names the spot colors.

Note: The **Spot Colors** option is not available for B&W (pre-separated) files.



When RIPping color files, you can instruct the RIP to process the spot colors from the input file in one of three ways:

- Convert all spot colors to process
- Treat each spot color as an additional separation
- Handle each spot color individually according to user-defined parameters

All to Process

All spot colors in the input file are converted into process colors, using the CMYK dot percentage equivalents. This is the default option.

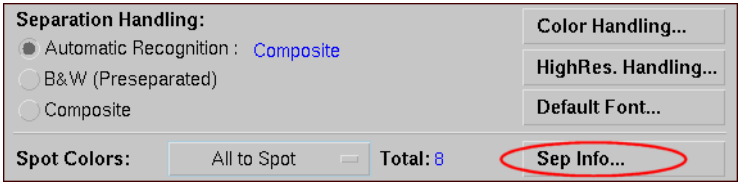
The **Spot Handling** button becomes unavailable.

All to Spot

All spot colors defined in the input file remain spot colors and each generates an additional separation.

Note: RIP supports up to 32 colors, made up of the 4 CMYK process colors and up to 28 spot colors. When this limitation is reached, the RIP aborts and prompts accordingly.

When activating RIP via the Job Ticket Editor, if the active file contains spot colors, the **Sep Info**. button is available.



- To view (but not edit) the defined spot color handling parameters, click **Sep Info**; the Spot Color Handling dialog box is displayed. For details about the spot color handling parameters see *Spot Handling on page 111*.

Specific

Instructs the RIP to process each spot color individually, according to the settings you define in the Spot Color Handling dialog box (see *page 111*).

- If the **Spot Handling** button is available, click it to open the Spot Color Handling dialog box.
- If the Spot Handling button is unavailable, from the **Spot Colors** menu, select **Specific**; the Spot Color Handling dialog box is displayed.

Note: If you created colors using the **Creo Spot Colors XT** for QuarkXPress, you must select **Specific** so that RIP can use the information you defined with the extension.

Note: When defining RIP parameters for a specific file (via the Job Ticket Editor), the number in the **Total** box of the **Spot Colors** option indicates how many spot colors were found in the input file.

Spot Handling

After you select **Specific** from the **Spot Colors** menu, you use the Spot Color Handling dialog box to further define exactly how each spot color is handled.

Note: You can access this dialog box only if the file has spot colors.

Tip: When defining the RIP default parameters or a template, you can predefine the handling of certain spot colors via the Spot Handling dialog box.

Use the Spot Handling feature to do the following:

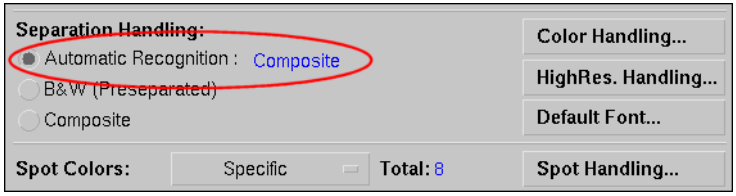
- Specify which spot colors convert to process colors, and which generate additional separations
- Merge separations
- Define varnish and base as special separations
- Redefine opacity values
- Specify whether spot colors overprint

Tip: The more practical use of the **Specific** option is to customize the handling of existing spot colors in a specific Job, on-the-fly.

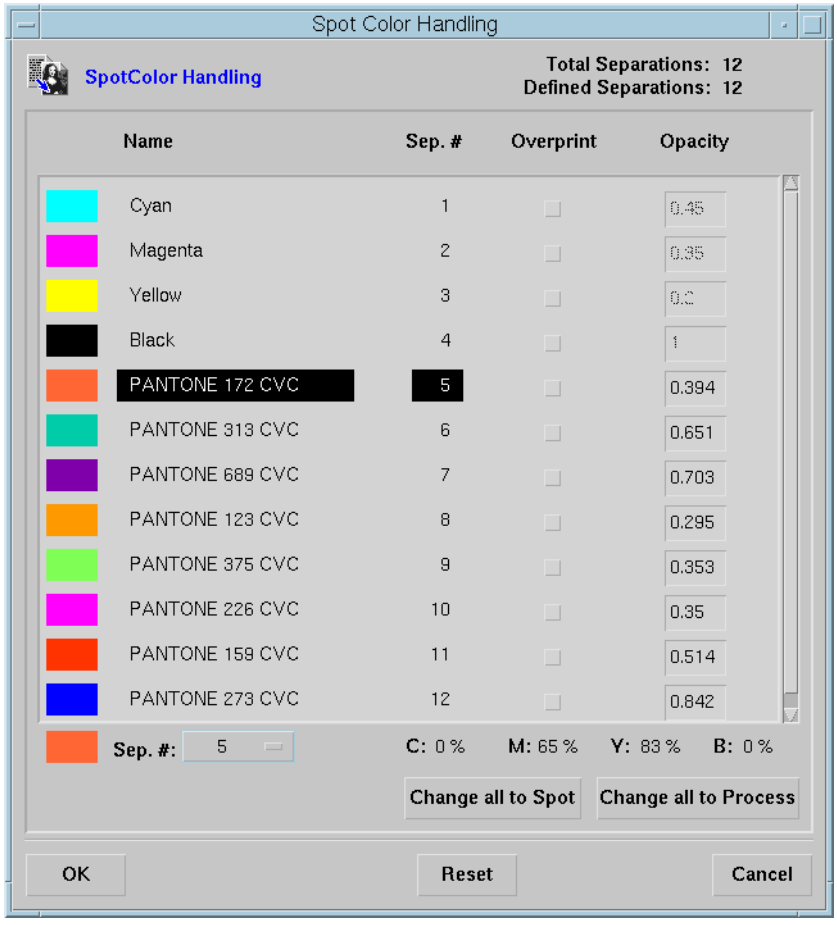
When you send a file to RIP, the application automatically detects all the spot colors in the input file.

To view the list of colors found in the input file and edit them:

1. In the **Separation Handling** section, select **Automatic Recognition**.



2. From the **Spot Colors** menu, select **Specific**; the Spot Color Handling dialog box is displayed.



Name

Displays a color sample and the exact name of the spot color as defined in the input file.

Note: The 4 process colors are listed at the top of the list.

➢ To select a color, click it.

Sep.#

A number, a 'B' (for base), or a 'V' (for varnish) indicates that the color will generate a distinct separation.

A hyphen (-) in this column indicates that the color is converted to process, using the CMYK dot percent equivalents.

Overprint

This option is generally used to compensate for possible misregistration problems.

- Select **Overprint** and the spot color overprints any color which is underneath it.
- Clear **Overprint** and any color that is underneath is knocked out.



Note: The **Overprint** option is only available for the spot color separations (that is, Base and process colors cannot be an overprint, and varnish is automatically an overprint).

Opacity

Displays the opacity value of each color. The Opacity value influences the Ink Strength factor in the FAF calculation. When the value of one color is higher than the value of an adjacent color, the frame between them is toward the darker color.

The **Opacity** boxes are only active for spot color separations. In FAF, there are no Ink Strength Factor parameters available for spot colors, so they must therefore be defined here.



Note: The **Opacity** values for CMYK separations cannot be modified via the RIP application. To do this, modify the **Ink Strength Factor** values in the FAF application.

Defining Separations

When you enter the Spot Color Handling dialog box, the spot colors that were detected in the input file are all defined as **Convert to process** (except for specific spot colors you may have already defined via the default operation parameters or via the template).

The following information appears in the upper right corner of the dialog box.

Total Separations

Indicates the total number of process colors plus spot colors that exist in the input file. This number is not dynamic.

Defined Separations

Indicates the total number of colors defined as individual separations in the RIP (that is, the four process colors plus all the spot colors that will not be converted to process during the RIP).

This number is dynamic, and reflects the changes that you make while editing the separations.

- To select a color from the list, click it.

  The boxes in the section of the dialog box below the color list indicate information about the selected color.

  A sample of the selected color appears to the left of the **Sep. #** menu. The **Sep. #** menu displays one of the following: Base, Process, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black, a separation number, or Varnish. The CMYK process dot percent equivalents appear to the right of the **Sep. #** menu (these boxes cannot be edited).

To handle a selected spot color as an individual separation:

1. Select the color from the list; the selected row is highlighted.
2. From the **Sep. #** menu, select the highest number; the selected color appears in the list just below all the other defined separations, the separation number appears in the Sep. # column next to the color name, and the **Opacity** box becomes available.

   When the file is RIPped, this color generates an additional separation. The number in the **Defined Separations** box is updated.



Note: To create an individual separation for every spot color in the list, click **Change All to Spot**.

To convert a spot color to process:

1. Click the color in the list; the row is highlighted.

   The values in the CMYK boxes in the section below the color list indicate the process dot percent equivalents of the selected color (these boxes cannot be edited).

2. From the **Sep. #** menu, select **Process**; the separation number disappears from the Sep. # column, and the **Opacity** box becomes unavailable.



Note: To convert all the spot colors to process, click **Change All to Process**.

Merging Separations

You can combine separations in order to reduce the total number of separations to be RIPped. For example, if an input file contains two spot colors that are the same but have different names, you can group them together, and the two spot colors will generate only one separation.

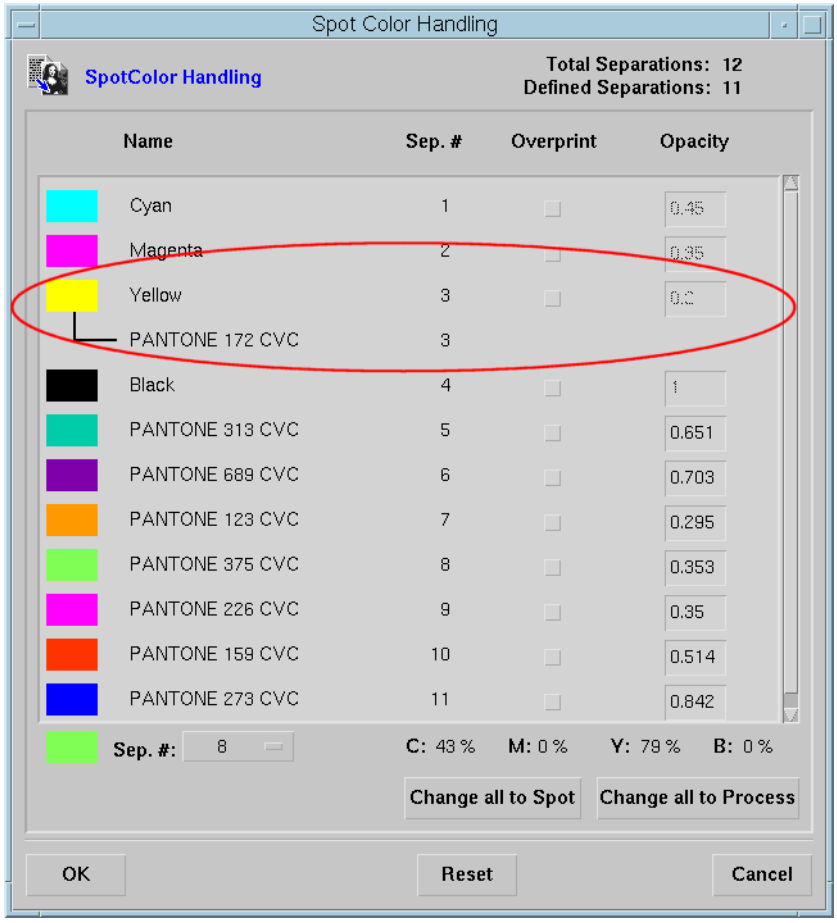
You can combine spot colors with each other, or you can combine spot colors with process colors. You cannot merge process colors.

When you merge two or more colors together, one becomes the 'parent' color, and the others become the 'offspring'. The separation is created according to the defined parameters of the 'parent' color.

To merge separations:

1. From the color list, select a spot color whose separation you want to merge; the row is highlighted.

2. From the **Sep. #** menu, select the separation number of the spot color or the name of the process color that you want to designate the 'parent' color; the selected color is merged into the designated parent.



In the color list, the 'offspring' appears below the 'parent', with a 'step' connecting the 'parent' color sample to the 'offspring' color name.

The **Overprint** and **Opacity** boxes disappear from the 'offspring' row (since the 'offspring' cannot have different values than its 'parent').

If the selected separation was a spot color, the number in the **Defined Separations** box decreases by one.

The number of the 'offspring' appearing in the *Sep.#* column is identical to the number of the 'parent'.

To separate merged colors:

1. Select an 'offspring' from the color list.
2. From the Sep. # menu, select the highest number in the list; the selected spot color is no longer grouped with the 'parent' color, and appears in the color list as a distinct separation.

   The color sample and the **Overprint** and **Opacity** boxes reappear, and the number in the **Defined Separations** box is updated.

Creating a Varnish

Use this feature to make a separation or combined separations a Varnish color. Varnish applies a transparent overcoat, and must be a distinct separation. The Varnish separation indicates exactly where to apply the Varnish. The Varnish separation is always an 'overprint', since it is applied on top of the other separations.



Note: This option only affects the final output if the file is FAFed after the RIP. For detailed information, see *Chapter 25, Full Auto Frames (Trapping)*.

To create a Varnish spot color:

1. From the color list, select the spot color; the row is highlighted.
2. From the Sep. # menu, select **Varnish**; the separation is designated varnish, and a 'V' appears in the Sep. # column next to the selected color.

Creating a Base

Use this feature to make a separation or combined separations a Base color. Use a Base color when printing over special materials (such as transparent or metallic surfaces). Base applies a uniform, opaque background that serves as a suitable foundation for ink to print on. The Base separation indicates exactly where to apply the Base coat. The Base separation is never overprinted.

To make a spot color Base:

1. From the color list, select the spot color; the row is highlighted.
2. From the **Sep. #** menu, select **Base**; a 'B' appears in the Sep. # column next to the selected color.



Important: You cannot have more than one Base separation. Once a Base separation exists, any additional spot colors that are designated Base are automatically merged with the existing Base separation.

Redefining Opacity Values

If you intend to FAF the image you are RIPping, then changing the opacity values that appear in the right column of the color table affects the direction of the frames that are created during FAF.

When two colors touch, the color with the lower opacity value spreads under the higher one. In most cases, the default opacity value is satisfactory. However, you probably should change the value in cases of customized trapping, or when printing metallic spots where ink strength has little meaning.

You can only edit the opacity values of colors that are going to generate individual separations. You cannot define the opacity of colors that are converted to process. Nor can you define the opacity of colors that are designated Base or Varnish.

Overprinting

Spot colors cannot be obtained by combining the four process inks. They require special inks (such as, metallic colors).

When you activate the **Overprint** option for a spot color, then the spot color overprints any separations that are underneath it. The CMYK separations retain their values as defined in the input file.

If a spot color was defined in a Macintosh application with **Overprint** active, the color separation of the element that equals zero shows the color beneath it. This means that this component of the see-through element takes the separation value of the element beneath it.

If you do not activate the **Overprint** option, then the process colors are knocked out in the area defined as a special color. One possible problem with knocking out the process colors is that if the separations shift during printing, you may see white areas. For more information, see *Chapter 25, Full Auto Frames (Trapping)*.

Handling Spot Colors in a Template or for the Default RIP Parameters

You can manually add specific spot colors to the Spot Color Handling dialog box and predefine their handling parameters via the RIP default operation parameters, or via a template.

For example, if your input files for one customer frequently contain the same spot color, and you want that color to always be handled in a particular way, you can define a template whose RIP parameters include specific Color Handling parameters for that color.

If, however, the input files are not created in-house, the name of that particular spot color may vary, depending upon which application was used to create the input file (for example, Gold or Gold CV).



Note: Unless the name of the spot color in the input file is exactly the same as the predefined spot color in the Spot Color Handling dialog box, the RIP will not apply the user-defined handling parameters to that color (that is, the feature is not case sensitive.)

If some spot colors are not predefined in the template, the RIP converts them to Process. To prevent this, make sure you add and define all the spot colors before RIPping.

Please refer to the previous section for a thorough description of the Spot Color Handling dialog box options, but note the following differences:

- The Separation Equivalence boxes, and the **Change All to Spot** and **Change All to Process** buttons do not appear.
- The **Add** and **Delete** buttons appear.

Adding a Spot Color

Use the **Add** button to add a spot color to the list in the Spot Color Handling dialog box and predefine its handling parameters.

To add a spot color to the list:

1. Click **Add**; a new row appears in the color list.
2. Type the name of the spot color in the text box that appears in the Name column.

   Make sure that the name you type is the color name used in the input file.
3. Designate a separation number with the **Sep. #** menu (see *page 114*).



Note: When you want to go back and redefine the separation number of a particular separation, select the color by clicking in the Sep. # column or on its color sample.

Deleting a Spot Color

Use the **Delete** button to delete a user-defined spot color from the list.

To delete a user-defined spot color:

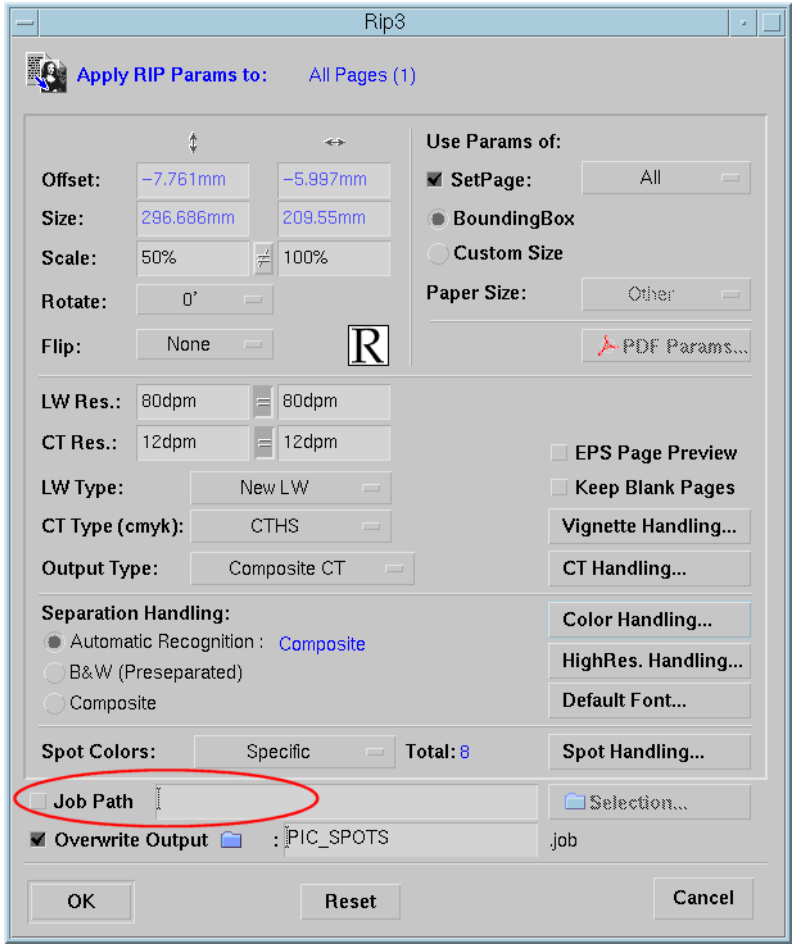
1. In the Spot Color Handling list, click the row of the color that you want to delete; the row is highlighted.
2. Click **Delete**; the spot color is deleted from the list, and the separation numbers of the remaining spot colors are updated automatically.

Defining the Destination of the Output Job

By default, when you RIP a Postscript or PDF file, the resulting Job file(s) is placed in the same folder as the input file. If you want, you can send the Job to an alternative destination.

To define an alternative destination for the output Job:

1. Select the **Job Path** check box; the Selection button becomes available.



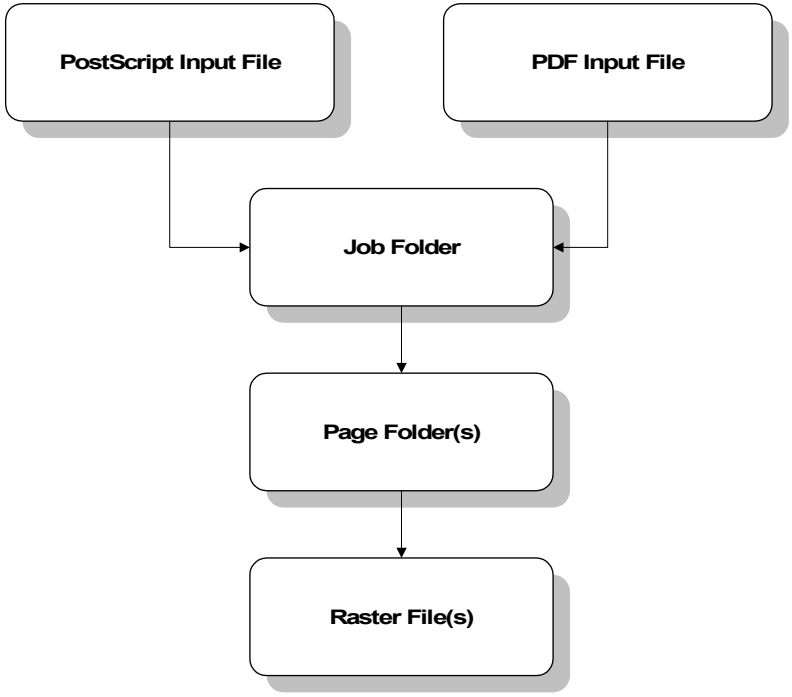
2. Click **Selection**; a standard browser is displayed.
3. From the browser, select the destination path to which you want the output Job to be sent, and click **OK**; you return to the RIP3 window and the defined path appears in the **Job Path** box.

- To send the Job to the default Job Path, clear the **Job Path** check box. Even if you have defined an alternative Job Path, and it appears in the **Job Path** box, the Job is created in the folder of the input file.

File Naming Conventions

The folders and files that result from RIPping a file inherit their names from the input file, with certain additions. It is important to understand the naming conventions that the Brisque uses to automatically assign names to the folders and files that are created during RIP.

When a file is RIPped, a **Job** folder is created. The Job folder contains one or more **Page** folders, and each Page folder contains **Raster** files.



You can RIP a composite file or a pre-separated file, a single-page file or a multi-page file. When the RIP is complete, you can identify the folders and files by their extensions and icons.

Specifically which folders and files are created during RIP depends upon the configuration of the input file.

Composite Files

When a composite file is RIPped, a Job folder is created, and given the name of the input file plus the **.job** extension.

The Job folder contains Page folder(s), whose names indicate the Job and the Page number. The Page folder(s) contain the raster files. The Raster files are assigned the name of the Page folder, plus an extension that indicates whether the Raster file is CT or LW.

The following table illustrates the naming conventions for the folders and files that are created when you RIP a two-page, composite file.

Folder/File Type	Naming Convention	Example
Input File	filename	Lobster.ps or Lobster.pdf
Job Folder	filename.job	Lobster.job
First Page Folder Raster Files	filename-P1.p filename-P1.[LW extension*] filename-P1-CT1.[CT extension**]	Lobster-P1.p Lobster-P1.nlw* Lobster-P1-CT1.ch**
Second Page Folder Raster Files	filename-P2.p filename-P2. lw or filename-P2.lh or filename-P2.nlw* filename-P2-CT1.ch or filename-P2-CT1.ct or filename-P2-CT1.nct**	Lobster-P2.p Lobster-P2.nlw* Lobster-P2-CT1.ch**

*The LW extension depends upon the user-defined **LW Type** in the RIP3 window. A LW Handshake file is given a **.lh** extension, a LW Native file is given a **.lw** extension, and a New LW file is given an **.nlw** extension.

The CT extension depends upon the user-defined **Output CT Type in the RIP3 window. A CT Handshake file is given a **.ch** extension, a CT Native file is given a **.ct** extension, and a New CT file is given an **.nct** extension.

Note: When you RIP multi-page files with more than two pages, the additional Page folders and their Raster files follow the same naming pattern as illustrated on *page 123*.

Please note the following:

- If the Job in the example only contained LW elements (no CT elements), each Page folder would only contain **Lobster.-P**[pagenumber]. [LW extension] file.

Pre-separated Files

The Job and Page folders created when you RIP a pre-separated input file follow the same naming conventions as those created when you RIP a composite file. The way the application names Raster files differs because the file name must indicate a separation.

The following table illustrates the naming conventions for the folders and files that are created when you RIP a one Page, pre-separated file that contains the 4 process colors.

Folder/File Type	Naming Convention	Example
Input File	filename	Parrot.ps or Parrot.pdf
Job Folder	filename.job	Parrot.job
Page Folder	filename-P1.p	Parrot-P1.p
Raster Files	filename-P1-[separation]-LW[separation#].[LW extension*] filename-P1-[separation]-CT[separation#].[CT extension**]	Parrot-P1-K-LW1.nlw Parrot-P1-C-LW2.nlw Parrot-P1-M-LW3.nlw Parrot-P1-Y-LW4.nlw* Parrot-P1-K-CT1.ch Parrot-P1-C-CT2.ch Parrot-P1-M-CT3.ch Parrot-P1-Y-CT4.ch**

*The LW extension depends upon the user-defined **LW Type** in the RIP3 window. A LW Handshake file is given a **.lh** extension, a LW Native file is given a **.lw** extension, and a New LW file is given an **.nlw** extension.

The CT extension depends upon the user-defined **Output CT Type in the RIP3 window. A CT Handshake file is given a **.ch** extension, a CT Native file is given a **.ct** extension, and a New CT file is given an **.nct** extension.

Please note the following:

- If the file had multiple pages, each additional Page generates its own Page folder and Raster files. These folders and files are named according to the same patterns described and illustrated in the preceding table.
- If the file contains spot colors that are not going to be converted to process, additional Raster files, representing the additional separations, appear in the Page folders. The maximum number of supported separations is 32.

The following table illustrates the naming conventions for the additional Raster files that are created when you RIP a pre-separated file with 4 process colors plus 2 spot colors.

Folder/File Type	Naming Conventions	Example
Raster Files	filename-P1-sS[separation #]-LW[separation #].[LW extension*]	Parrot-P1-sS5-LW5.nlw Parrot-P1-sS6-LW6.nlw*
	filename-P1-sS[separation #]-CT[separation #].[CT extension**]	Parrot-P1-sS5-CT5.ch Parrot-P1-sS6-CT6.ch**

*The LW extension depends upon the user-defined **LW Type** in the RIP3 window. A LW Handshake file is given a **.lh** extension, a LW Native file is given a **.lw** extension, and a New LW file is given an **.nlw** extension.

The CT extension depends upon the user-defined **Output CT Type in the RIP3 window. A CT Handshake file is given a **.ch** extension, a CT Native file is given a **.ct** extension, and a New CT file is given an **.nct** extension.

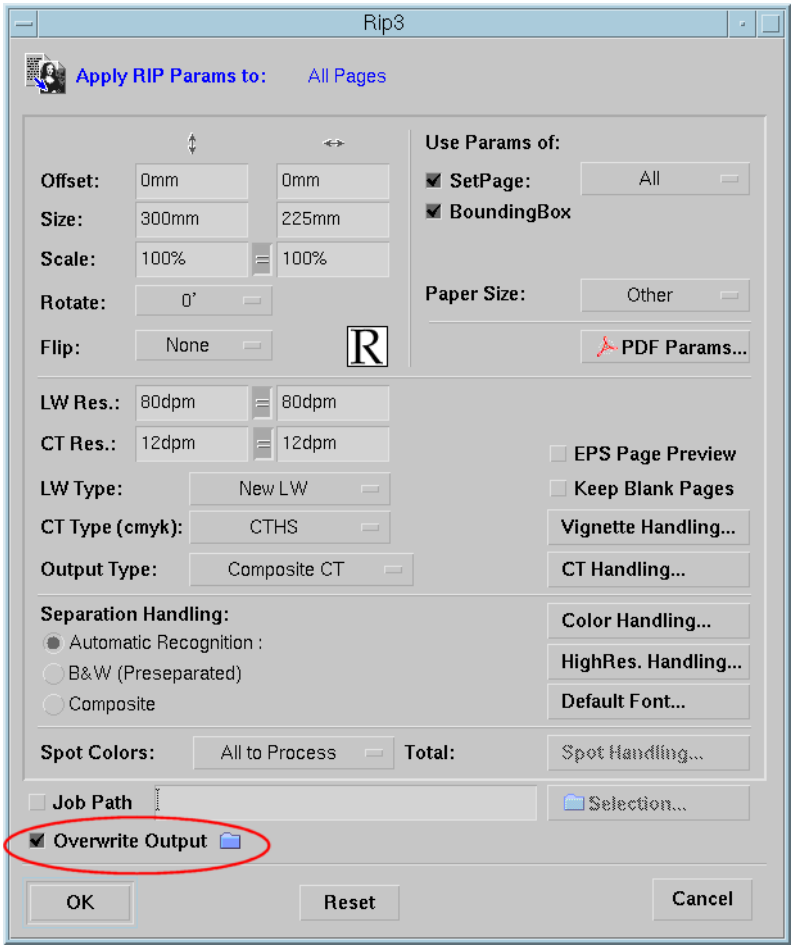


Note: Spot CTs create NCT files (one per each spot color); LWs with spot colors create NLW files.

Overwrite Output

When you RIP a PostScript or PDF file, the resulting Job is named after the input file and given the **.job** extension. For example, when RIPping **Blue.ps**, the resulting Job is named **Blue.job**.

If you RIP the same PostScript/PDF file again, the newly created Job receives the same name, overwriting the previous Job.



- To re-RIP the same file, without overwriting the existing Job, clear the **Overwrite Output** option.

  For example, when RIPping **Blue.ps**, the Jobs that result from additional RIPs abide by the following naming conventions: the first Job remains **Blue.job**; the second Job is named **Blue_1.job**, the third job **Blue_2.job**, and so on.

  Alternatively, you can change the destination folder of the RIPped file as described in *Defining the Destination of the Output Job on page 121*.

19 High-Resolution File Paths

Introduction 130
Defining Global High-Resolution File Paths 132
Path Priority 134

Introduction

Brisque supports the APR, DCS, and OPI workflows, which let you reduce production time by letting you work with both low and high resolution versions of an image. During the Page Layout stage of production, you can use the low resolution file for positioning, scaling proofing, checking Layouts, etc. When the Layout is finished, you generate a PostScript file from the Page-Building application, with OPI, APR, or DCS comments that name the high resolution replacement files. When this PostScript file reaches the Brisque RIP, and the comments regarding the high resolution image replacement are encountered, the RIP searches for the high resolution replacement images in the locations defined by the High Resolution File Paths.

Although the high resolution picture replacement takes place during the RIP, the High Resolution File Paths are also used during the PreFlight Check and the PostScript Preview operations.

How you define the High Resolution File Paths determines which folders are searched for the High Resolution replacement files, and in what order. when the RIP encounters PostScript information indicating that High Resolution Picture Replacement is necessary.

This chapter describes how to define global High Resolution File Paths. You can also define High Resolution File Paths locally, via the RIP, Preview, or PreFlight Check windows, while defining the default operation parameters, when building a template, or when modifying processing parameters on the fly via the Job Ticket Editor.

Please note that when you create a new Template, by default, the existing global High Resolution File paths are added to the RIP, Preview and PreFlight Check parameters, as if they were locally defined. Changing the global High Resolution File paths later on has no retroactive effect on existing templates.



Refer *Chapter 16, Preview*, *Chapter 17, PreFlight Check*, and *Chapter 18, RIP* for details.

If you are defining a Template that contains any combination of the RIP, PreFlight Check, or Preview operations, changing the defined High Resolution File Paths in one of the operations automatically changes the

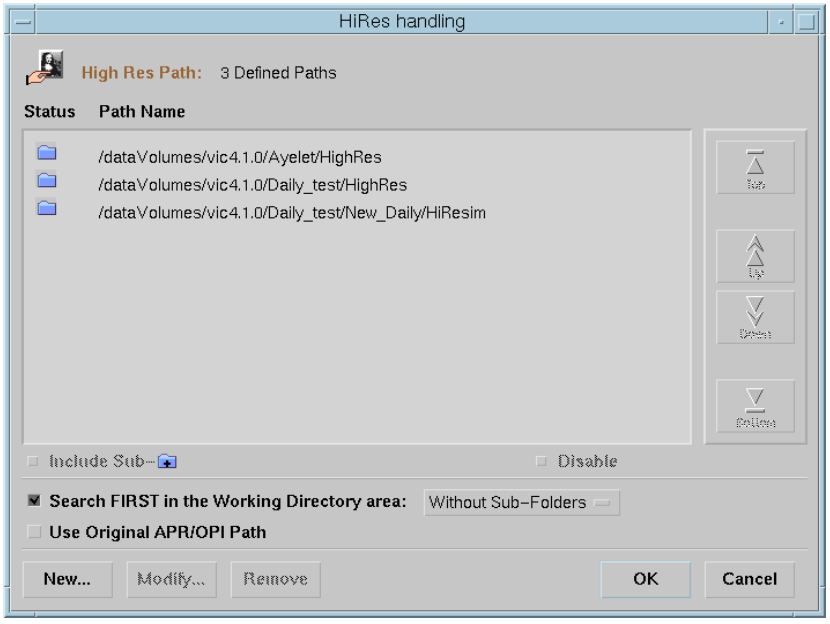
defined High Resolution File Paths in the other operations as well. (This is also true when you are editing a Job Ticket on the fly via the Job Ticket Editor.)

Defining Global High-Resolution File Paths

You can define system global High Resolution file paths. The system uses the global paths to locate the high resolution files during RIP, Priview of a PS files, PreFlight Check, when either of the following cases occur:

- If no other paths are indicated by the High Resolution Handling parameters defined in the RIP operation.
- If High Resolution paths have been defined in the RIP operation, but the system cannot find the required high resolution files in these paths.

➢ To open the HiRes handling window, from the Brisque Launch Pad, open the **RIP Setup** panel, then double-click the **HiRes** icon.



The HiRes handling window displays the High Resolution File Paths that have already been defined.

- To add a path to the list, click **New**; the HiRes Path browser window appears.

  Use this browser to navigate to the folder or folders that will contain the high resolution files necessary for picture replacement during the RIP.

- To modify a defined path, select it, then click **Modify**; a browser appears, automatically opened to the location of the selected path.

  Or, double-click the path you wish to modify; a browser window appears.

- To delete a path from the list, select the path, then click **Remove**.

Once you have defined a High Resolution Path, you can further define the search parameters associated with the workflow, by using the options that appear towards the bottom of the HiRes handling window.

Option	Description
Include Sub	During the RIP, when the **Include Sub** option is selected for a specific path, the application searches the folder indicated by the path, as well as any subfolders that it contains. ➢ To include the subfolders of a designated High Resolution folder in the search for the high resolution replacement file, click the folder icon next to a path from the **Path Name** list; in the status column, the icon of the selected folder displays a <+> sign. Or, select a path from the **Path Name** list, then select the **Include Sub** check box.
Disable	Any High Resolution path that has been disabled is not searched during the RIP, Preview, and PreFlight Check. ➢ To disable a path, select the path from the **Path Name** list, then select the **Disable** check box; the disabled path appears blue. ➢ To enable a disabled path, select the disabled path from the **Path Name** list, then clear the **Disable** check box; the path displays in black.

Option	Description
Search FIRST In the Working Directory area	Begins the search for the High Resolution replacement image in the folder where its PS file is located. If the replacement image is not found, the search continues in the locally defined High Resolution File Paths. **With Sub-Folders** If the high resolution file is not found in the folder from where the PostScript file came, the search continues in any subfolders that are found inside the PostScript file's folder. **Without Sub-Folders** During the search for high resolution replacement files, the application does not search the subfolders of the folder from where the PostScript file came.
Use Original APR/OPI Path	Begins the search for the High Resolution replacement image in the folder where it was created.

Path Priority

The order in which paths appear in **Path Name** list defines the path priority. The RIP first looks for the High Resolution file in the folder defined by the first path in the list. If the file is not found there, it searches the second path in the list, and so on, until the end of the list. Only then does the RIP define this file as “not found.” Therefore, you may want to position the most frequently used Paths at the top of the list.

If different files with the same name exist in different High Resolution File Paths, the file in the path with the highest priority will be used, since it will be found first.

In addition, it is important to understand how the application searches for the High Resolution file. First it searches for the High Resolution file by it's original name. If the application does not find the High Resolution file under the original name, the search continues. How the search continues depends upon whether the High Resolution file type is CT, DCS, or LW.

- **For CT and DCS type files,** the application continues the search by looking for the original file name plus a **.ps** extension.

  If the application does not find the file with a **.ps** extension, it proceeds to search for the original file name plus an **.eps** extension. For a DCS file, the search stops here. For the CT file, the application proceeds to search for the original file name plus a **.ct** extension.

  And if the file is still not found, the application searches for the original file name plus a **.ch** extension.

- **For an LW type file**, when the application cannot locate the High Resolution file under its original name, it searches for a file with the original file name plus an **.lw** extension.



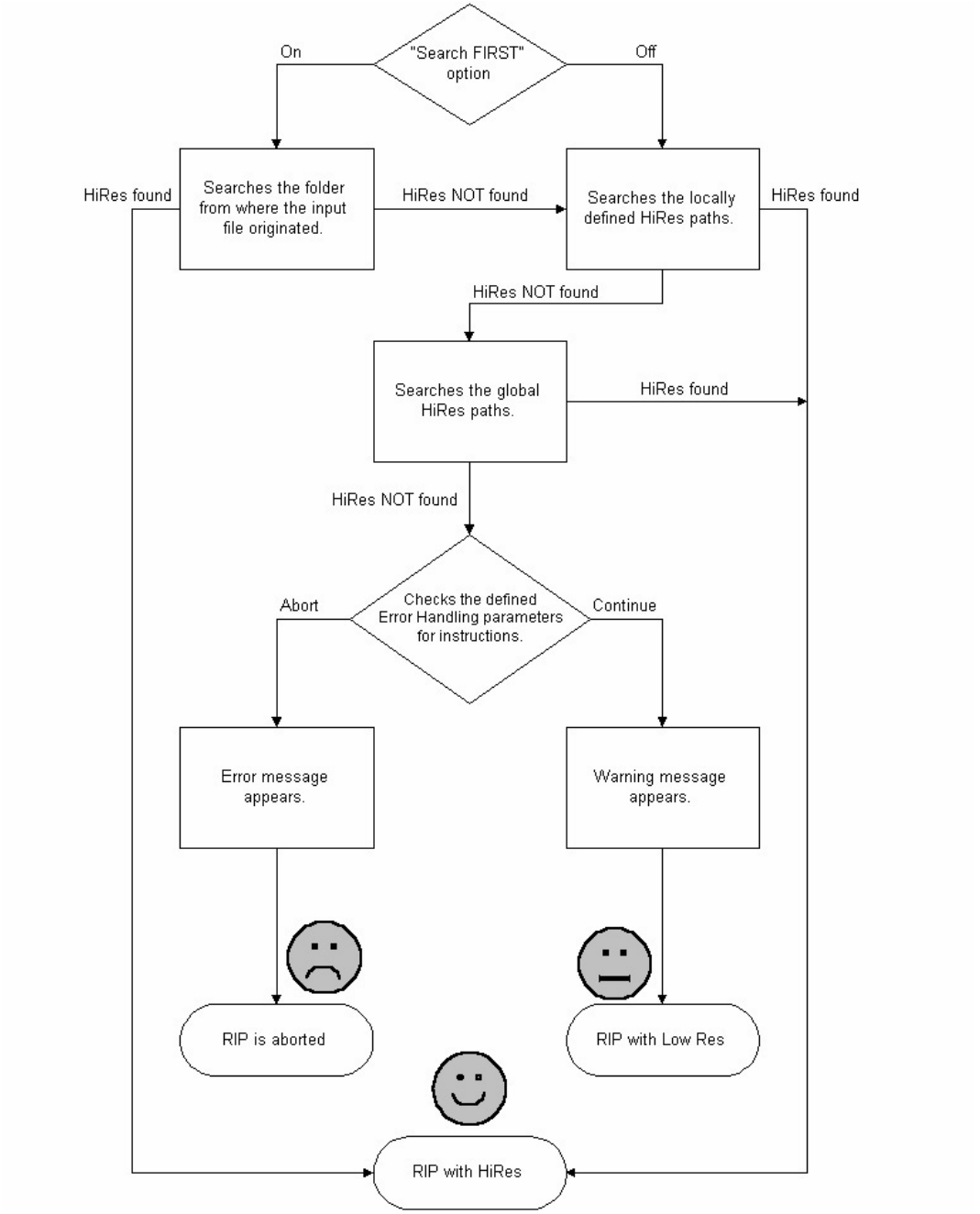
Note: The application repeats the above procedure for each defined High Resolution path, one path at a time, beginning with the path that appears at the top of the list.

Rearranging Path Priority

To rearrange the order in which the High Resolution File Paths appear in the list, use the **Top**, **Up**, **Down**, and **Bottom** buttons that are located along the right side of the window.



Note: The application repeats the above procedure for each defined High Resolution path, one path at a time, beginning with the path that appears at the top of the list.



How the RIP application searches for High Resolution images during APR/OPI

20 Creo APR/OPI Workflow

Introduction 138
Preparing Jobs for Output Using APR Workflow 139
PDF APR Workflow 141

Introduction

The Creo APR (Automatic Picture Replacement)/OPI (Open Press Interface) workflows lets you work with a low resolution file during the Page layout stage of production.

In these workflows, a low resolution version is substituted for a high resolution file for layout and proofing purposes. When the Page layout stage of production is complete, you use the standard Print command to generate a PostScript file that contains APR, OPI or DCS comments that name the high resolution replacement file. When you RIP this PostScript file, the low resolution image is automatically replaced by the high resolution image. (In the APR workflow, you can also replace the low resolution images with proofing data, instead of with the high resolution images.)



Note: Use the Creo APR/OPI workflow to incorporate original images coming from the Creo scanners such as Smart 342L and EverSmart Supreme, into the Brisque production workflow.

Creo APR/OPI supports the following low resolution file types:

- **PSImage** (identified by the **.e** extension).
- **Color Central** (identified by the **.samp** extension).
- **DCS 1.0** (one low resolution master file plus four high resolution files).
- **DCS 2.0** (either Single or Multiple file format)*:
  - **Single** - a single low resolution master file.
  - **Multiple** - a single low resolution master file and a high resolution file for each separation.
- **Multiple files** – generates one master file and one High Res. file for each separation.
- **Helios OPI Unix** (identified by the **.lay** extension).



* Refer to *DCS2.0 Workflow & Limitations on the Brisque* application note (located on the *Brisque Accessories CD-ROM*) for more information on the DCS 2.0 format.

Preparing Jobs for Output Using APR Workflow

Follow the steps described here to prepare Jobs for output using the Creo APR workflow:

1. Create the Low Resolution file.
2. Take the low resolution image file (**.e**, **.samp**, **DCS 1.0 Master**, **DCS 2.0 Master**, or **.lay**) and place it in a desktop publishing application on the Macintosh or PC.
3. When you finish the layout, from the desktop publishing application, use the **File** => **Print** command to generate a PostScript file.

   If you are printing from QuarkXPress, make sure that the **Include Images** option is selected in the Print dialog box.)
4. On the Brisque, verify, and if necessary define High Resolution File paths that point to the high resolution files necessary for picture replacement. (See *Chapter 19, High-Resolution File Paths*).
5. RIP the PostScript file on the Brisque; during the RIP, the low resolution images are replaced by the high resolution images.

Generating the Low Resolution Files

The first step in the Creo APR workflow is to generate the low resolution images.

Following is a brief description of how to create the different supported low resolution file types:

PSImage Files

Generate a PSImage file from a high resolution image file (EPS, TIFF, CT) or from a DCS 1.0 Master file, DCS 2.0 Master Multi and Single files using Brisque Translate.

You can also generate a PSImage file from Photoshop by the File=> Export=> PSImage Exporter 4.

DCS 1.0 Files

Generate the DCS 1.0 format (which consists of one low resolution Master File and 4 high resolution files) using Photoshop, Brisque Translate, or the Creo-supported scanners such as Monoscan Scanner, or the Smart 342L Scanner with the SmartDOT special kit.

DCS 2.0 Files

Generate DCS 2.0 in either the Single file or Multiple file format (Single - consists of a single low resolution Master file; or Multiple - consists of one low resolution Master File and a high resolution file for each separation) using Photoshop 5.02 and higher, or the Creo-supported scanners such as Monoscan Scanner, or the Smart 342L Scanner with the SmartDOT special kit.

Helios OPI Low Resolution Files

When you scan a high resolution file to the OPI server via AppleShare, you can instruct the server to automatically generate OPI Helios low resolution files, and assigns them the **.lay** extension. You can also create **.lay** files by moving or copying a TIFF or EPS file onto a mounted OPI Server volume that is configured with the Helios OPI setup, or by renaming a high resolution file on the volume.

PDF APR Workflow

The Brisque allows you to integrate PDF files into the APR (Automatic Picture Replacement) workflow. If your PS files include APR images and you wish to distill the PS files to PDF using Acrobat Distiller 4.x, the **SCDistillerStartup.ps** file must be installed in your Acrobat Distiller's **Startup** folder (PC and Macintosh).



Note: The **SCDistillerStartup.ps.ps** file also supports Acrobat Distiller 3.x, however, in the Brisque environment, we recommend you use Acrobat Distiller 4.x and later.

Installing the SCDistillerStartup.ps file for Acrobat Distiller 4.x

Macintosh users:

1. On the Macintosh, insert the Brisque 4.0 Accessories CD-ROM into the drive.
2. Locate the **PS/PDF Utils:For Adobe Acrobat Distiller** folder.
3. Copy the **SCDistillerStartup.ps** file from this folder to the **Acrobat 4.x:Startup** folder on your Macintosh.
4. You can now start Acrobat Distiller.

Windows 95/98/NT users:

1. On the Macintosh, locate the **SCDistillerStartup.ps** file described in steps 1-3 above (for Macintosh users).
2. Copy the **SCDistillerStartup.ps** to a DOS-formatted diskette.
3. On the PC, copy the file from the diskette to the **Acrobat 4.x\Distillr\Startup** folder.
4. You can now start Acrobat Distiller.

21 Normalize

Overview 144
Typical Workflows 145
Activating Normalize on the Brisque.....146
Defining Normalize Parameters 147

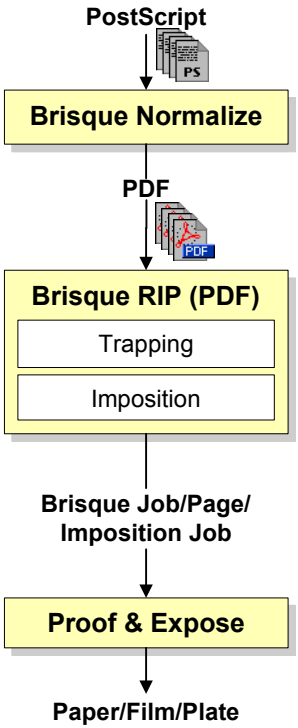
Overview

The translation of PostScript files into the PDF file format is called **normalization**, and is performed by the **Normalize** application on the Brisque.

Note: PDF files can also be generated directly by various applications (such as, Acrobat Distiller and Adobe Illustrator). In such a case, the **Normalize** stage on the Brisque is skipped.

Incorporation of **Normalize** into the workflow allows you to continue to receive PostScript files from your customers, and then take advantage of the numerous benefits of PDF in production. **Normalize** takes single and multi-page PostScript files and generates single and multi-Page PDF files respectively.

The following shows a general workflow for PDF-based solutions.



Typical Workflows

The **Normalize** step is normally applied prior to RIP, facilitating improved font and image management and creating PDF files optimized for speed.

Normalize can be operated on the Brisque as a single-step operation, or as part of a Brisque template or as a Hot Folder (activated just prior to the RIP).

PDF APR/OPI Workflow

Normalize supports low-resolution picture (PSImage) replacement with high-resolution pictures in both the APR and OPI workflows.

PreFlight Check Workflows

Brisque allows preflight checking of both PostScript and PDF files; thus, it is possible to place **Normalize** in your current workflow, before or after **PreFlight**.







Tip: The **Normalize->PreFlight->RIP** workflow is more useful than the **PreFlight->Normalize->RIP** workflow, as corrections to content are made early in the process, saving time and reducing errors.

Activating Normalize on the Brisque

You can activate Normalize manually as a single-step operation, or automatically as part of a Brisque template.

To activate Normalize on the Brisque:

1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, double-click the **Files** icon to open the Brisque file browser.
2. Point to the PostScript file you want to process, and do one of the following:
   - Right-click the file and select **Normalize** from the popup menu.
   - Drag the file to the **Normalize** icon located in the **Operations** panel on the Brisque Launch Pad.
   - Drag the file to a Brisque template containing the **Normalize** operation.
3. From the Job Ticket Editor window that is displayed, do one of the following:
   - Click **Submit** to process the file according to the default Normalize parameters.
   - Double-click the **Normalize** icon to modify its parameters before processing the file; the Normalizer window is displayed.

Defining Normalize Parameters

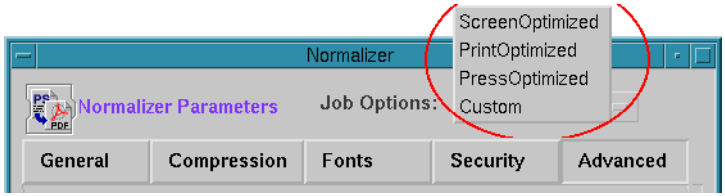
Normalize Job Options

You can use predefined settings or customize your own settings to be the defaults used when creating templates and for single-step operations.

Using Predefined Settings

The predefined settings, called **Job Options**, are generalized settings optimized for different work environments: screen, print and press.

➢ In the Normalizer window, choose **ScreenOptimized**, **PrintOptimized** or **PressOptimized** from the **Job Options** menu.



Note: PrintOptimized and **PressOptimized** settings generate PDF files that are Acrobat 4.x (PDF 1.3) compatible. **ScreenOptimized** settings generate PDF files that are Acrobat 3.0 (PDF 1.2) compatible.

ScreenOptimized

This set of options downsamples and compresses to create a PDF file that has a relatively low resolution, and is as small as possible. Subsets of all used fonts are embedded, except for the Base 14 fonts.

Note: Recommended for files to be displayed on the Internet/Intranet, or distributed through an e-mail system for on-screen viewing.

PrintOptimized

This set of options downsamples and compresses to keep file size down, creating a reasonably accurate rendition of the original document. The subsets of all used fonts used are embedded.

Note: Recommended for files intended for desktop printers, digital copiers, publishing on a CD-ROM, or to be sent to a client as a publishing proof.

PressOptimized

This set of options downsamples color and grayscale images to 300 dpi and monochrome images to 2400 dpi. Subsets of all used fonts are embedded; other settings are used to preserve the maximum amount of information about the original document. High-resolution printing is used.



Note: Recommended for files to be printed as high-quality final output to an imagesetter or platesetter, or for post-RIP editing (using Enfocus PitStop or Adobe Photoshop).

Customizing Settings

To create a set of custom parameters, proceed as follows:

1. Access the Normalizer window via the **Operations** panel (that is, **not** via the Template Builder).
2. Switch to one of the predefined set of Job options.
3. Modify the parameters to suit your needs and click **OK**.
4. In the Template Builder window, click **Set as Default** then click **Save**.

The next time you open the Normalizer window, **Custom** is selected by default from the **Job Options** menu, indicating that one or more of the predefined options has been modified.

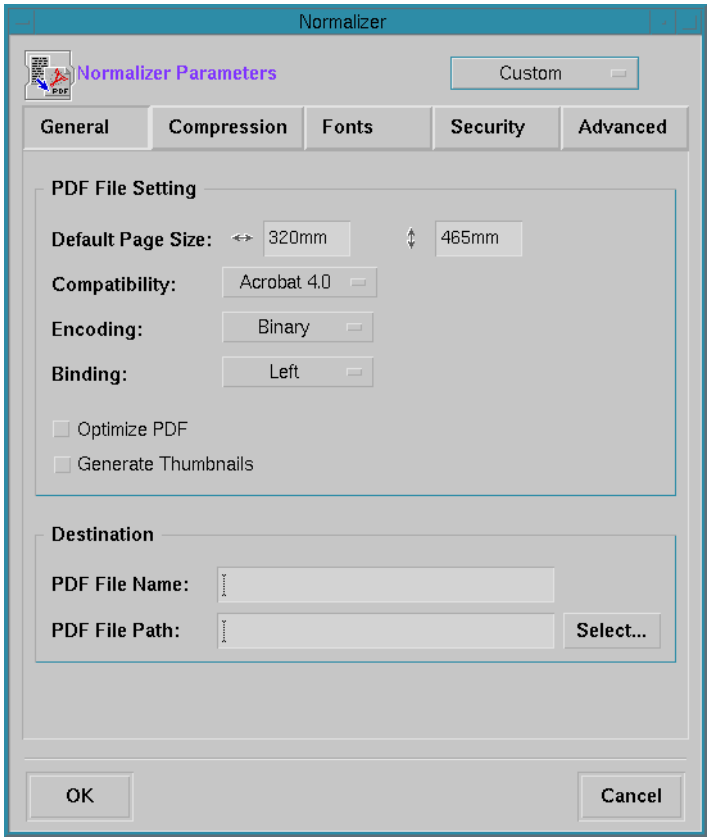
Normalizer Window Tabs

The Normalizer window contains the following tabs:

- General
- Compression
- Fonts
- Security
- Advanced.

General Tab

The **General** parameters allow you to specify file and destination settings, including Acrobat compatibility levels.



PDF File Setting section

Default Page Size

When converting a PostScript file to PDF, the page size is taken from the **setpagedevice** commands in the PostScript file.

- Specify the default dimensions.



Note: Bounding Box comments are ignored if there is a **setpagedevice** command in the file. If **setpagedevice** and **Bounding Box** commands are not available, the **Default Page Size** values are used.

Compatibility

- Select one of the following compatibility versions:
  - **Acrobat 4.0** (PDF 1.3) - for PS3 and Acrobat 4.x compatibility. This is the default option
  - **Acrobat 3.0** (PDF 1.2) - for PS2 and Acrobat 3.0 compatibility.



For details on the differences between Acrobat 3.0 and Acrobat 4.x, please refer to the Adobe Acrobat documentation.

Encoding

PDF files are portable across diverse hardware and operating systems.

- Select one of the following to generate binary or ASCII-encoded data:
  - **Binary** - creates the PDF file in binary format. Binary is recommended, since it creates a smaller file. This option is useful if you intend to use FTP to transfer the file, to avoid conversion of line feeds to carriage returns or vice versa.
  - **ASCII** - creates the PDF file in ASCII text format. It is useful if you intend to open the file in a text editor (to view or edit), or if you intend to send it across networks or mail gateways that do not support binary files.

Binding

This option determines the type of binding to be used when the document is viewed on-screen with its pages side by side.

- Select **left** or **right** binding to affect how the pages are arranged side by side when the pages are viewed in the Continuous - Facing page layout.

Note: Set the binding to match the reading direction of text in the document: **left** for text read from left to right, and **right** for text read from right to left (that is, to view Arabic, Hebrew, or vertical Japanese text).

Optimize PDF

This option reduces the size of the PDF file by compressing non-rasterized page contents. This increases access and viewing speed when downloading the file from the network or the Internet.

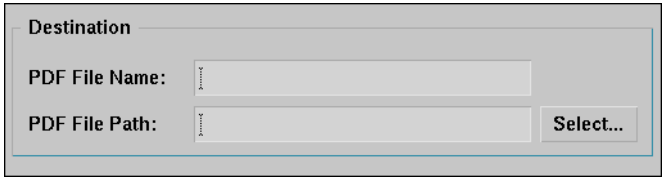
- Select the **Create Optimized PDF** check box to activate PDF optimization.

Generate Thumbnails

This option creates a thumbnail preview for each page in the PDF file (which can be viewed, for example, from Adobe Acrobat).

- Select the **Generate Thumbnails** check box to create a thumbnail for each page in the PDF.

Destination Path and PDF File Name



- Define the **PDF File Name** and the **PDF File Path** boxes to specify an output name and destination for the created PDFs.

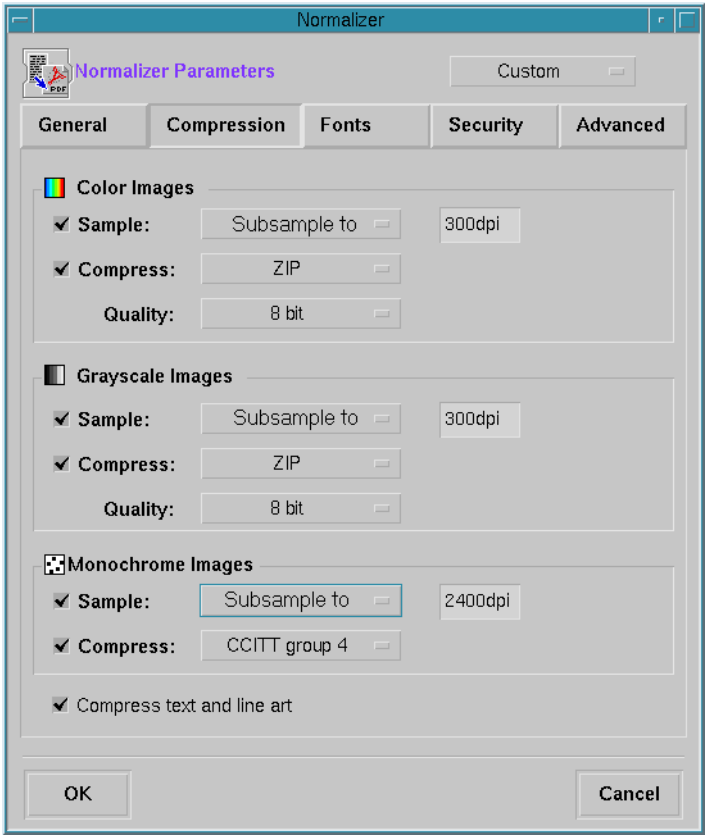
Note: Brisque automatically adds the **.pdf** extension to the file name.

If you leave a box blank:

- If you do not type a file name, the output PDF file receives the name of the item being processed (without its original extension).
- If you do not type a path, the PDF is saved to the parent folder of the item being processed.

Compression Tab

In the PDFs you create, you can compress and resample your bitmap images, text and line art to different degrees. Compression and resampling can significantly reduce the size of a PDF file with little or no loss of detail and precision.



To reduce image size, Normalize does one of the following:

- **Sample** - discards data in the image to reduce it to a specified resolution.
- **Compress** - compresses the data in the image.

Sample

By default, the **Sample** check box is selected.

➢ Select an option from the menu to control the way images are sampled, and type a resolution in the box.

- ❒ **Subsample to** - discards a fraction of the pixels in the image without replacing pixels. This is the default option.
- ❒ **Downsample to** - replaces a set of pixels in the image with a single pixel whose color is an average of the original pixels.
- ❒ **Bicubic Downsample** - uses a weighted average to determine pixel color and usually yields better results than the simple averaging method of downsampling. Bicubic is the slowest but most precise method, resulting in the smoothest tonal gradations.

➢ To prevent sampling, clear the **Sample** check box.

Compress

Various compression methods are available, relating to the color depth of the image and the desired output quality.

By default, the **Compress** check box is selected.

➢ Select a compression method from the menu.



Note: For Color and Grayscale images, the available options are **Automatic**, **JPEG** and **ZIP**; for Monochrome images, the available options are **CCITT group 4**, **ZIP** and **Run Length**.

- ❒ **Automatic** - determines the best compression method and quality for your color or grayscale bitmap images. For most PDF files, this provides satisfactory results. **JPEG** is applied to 8-bit grayscale images and to 8-bit, 16-bit, and 24-bit color images when the images have continuous, smooth tones. **ZIP** is applied to 2-bit, 4-bit,

and 8-bit grayscale images, to 4-bit color images and indexed 8-bit color images, and to 16-bit and 24-bit color images when the images have sharp color changes.

- **JPEG** - lossy compression

  Removes image data, thus affecting image quality (but attempts to reduce file size with minimum loss of information).



Note: This method is suitable for grayscale or color images (such as continuous-tone photographs) that contain more detail than can be reproduced on-screen or in print.

➢For JPEG, select the **Quality** from the menu:

JPEG High - highest compression (minimum quality)

JPEG Med. High - medium high compression (medium-low quality)

JPEG Med. - average compression (medium quality)

JPEG Med. Low - medium low compression (medium-high quality)

JPEG Low - lowest compression (maximum quality)



Note: The higher the compression level, the lower the image quality. The loss of detail resulting from a **Low** setting is so slight that it is not noticed that the image was compressed. A **High** setting, however, may cause the image to become blocky and with a mosaic look. A **Med.** setting creates a compact file while maintaining enough information to produce high-quality images.

- **ZIP** - lossless 8-bit compression

  No data is removed from the image; image quality is not affected. This is the default option for **Color Images** and **Grayscale Images**.



Note: This method works well on images with large areas of single colors or repeating patterns (such as screen shots and simple images created with paint programs), and for black-and-white images that contain repeating patterns.

➢For ZIP, the **Quality** is set to 8 bit (and cannot be changed).

- **CCITT (group 4)** - lossless 1-bit compression. This is the default option for **Monochrome**.

  This method is appropriate for black-and-white images made by paint programs and images scanned with an image depth of 1 bit. CCITT Group 4 is a general-purpose method that produces good compression for most types of monochrome images.

- **Run Length** - a lossless compression that produces the best results for images that contain large areas of solid white or black.

➢ To prevent image compression, clear the **Compress** check box.

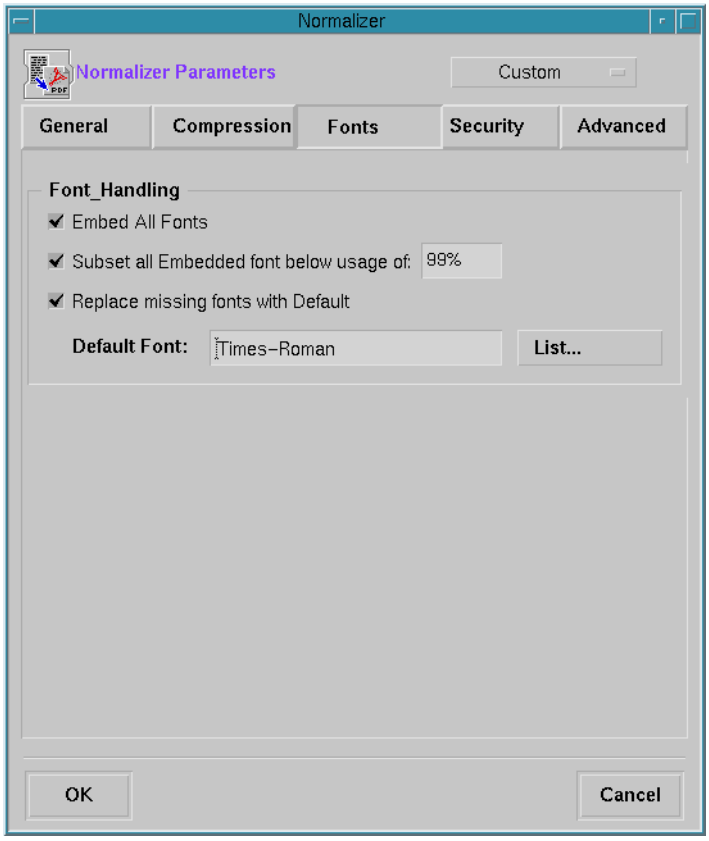
Compress text and line art

This option applies ZIP compression to text and line art elements in the file.

By default, the check box is selected.

➢ Clear the check box to leave these elements intact.

Fonts Tab



Embed All Fonts

Select this option to embed all font definitions in the current document. Use this option if you are not sure whether all fonts used in the PDF are found on the receiving station.

Subset all embedded fonts below usage of

Select this option if you do not plan to edit text in the PDF file. Subsetting fonts reduces the size of embedded fonts, by embedding only the characters used in the document, rather than the entire font set.

Note: If the number of characters used in the font exceeds the value you define, the entire font is embedded.



Important: Subsetting usually disables text editing with the Touch-Up Text tool in Adobe Acrobat (on both the Macintosh and the PC).

Replace missing fonts with Default

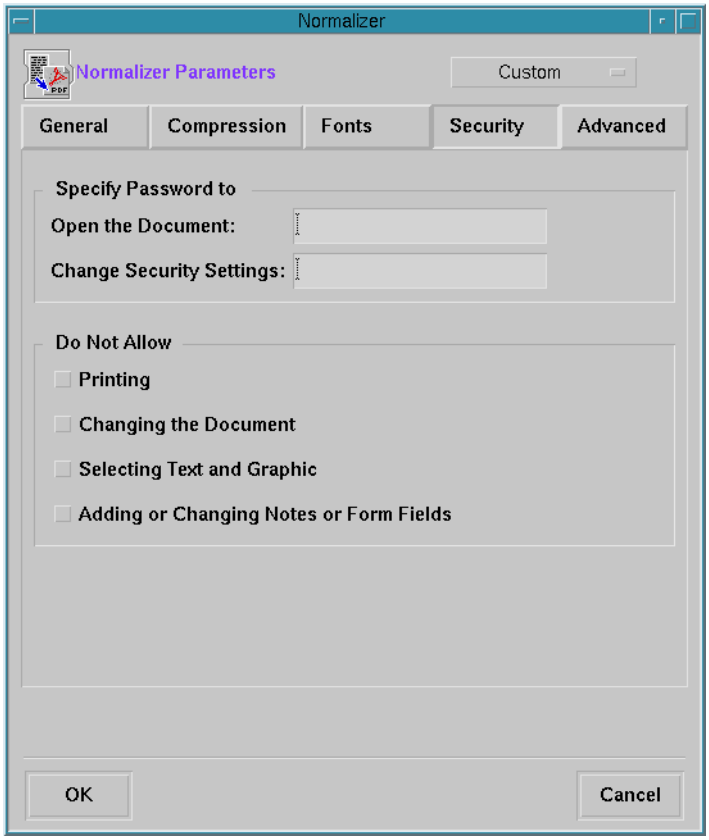
Select this option to replace any missing fonts with a default font available on most stations.

➢ Click the **List** button to select the default font.

Security Tab

You can limit access to the created PDF files by giving the files passwords and restricting certain features (such as, printing and editing).

Tip: Alternatively, you can set or modify the security settings at a later stage if you save the file in a PDF-editing application, such as Adobe Acrobat.



Passwords

You can assign the generated PDF file an **Open Document** password and/or a **Change Security** password.

- **Open Document** - users must type this password before they can open the file. When a file is opened with an Open Document password, the user cannot change the security options.
- **Change Security** - users must type this password before they can set or change security options. If you set any security options, you should also specify a Change Security setting password; otherwise, anyone who opens the file can remove the restrictions.

➢ Type a password in the relevant box(es).

➢ Leave the box(es) blank in order not to use a password.



Note: If the file has both passwords, it can be opened with either one.



Tip: Use different **Open Document** and **Change Security** passwords. If they are identical, a user who has the password that opens the document can also change the security options.

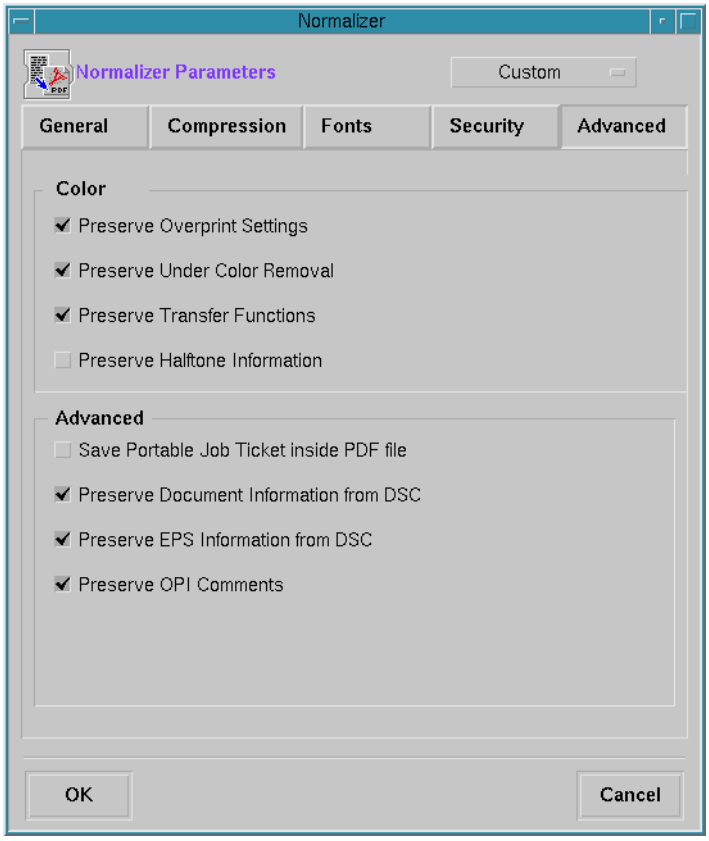
Do Not Allow

You can prevent users from RIPping and printing, changing the document, or adding or changing Notes and Form Fields.

➢ Select the relevant option to prevent a particular action:

- ❒ **Printing** - prohibits users from RIPping and printing the file.
- ❒ **Editing** - prohibits users from making changes to the document.
- ❒ **Selecting Text or Graphics** - prohibits users from selecting text or graphical elements.
- ❒ **Adding or Changing Notes or Form Fields** - prohibits users from adding or changing Notes or Form Fields.

Advanced Tab



Note: Before setting parameters in the **Advanced** tab, it is helpful to have a clear understanding of the PostScript language and how it is translated to PDF.

Color section

Preserve Overprint Settings

This option preserves the overprint information in the PDF file.

Preserve Under Color Removal

This option preserves the amount of black that should be generated when printing RGB colors to a CMYK device (UCR).

Preserve Transfer Functions

This option preserves comments of the transfer functions, traditionally used to compensate for dot gain or dot loss that may occur when an image is transferred to film. For example, a file that is intended for output on a particular imagesetter may contain transfer functions that compensate for the dot gain inherent with that printer.



Note: Dot gain occurs when the ink dots that make up a printed image are larger (for example, due to spreading on paper) than in the halftone screen; dot loss occurs when the dots are smaller.

Preserve Halftone Information

This option preserves the halftone information in the PDF file.

Advanced section

Save Portable Job Ticket inside PDF file

This option preserves a PJTF job ticket in the PDF file. The job ticket contains information about the file itself, such as page size, resolution, and trapping information, rather than about content.

Preserve Document Information from DSC

This option preserves the DSC comments in the PS file and extracts the Document Information.

Preserve EPS Information from DSC

This option preserves information, such as the originating application and author for an EPS file.

Preserve OPI Comments

This option preserves OPI low resolution images and information for locating the high-resolution images in the PDF file.

22 PDF2Go

Overview 164
PDF Conversion Process.....165
Activating PDF2Go on the Brisque.....166
Defining PDF2Go Parameters 167
Editing PDF2Go Files 185

Overview

PDF2Go converts post-RIP files to PDF, enabling efficient file export from the Brisque environment to remote devices, while maintaining complete predictability and cross-platform compatibility.

PDF2Go utilizes industry-standard compression technologies, namely lossy and lossless algorithms. Different compression algorithms for the LW and CT layers are allowed, making it possible to customize compression of the PDF file according to the intended application.

PDF2Go conforms to the **PDF/X-1:1999** standard for PDF for prepress applications. ICC profile tagging for this format is possible, thereby ensuring color consistency across different platforms, devices, and ICC-compliant applications.

PDF2Go files are editable using the powerful PDF-editing tools of external applications, such as Adobe Acrobat, Adobe Photoshop and Enfocus PitStop.

PDF2Go is used in the following workflows:

- **Lossless output to any output device** - the PDF file follows the entire Brisque process (RIPping, trapping, color approval, and so on) until it is ready for output; however, instead of outputting it locally, the file is compressed according to the specific need and a PDF file is created from the raster file.
- **Local or remote communication between prepress professionals** - for example, if a last minute text correction needs to be approved by the client, lossy compression can be employed on the image to create a smaller PDF file. The service provider can open the PDF file on the Brisque, attach 'sticky notes' and send the file to the client who can then review it on the screen and print it to any local printer (B/W or color). On the screen, the LW displays in 100% lossless quality, while the quality of the printer output is as high as the printer supports.

PDF Conversion Process

The generated PDF files are 100% rasterized while the raster data is encapsulated in PDF objects.

PDF2Go supports the following input formats:

- Single LW, CT or TIFF
- Brisque Page (**.p** folder)
- Brisque Job (**.job** folder).

  Converting a multi-page Job generates a multi-page PDF file.

Activating PDF2Go on the Brisque

You can activate PDF2Go manually as a single-step operation, or automatically as part of a Brisque template.

Proceed as follows:

1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, double-click the **Files** icon to open the Brisque file browser.
2. Point to a file, Page, or Job you want to process, and do one of the following:
   - Right-click the item, and select **PDF2Go** from the popup menu.
   - Drag the file to the **PDF2Go** icon located in the **Operations** panel on the Brisque Launch Pad.
   - Drag the file to a Brisque template containing the **PDF2Go** operation.
3. From the Job Ticket Editor window that is displayed, do one of the following:
   - Click **Submit** to process the file according to the default PDF2Go parameters.
   - Double-click the **PDF2Go** icon to modify its parameters before processing the file; the PDF2Go window is displayed.

Defining PDF2Go Parameters

PDF2Go Job Options

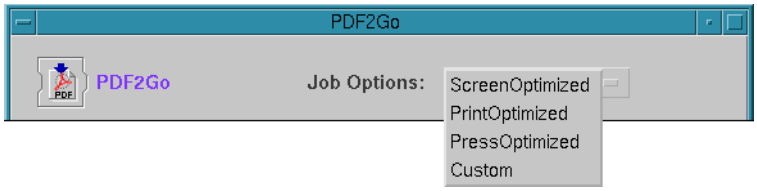
You can apply various parameters, according to the desired destination or purpose of the output PDF. For example, a low-resolution PDF is sufficient for remote content proofing, while high-resolution output is required for color proofing.

You can use predefined settings or customize your own settings to be the defaults used when creating templates and for single-step operations.

Note: All predefined settings generate PDF files that are Acrobat 4.x (PDF 1.3) compatible.

Using Predefined Settings

➢ In the PDF2Go window, select **ScreenOptimized**, **PrintOptimized** or **PressOptimized** from the **Job Options** menu.



ScreenOptimized

This set of options compresses, downsamples, optimizes, uses a relatively low resolution (72 dpi), and converts all colors to DeviceRGB to create a PDF file that is as small as possible.

Note: Recommended for files to be displayed on the Internet/Intranet, or distributed through an e-mail system for on-screen viewing.

PrintOptimized

This set of options downsamples and compresses (CT = JPEG Medium; LW = CCITT Group 4) to keep file size down, while creating a reasonably accurate rendition of the original document.

Note: Recommended for files intended for desktop printers, digital copiers, publishing on a CD-ROM, or to be sent to a client as a publishing proof.

PressOptimized

This set of options does not subsample the CT and LW layers, but performs lossless compression, and uses other settings to preserve the maximum amount of information in the original document.

In this case, file size reduction is not a factor; the objective is to maintain all the information that a commercial printer or service bureau needs in order to print the document accurately.

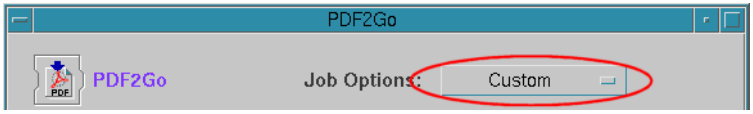
Note: Recommended for files to be printed as high-quality final output on an imagesetter or platesetter, or for post-RIP editing using Enfocus PitStop or Adobe Photoshop.

Customizing Settings

To create a set of custom parameters, proceed as follows:

1. Access the PDF2Go window via the **Operations** panel (that is, not via the Template Builder).
2. Switch to one of the predefined set of options.
3. Modify the parameters to suit your needs and click **OK**.
4. In the Template Builder window, click **Set as Default**, then click **Save**.

The next time you access the PDF2Go window, **Custom** is selected by default from the **Job Options** menu, indicating that one or more of the predefined options has been modified.



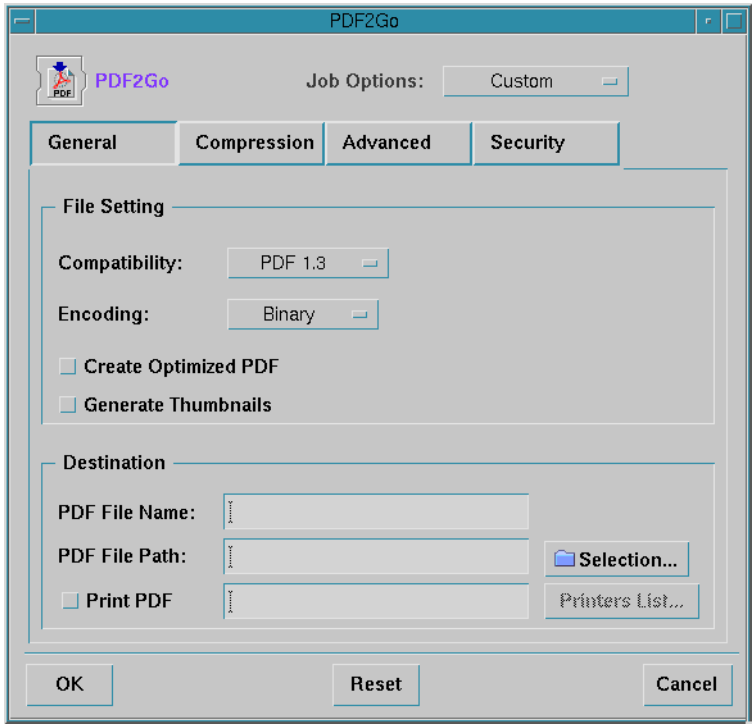
The PDF2Go window shows the settings that were modified and saved.

PDF2Go Window Tabs

The PDF2Go window contains the following tabs:

- General
- Compression
- Advanced
- Security.

General Tab



The **General** parameters allow you to specify file and destination settings, including Acrobat compatibility levels.

Compatibility

➢ Select one of the following compatibility versions:

- ❒ **PDF 1.3** (Acrobat 4.0) - for PS3 and Acrobat 4.x compatibility. This is the default option.
- ❒ **PDF 1.2** (Acrobat 3.0) - for PS2 and Acrobat 3.0 compatibility.
- ❒ **PDF/X-1:1999** - the print compliancy format.



Note: In this case, you must attach an ICC profile to the PDF (see *Advanced Tab on page 179*).



For details on the differences between Acrobat 3.0, Acrobat 4.0 and Acrobat 5.x, please refer to the Adobe Acrobat documentation.

Encoding

PDF files are portable across diverse hardware and operating systems.

➢ Select one of the following to generate binary or ASCII-encoded data:

- ❒ **Binary** - creates the PDF file in binary format. Binary is recommended, since it creates a smaller file. This option is useful if you intend to use FTP to transfer the file, to avoid conversion of line feeds to carriage returns or vice versa.
- ❒ **ASCII -** creates the PDF file in ASCII text format. It is useful if you intend to open the file in a text editor (to view or edit), or if you intend to send it across networks or mail gateways that do not support binary files.

Create Optimized PDF

This option reduces the size of the PDF file by compressing non-rasterized page contents. This increases access and viewing speed when downloading the file from the network or the Internet.

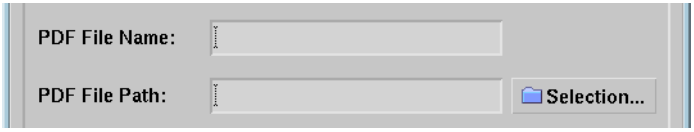
➢ Select the **Create Optimized PDF** check box to activate PDF optimization.

Generate Thumbnails

This option creates a thumbnail preview for each page in the PDF file which can be viewed, for example, from Adobe Acrobat.

➢ Select the **Generate Thumbnails** check box to create a thumbnail for each page in the PDF.

Destination Path and PDF File Name



➢ Define the **PDF File Name** and the **PDF File Path** to specify an output name and destination for the created PDFs.

Note: Brisque automatically adds the **.pdf** extension to the file name.

If you leave a box blank:

- If you do not type a **PDF File Name**, the output PDF file receives the name of the item being processed.
- If you do not type a **PDF File Path**, the PDF is saved to the parent folder of the item being processed.

Print PDF



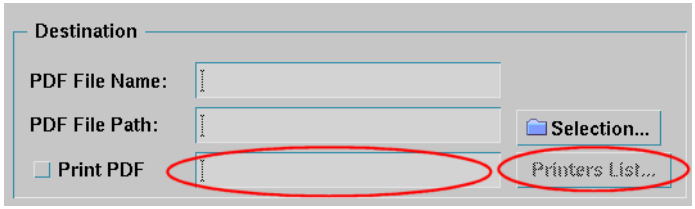
➢ Select the **Print PDF** check box to print the PDF file to a PC or Macintosh printer (in addition to saving it onto the disk).

Important: Due of a limitation of some laser printers, overprint may not be printed properly (that is, the LW data knocks out the CT).

➢ Clear the **Print PDF** check box to only save the file and not print it.

To set the desired printer

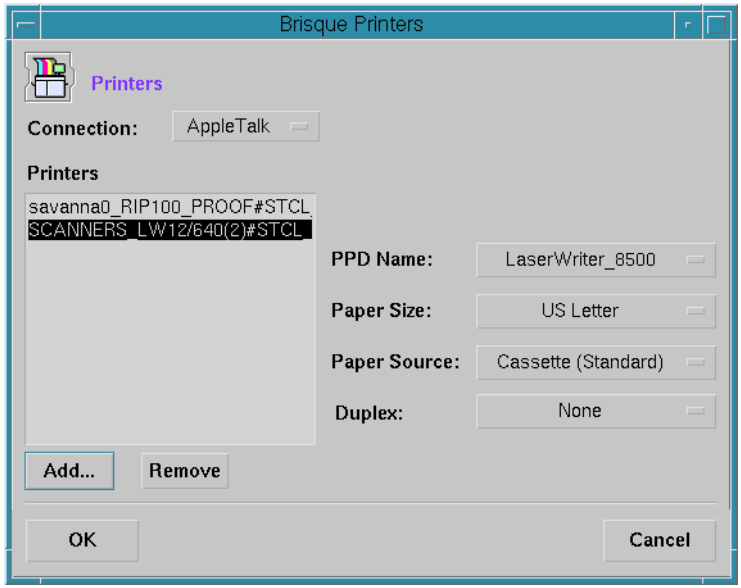
1. In the text box, type the name of the printer, or click **Printers List...** to select a printer.



   The Brisque Printers window is displayed.

2. From the **Connection** menu, select **AppleTalk** (to list Macintosh network printers) or **Remote LPR** (to list remote PC AIX network printers).

   The names of set printers are listed in the **Printers** list and the default parameters of the related PPD are selected in the **Paper Size**, **Paper Source**, and **Duplex** menus (if such exist).



3. From the **Printers** list, select the desired printer.

4. From the **PPD Name** menu, select the PPD that is most appropriate for the selected printer. The **Paper Size**, **Paper Source**, and **Duplex** menus update to displays the default values of this PPD.

5. If required, in **Paper Size**, switch to another size of paper.
6. If required, in **Paper Source**, switch to another source of paper.
7. If required, in **Duplex**, select a dual-sided printing method.

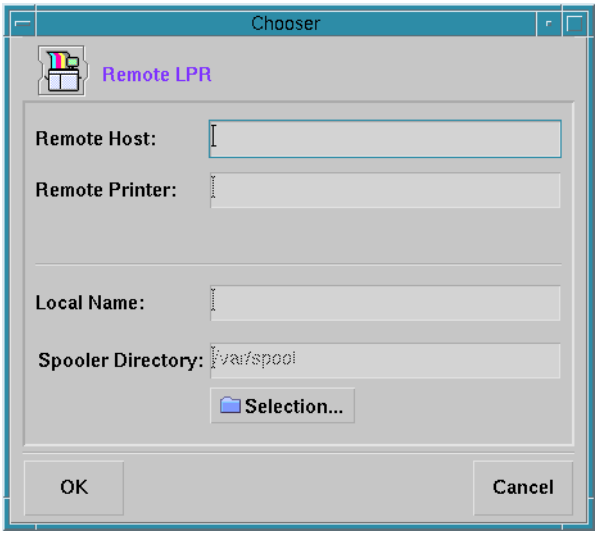
Adding Printers to the Printers List

1. Access the Brisque Printers window.
2. From the **Connection** menu, select **AppleTalk** (to add Macintosh network printers) or **Remote LPR** (to add remote PC network printers) and click **Add...**
3. From the Chooser window that is displayed, select a printer and click **OK** to return to the Brisque Printers window.

Note: A different Chooser window is displayed for AppleTalk and Remote LPR. See instructions on page 173 and page 174.

4. Repeat to add additional printers.

To add a Remote LPR printer, proceed as follows:



1. In the **Remote Host** box, type the TCP/IP address or DNS Name of the remote printer.

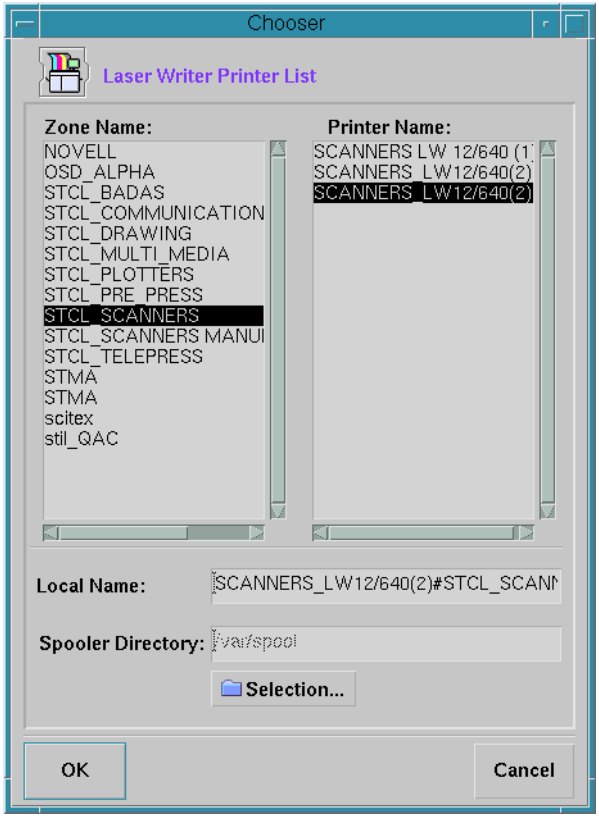
Note: In the **Remote Printer** box, you may type the name of the remote printer.

2. In the **Local Name** box, type a logical name (to appear in the **Printers** list the Brisque Printers window).

3. In the **Spooler Directory** box, type the location or click **Selection...** to choose or create the directory from the browser.

Note: Although the default location of the Brisque spooler is **/var/spool**, we recommend to use a spooler directory in a folder located in **/dataVolumes/hostname.x.0.**.

To add an AppleTalk printer, proceed as follows:



1. In the **Zone Name** section, click a name; the zone name is highlighted and the name of the printers assigned to selected zone is listed in the **Printer Name** section.

   To select a specific printer, click its name in the Printer Name section.

The name of the selected printer is displayed in the **Local Name** box (and in the **Printers** list in the Brisque Printers window); if required, type another logical name.

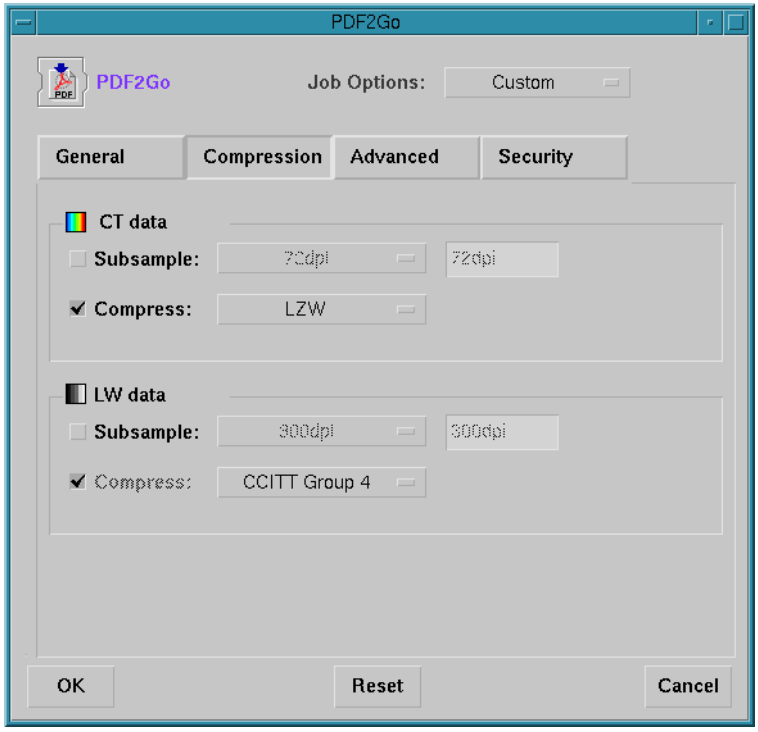
2. In the **Spooler Directory** box, type the location or click **Selection...** to choose or create the directory from the browser.



Note: Although the default location of the Brisque spooler is **/var/spool**, we recommend to use a Spooler directory in **/dataVolumes**.

Compression Tab

PDF2Go creates 100% raster-based PDF files that are predictable and portable, despite their data-heavy nature. You may compress LW and CT layers independently, using industry-standard **lossy** and **lossless** compression algorithms.



To reduce image size, PDF2Go does the following:

- **Subsample** -discards data in the image to reduce it to a specified resolution.
- **Compress** - compresses the data in the image.

CT Data

You can subsample the CT to a specified resolution, compress the data using one of the algorithms, or leave it intact.

Subsample

By default, the **Subsample** check box is **not** selected.

➢ Select the **Subsample** check box, and select one of the following from the popup menu:

- ❒ **Custom** - subsamples the CT to the dpi value you type (not exceeding the original resolution of the CT).
- ❒ **No CT** - CT data is not embedded in the PDF; original CT areas are displayed as white patches.
- ❒ **CT as Gray** - CT data is not embedded in the PDF; original CT areas are displayed as gray patches.
- ❒ **72 dpi** - subsamples the to 72 dpi. This is the default option.

➢ To keep the CT data intact, clear the **Subsample** check box.

Compress

By default, the **Compress** check box is selected.

➢ Select a compression method from the **Compress** menu:

- ❒ **ZIP** - lossless 8-bit compression. No data is removed from the image; image quality is not affected.



Note: This method works well on images with large areas of single colors or repeating patterns (such as screen shots and simple images created with paint programs), and for black-and-white images that contain repeating patterns.

- **LZW** - lossless 8-bit compression. No data is removed from the image; image quality is not affected.



Note: LZW compression works best for files containing repetitive data such as text and monochrome images.

- **JPEG** - lossy compression. Removes image data, thus affecting image quality (but attempts to reduce file size with minimum loss of information).



Note: This method is suitable for grayscale or color images (such as continuous-tone photographs) that contain more detail than can be reproduced on-screen or in print.

➢ For JPEG, select the compression level from the menu:

- **JPEG High** - highest compression (minimum quality)
- **JPEG Med. High** - medium high compression (medium-low quality)
- **JPEG Med.** - average compression (medium quality)
- **JPEG Med. Low** - medium low compression (medium-high quality)
- **JPEG Low** - lowest compression (maximum quality)

The higher the compression level, the lower the image quality. The loss of detail resulting from a **Low** setting is so slight that it is not noticed that the image was compressed. A **High** setting, however, may cause the image to become blocky and with a mosaic look. A **Med.** setting creates a compact file while maintaining enough information to produce high-quality images.

➢ To leave the CT data intact, clear the **Compress** check box.

LW Data

You may subsample the LW to a specified resolution. LW data is always compressed, using the lossless method you select.

Subsample

By default, the **Subsample** check box is **not** selected.

➢ Select the **Subsample** check box, and select one of the following from the popup menu:

- **72 dpi** - subsamples the LW to 72 dpi.

- **150 dpi** - subsamples the LW to 150 dpi.
- **300 dpi** - subsamples the LW to 300 dpi. This is the default option.
- **600 dpi** - subsamples the LW to 600 dpi.
- **Custom** - subsamples the LW to the dpi value you type (not exceeding the original resolution of the LW).

➢ To keep the LW data intact, clear the **Subsample** check box.

Compress

PDF2Go always compresses LW data as lossless. This option cannot be deactivated, but you can select the compression method.

By default, the **Compress** check box is selected.

➢ Select a compression mode from the menu:

- **CCITT (Group 4)** - lossless 1-bit compression. This is the default method.



Note: Appropriate for black-and-white images made by paint programs and images scanned with an image depth of 1 bit. CCITT Group 4 is a general-purpose method that produces good compression for most types of monochrome images.

- **ZIP** - lossless 8-bit compression. No data is removed from the image; image quality is not affected.



Note: This method works well on images with large areas of single colors or repeating patterns (such as screen shots and simple images created with paint programs), and for black-and-white images that contain repeating patterns.

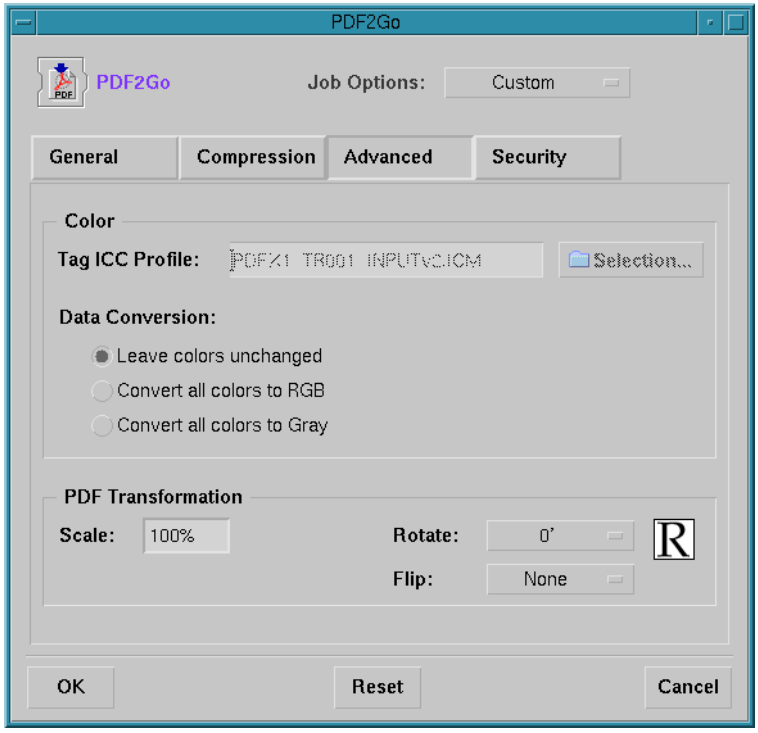
- **LZW** - lossless 8-bit compression. No data is removed from the image; image quality is not affected.



Note: LZW compression works best for files containing repetitive data such as text and monochrome images.

Advanced Tab

The parameters under this tab provide color management options (such as, tagging ICC profiles and color conversions) and global page transformations (such as scaling and rotation).



Color

Color management ensures color consistency across different platforms, devices, and ICC-compliant applications that manage color conversion.

Use one of the following options:

- ICC Profile Tagging (for PDF/X-1:1999)
- Data Conversion (for PDF 1.2 and PDF 1.3)

Tag ICC Profile

The ICC profile format is a color space description defined by the International Color Consortium (ICC), to help reproduce colors accurately across different platforms, devices, and ICC-compliant applications.



Note: ICC profiles can be tagged only if the **Compatibility** parameter is set to **PDF/X-1:1999** (that is, not to PDF 1.2 or PDF 1.3). See *General Tab on page 169*.

The default profile **PDFX_TR001_INPUTv2.ICM** leaves colors unchanged, by performing a CMYK->LAB->CMYK color conversion.

- To select another profile, click **Selection...** and in the browser that appears, select a profile from the **PDF2Go Profiles** list.



Important: To see imported profiles, they have to reside in **SharedItems/ICC_Profiles/PDF2Go** (you see this folder when you connect to the Brisque from a remote Macintosh station).

To perform color conversion on PDF 1.2 or 1.3 files, apply **Color2Disk** prior to **PDF2Go**. The following compares ICC profile tagging with PDF2Go to Color2Disk color transformation.

PDF2Go ICC Profile Tagging	Color2Disk
Only attaches the relevant color conversion profile to the file without actually touching the internal data. This enables last-minute re-routing to a different printer by simply applying the new printer's profile.	Performs color transformations directly on Brisque files using ICC profiles and outputs the results as a transformed file. In this case, you must know in advance the intended target color space before performing the color transformation.

Data Conversion

This option enables you to convert data into RGB or grayscale (or leave colors unchanged). It affects file size and increases display speed, since less CT data is required to describe RGB than CMYK images. Note that LW data remains the same size, no matter which color space you select.



Note: An RGB CT may be 25% smaller (and a grayscale CT may be as much as 75% smaller) than a CMYK CT image with the same resolution.

Since overprint information is not preserved when converting to a different color space, semi-transparencies may disappear.

Note: This option is available only if the **Compatibility** parameter is set to PDF 1.2 or PDF 1.3. See *General Tab on page 169*.

➢ Select one of the following options:

- **Leave colors unchanged** - prevents CMYK images from being converted. Recommended for high-end printing, as in the case of print shops that have calibrated all their devices and are only outputting to those devices.
- **Convert all colors to RGB** - recommended for PDFs to be viewed online (such as, on the Internet). Since RGB is the native color space of most monitors, no color conversion is necessary; this contributes to faster online viewing.

  Note: You cannot convert Spot CT to RGB.

- **Convert all colors to Gray** - recommended for remote text content verification or for proofing to a low-end desktop printer. Since grayscale files can be reduced to 25% of its original CMYK file size, this option is ideal when compressing files to be sent (such as, remotely over the network).

PDF Transformation

These parameters allow you to perform global transformations to all the pages in the PDF:

- **Scale** - resizes the pages.

  Type a value in the **Scale** box (1% - 9999%). The value 100% maintains the original page size.

- **Rotate** - rotates the pages clockwise in increments of 90°.

  Select one of the following from the Rotate menu: 0°, 90°, 180° or 270°. The  icon represents the page after the transformation.

- **Flip** - flips the pages around the horizontal or vertical axis.

  Select one of the following from the **Flip** menu: **None**, **Horizontal**, **Vertical** or **Both**. The  icon represents the page after the transformation.



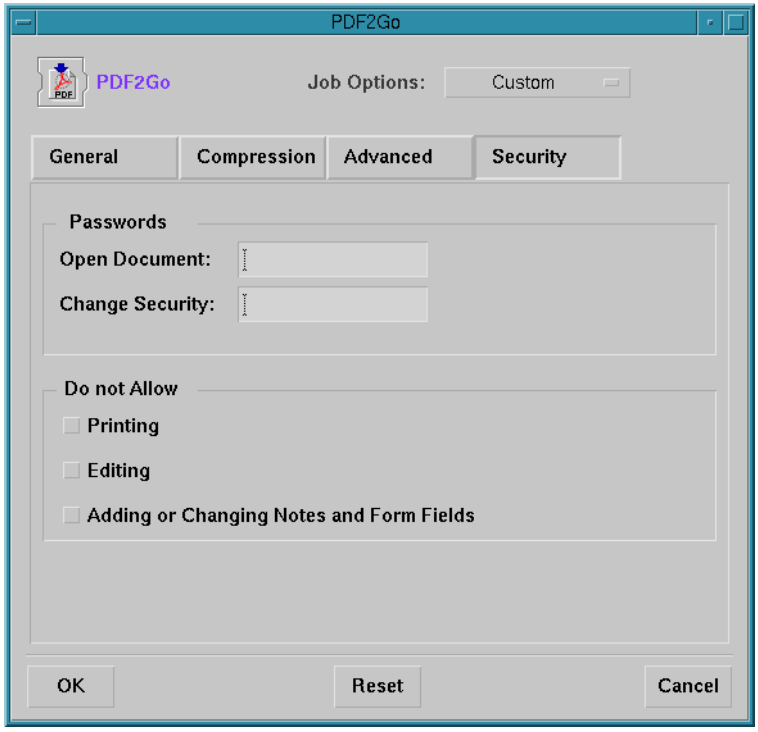
Tip: It is recommended to perform transformations prior to **PDF2Go** (when Ripping).

Security Tab

You can limit access to the created PDF files by giving the files passwords and restricting certain features (such as, printing and editing).



Tip: Alternatively, you can set or modify the security settings at a later stage if you save the file in a PDF-editing application, such as Adobe Acrobat.



Passwords

You can assign the generated PDF file an **Open Document** password and/or a **Change Security** password.

- **Open Document** - users must type this password before they can open the file. When a file is opened with an Open Document password, the user cannot change the security options.
- **Change Security** - users must type this password before they can set or change security options. If you set any security options, you should also specify a Change Security setting password; otherwise, anyone who opens the file can remove the restrictions.

➢ Type a password in the relevant box(es), or leave the box(es) blank in order not to use a password.



Note: If the file has both passwords, it can be opened with either one.

Use different **Open Document** and **Change Security** passwords. If they are identical, a user who has the password that opens the document can also change the security options.

Do Not Allow

You can prevent users from RIPping and printing, changing the document, or adding or changing notes and form fields.

➢ Select the relevant option to prevent a particular action:

- **Printing** - prohibits users from RIPping and printing the file.
- **Editing** - prohibits users from making changes to the document.
- **Adding or Changing Notes and Form Fields** - prohibits users from adding or changing Notes and Form Fields.

Editing PDF2Go Files

Post-RIP PDF documents generated by PDF2Go are fully rasterized and consist of LW and CT layers. Despite their Rasterized nature, post-RIP editing of PDF2Go files is possible, thereby allowing content editability at the very last moment before output.

PDF2Go files are editable using the powerful PDF-editing tools of external applications, such as Adobe Acrobat and Adobe Photoshop.



Tip: We recommend using Acrobat 4.x or later, since it supports PDF 1.3 (PS3).



Important: Since the generated PDF files are not native PDF, some editing functions normally available to native PDFs are not available (such as, live text editing).

Editing LW elements

You can modify the color of line-art and text object elements using Adobe Acrobat 4.x with various plug-in tools (such as Enfocus PitStop 4.x). You can also add new line-art objects and text to the LW layer.



Note: Enfocus PitStop also allows advanced editing of pre-RIP PDF documents (such as, PDFs not generated by PDF2Go). This includes creating and editing line-art (paths, anchor points, direction points, colors) and raster-object manipulation (rotation, scaling, moving, shearing, masking, layering and more).

Editing CT elements

Since the CT image is not banded, you can use Photoshop (which opens from within Acrobat) to edit the whole image (and not just one strip at a time).

23 Latin Font Handling

Font Library....188
Managing Latin Fonts....190
Downloading Additional Latin Fonts from Macintosh....194
Downloading PostScript Fonts from PC....195
Converting TrueType Fonts for Brisque....196

Font Library

Brisque automatically recognizes standard Adobe PostScript fonts. A large set of Adobe (Latin) fonts is included in a Font library on the Brisque. You can add additional Latin fonts to the Font library, download, backup, delete, and restore fonts.

This chapter describes:

- The contents of the Font library
- How Brisque handles PostScript fonts
- How to manage PostScript (Latin) fonts
- How to unpack and download fonts.



Note: The Libraries and Rename functions are relevant to Composite fonts only. For further details, see *Chapter 24, Composite Font Handling*.

Brisque arrives installed with a large set of PostScript Latin fonts.

Brisque also supports non-Latin Composite fonts such as Japanese, Chinese, and Korean.

In Japan, the Brisque Font library includes the following seven Morisawa fonts:

- Ryumin-Light-KL
- Midashi-Go-MB31
- Gothic-Medium-BBB
- Futo-Go-B101
- Jun-101
- Futo-Min-A101
- Midashi-Min-MA31.



Note: Morisawa fonts are available as an option. To purchase them, consult your Creo Care Center.

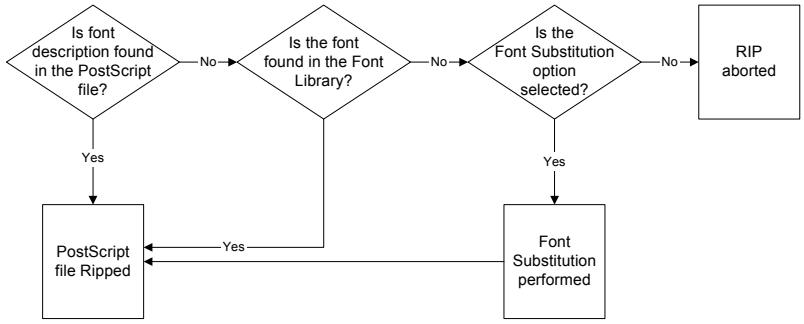
Handling PostScript Fonts

To RIP the fonts contained in the input PostScript/PDF file, Brisque needs the font description which may be embedded in the input PostScript file, or located in the Brisque Font library.

During RIP, Brisque searches for the font description as follows:

- First the application checks if the font description is embedded in the PostScript/PDF file.
- If not, the application tries to find the font in the Brisque Font library. If found, that font description is used during RIP.
- If there is no matching font in the Font library, the software substitutes a default font. To enable this feature, select **Font Substitution** in the Font Handling dialog box.

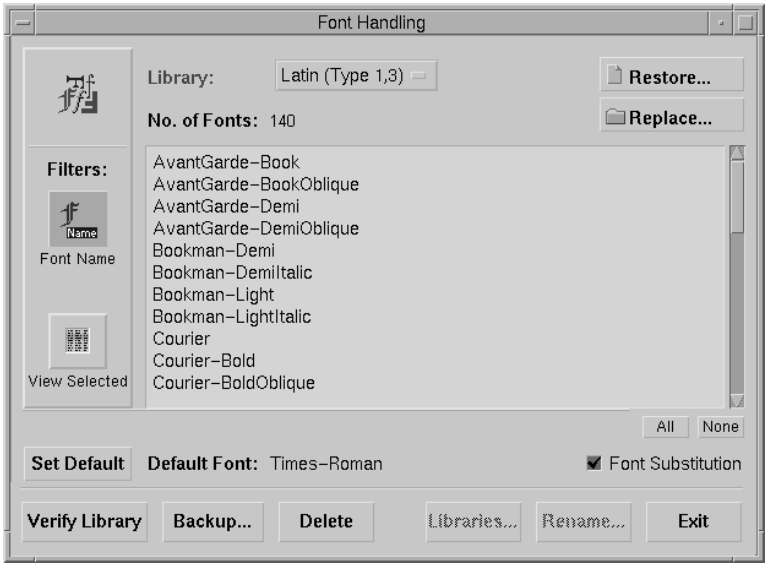
Note: If the **Default Font Substitution** feature is disabled, the RIP is aborted.



Managing Latin Fonts

A set of Adobe fonts is included in a Font library on the Brisque. To add additional Latin fonts to the system, see *page 194*. The Brisque allows you to manage the fonts in certain ways.

➢ To open the Font Handling dialog box, from the Brisque Launch Pad, or from the **RIP Setup** panel, double-click the **Fonts** icon; the Font Handling dialog box appears.

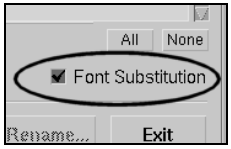


Note: When you access the dialog box via the PreFlight Check or RIP windows, the **Verify Library**, **Backup**, and **Delete** functions are unavailable. The **Rename** and **Libraries** options are relevant to composite fonts only, and are not available when working with Latin fonts.

Font Substitution

When working with PostScript fonts, Font Substitution allows you to automatically substitute a default font for one that is missing during RIP. If the option is unavailable, the RIP is aborted.

- Select **Font Substitution** to toggle the option on or off. When the option is selected, the **Default Font** box indicates the name of the designated substitution font (Times-Roman by default). If the check box is clear, the **Default Font** box displays **None**.



To designate a default replacement font:

1. Activate **Font Substitution**.
2. Click a font from the list in the Font Handling dialog box.
3. Click **Set Default**; the name of the selected font appears in the **Default Font** box.

Backing Up Fonts

You can back up fonts to a folder. If any of the fonts contained in the Font library are corrupted, you can replace them using the backup.

To backup fonts:

1. From the Font list, select each font you want to backup, or click **All** to select the entire list; the selected fonts appear highlighted.
2. Click **Backup**; a browser appears.
3. From the browser, select a destination for the backup fonts and click **OK**; the selected fonts are copied to the designated location, to a subfolder named psfonts (the subfolder is automatically created).

Restoring Fonts

Use this operation to restore fonts from the backup folder to the Font library. You use this option, for example, if fonts in the library become corrupted or are missing.

To restore fonts:

1. Click the **Restore** button; a browser appears.
2. From the browser, navigate to your backup font folder and select the psfonts folder containing the backup fonts.
3. Click **OK**; the Restore dialog box appears.



4. From the Restore dialog box, click the fonts you want to restore, or click **All** to restore all of the fonts in the list.
5. Click **OK**; the selected fonts are restored, and the Font Handling dialog box appears.

Deleting Fonts

Use this option to delete fonts from the Font List.

To delete a font:

1. Select one or several fonts.
2. Click the **Delete** button; a message appears, prompting you to confirm the selected command.
3. Click **OK**.



Note: You cannot delete **Reserved** or **Default fonts** (for example, Times-Roman, Helvetica, Courier etc). If you try to delete such a font, an appropriate message appears.

Replacing a Corrupted Library

Use this option to replace all fonts in the existing font library with the backup font library. You use this option if the library becomes corrupted.

To revert to a backup library:

1. Click the **Replace** button; a message prompts you to confirm the command.
2. Click **Yes**; a browser appears.
3. From the browser, select the folder that contains the backup fonts, and click **OK**; a message appears, indicating that the Font library replacement is complete.



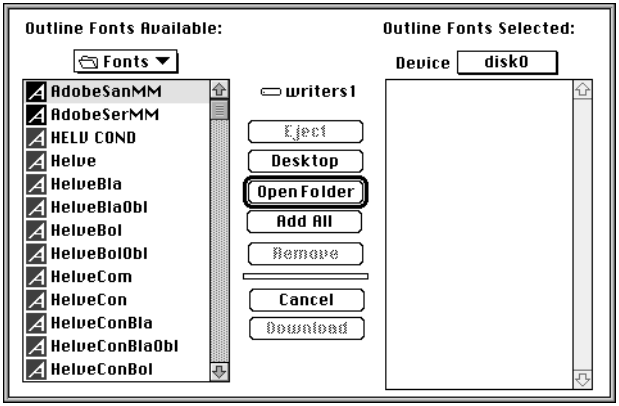
Tip: If the original Brisque font library becomes corrupted, click **Verify Library** to reinstall the original set of Adobe PostScript Latin fonts provided with the Brisque.

Downloading Additional Latin Fonts from Macintosh

You can download additional Latin PostScript fonts from the Macintosh to the Brisque with a proprietary downloading application (such as Adobe Font Downloader 5.0.5 or higher).

To download PostScript fonts to the Brisque:

1. From the Macintosh Apple menu select **Chooser**.
2. From the Chooser dialog box, click the **LaserWriter** icon; a list of printers appears.
3. In the Chooser dialog box, make sure that **Background Printing** option is not selected.
4. If your network has multiple zones, select the zone on which the Brisque is located.
5. From the list of printers, click the item with the name of the Brisque and FontDownloader (for example, **Brisque1_FontDownloader**); the printer is selected. You may close the Chooser (since this 'printer' is predefined by the system, no setup is necessary).
6. Launch the Font Downloader application that you are using.
7. From the File menu, select **Download Font**; a directory dialog box appears.



8. In the **Device** box, make sure that **disk0** is selected.
9. In the Available Fonts list, navigate to the folder that contains the fonts.

If you are downloading fonts from a diskette, use the menu button above the Available Fonts list to move to Desktop level.

The fonts in the selected folder are listed on the left.

10. To select fonts, double-click a font name, or click a font name and click **Add**; the selected font appears in the list on the right.

    Repeat this step for each font that you want to download.

    Or, click **Add All** to download all the fonts in the current folder.

11. When the list on the right is complete, click **Download**; a message indicated that the selected font(s) are being downloaded.

    When the fonts finish downloading, a message indicates that downloading was successful.

    To interrupt the transfer of a font, click **Cancel**.

12. Click **OK**.



Note: On the Brisque, if the names of the downloaded fonts do not appear in the Font Handling dialog box, click **Verify Library** to update the list.

Downloading PostScript Fonts from PC

You can download PostScript fonts to the Brisque, from the hard disk of a PC that resides on the Brisque network, running Windows 3.11, or from a DOS-formatted floppy disk.

To download fonts from a floppy disk:

- Insert the disk into the Brisque floppy disk drive, and use TransferPro to copy each font's **.PFB** file to any Brisque Hot Folder. The Hot Folder automatically identifies the input files as Font files, processes them and adds them to the Latin Font library (TransferPro recognizes only 2HD DOS floppy disk, see *Chapter 12, TransferPro* for details).

To download fonts from a PC, using Adobe PostScript Font Downloader:

1. Install Adobe PostScript Font Downloader onto your PC.
2. Launch the application, and from the File menu, select **Print**.
3. From the Print dialog box, select **Printers**; the Print Setup dialog box , listing Brisque Hot Folders.
4. Select any Brisque Hot Folder from the list, and click **Options**.



WARNING: Do not select **Brisque_FontDownloader**.

5. From the Options dialog box, select **Fonts**.
6. From the dialog box that appears, select the fonts that you want to download, and click **Download**; the selected fonts are sent to the Brisque, RIPped, and automatically added to the Latin Fonts library.

Converting TrueType Fonts for Brisque

TrueType fonts are not recognized by the Brisque and therefore have to be converted to PostScript type 42 fonts. Once the fonts have been converted, they can be transferred to the Brisque Font library.



Note: When installing the Brisque Macintosh Front End, the *TrueType2PS* utility is automatically installed into the **PS Utils** folder, found in the **Creo Brisque** folder on the Macintosh (see the *Brisque Production from the Macintosh User Guide Chapter 2, Installing the Brisque Macintosh Front End*).

To convert TrueType Fonts for use on the Brisque:

Macintosh users

1. Drag and drop font suitcases containing TrueType font(s) or individual TrueType fonts onto the **TrueType2PS** utility icon; the fonts are converted into PostScript type 42 fonts and appear as TrueType2PS files on the Macintosh.
2. Drag and drop the converted fonts onto any mounted Brisque Hot Folder; the fonts are automatically processed and added to the Brisque Latin Font library.

PC users

1. Use floppy disks to copy the font files with the **.TTF** extension to the Macintosh. They appear as **PC Exchange** files on the Macintosh.
2. Drag and drop the **PC Exchange** files onto the **TrueType2PS** utility icon; the fonts are converted into PostScript type 42 fonts, and appear as **TrueType2PS** files on the Macintosh.
3. Drag and drop the converted fonts onto any mounted Brisque Hot Folder; the fonts are automatically processed and added to the Brisque Latin Font library.

24 Composite Font Handling

Overview 200
Managing Composite Fonts 202
Creating a New Composite Font Library 204
Installing Asian Fonts 207
Installing Morisawa and Adobe Type OCF Kanji Fonts (Optional).....210
Installing FontWorks OCF Kanji Fonts (Optional).....215
Installing Morisawa NewCID Kanji Fonts (Optional) 222
Installing FontWorks CID Kanji Fonts (Optional).....229

Overview

You can install, download, backup, rename, delete, and restore composite fonts. You can organize groups of fonts into Font libraries, and manage them as libraries, as well as delete and disable libraries.

The Brisque supports non-Latin Composite fonts, such as:

- Japanese
- Chinese
- Korean.

You can manage these fonts at a font level and at a library level. You can create new Font libraries, and install additional fonts to existing libraries.

The Composite fonts are divided into two groups: **OCF** (Original Composite Fonts) and **CID** (Character ID Keyed Fonts). Each of the fonts has both OCF and CID versions.

In Japan, the Brisque Font library includes the following Morisawa OCF and CID fonts:

- Ryumin-Light-KL
- Midashi-Go-MB31
- Gothic-Medium-BBB
- Futo-Go-B101
- Jun-101
- Futo-Min-A101
- Midashi-Min-MA31.



Note: Morisawa fonts are available as an option. To purchase them, consult your Creo Care Center.

This chapter describes:

- How to create and work with Font libraries
- Font Substitution
- How to rename Kanji Fonts
- How to identify the cause of RIP failure related to fonts
- How to install Asian Fonts.



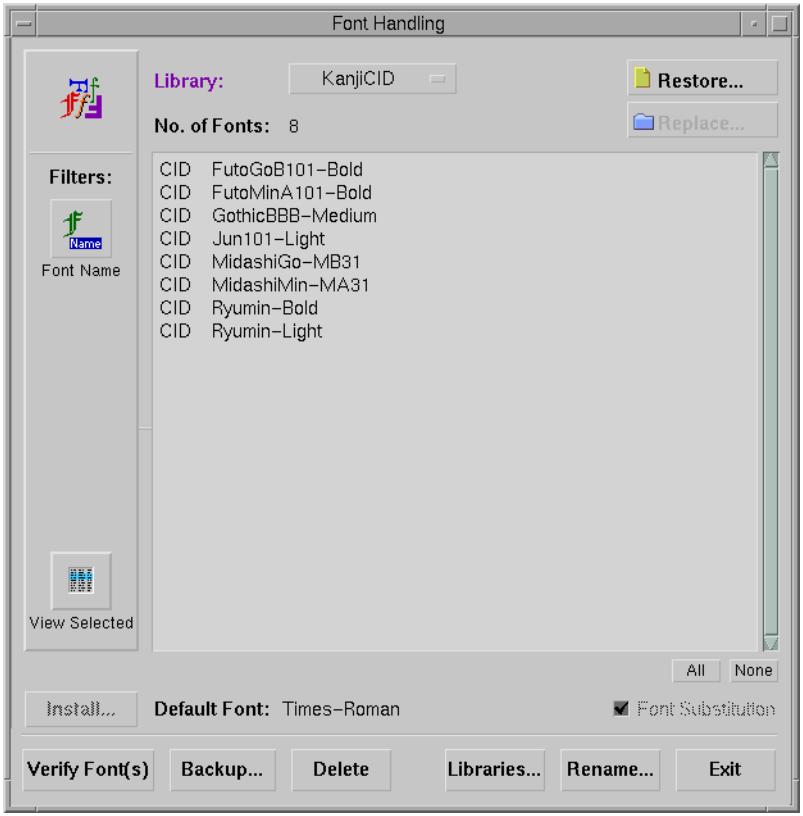
Refer to *Chapter 23, Latin Font Handling* for a description of the following:

- How the Brisque Handles PostScript Fonts
- Backing Up Fonts
- Restoring Fonts
- Deleting Fonts
- Replacing a Corrupted library.

Managing Composite Fonts

You can manage Asian Composite fonts in different ways, via the Font Handling window.

➢ From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the **Rip Setup** panel and double-click the **Fonts** icon; the Font Handling dialog box appears.



Note: If you work with various Font libraries, select the relevant one from the **Library** box.

Font Substitution

When you are working with PostScript fonts, you can designate a default substitution font, and activate **Font Substitution**. During RIP, the default font replaces any font without a description (for example, a font whose description was neither transferred with the PostScript file, nor found in the library). If a font from the input file is missing and the Font Substitution option is deselected, the RIP is aborted.

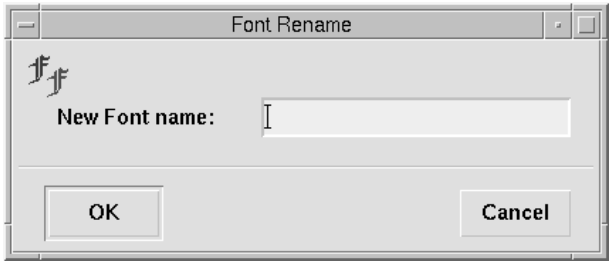
Note: The designated substitution font can be a Latin Font only. The default is Times-Roman.

4. In the Font Handling dialog box, in the **Library** box, select **Latin** (**Type 1,3**).
5. Make sure that the **Font Substitution** option is selected.
6. Click a font listed in the Font Handling dialog box.
7. Click **Set Default**; the name of the selected font appears in the **Default Font** box.

Renaming Composite Fonts

To rename a Kanji font:

1. From the Font list, click the composite font you want to rename.
2. Click **Rename**; the Font Rename dialog box appears.



3. In the **New Font Name** box, type the new name.
4. Click **OK**.

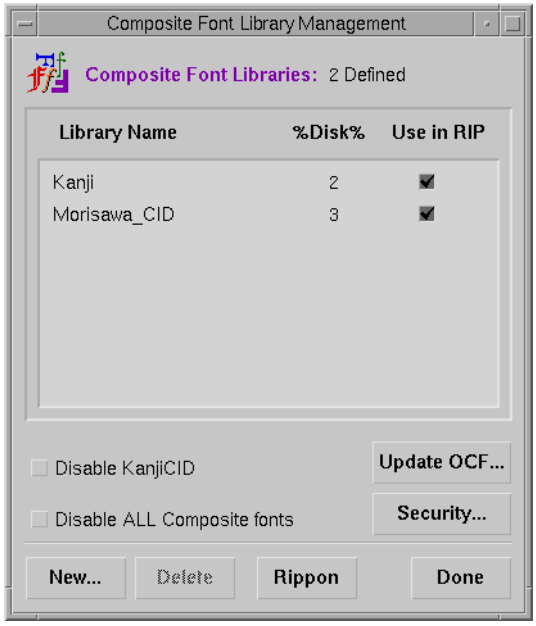
Note: Although the font is listed in the Font list by the new name, the RIP still recognizes the original Font name in the PostScript file.

Creating a New Composite Font Library

A Font library is a folder where one or more fonts are stored. You can keep all of your composite fonts in one library, or you can organize them into different libraries, according to your preferences. When you install a composite font, you indicate into which library it is installed.

To create a new library:

1. From the Font Handling dialog box, click **Libraries**; the Composite Font Library Management dialog box appears.



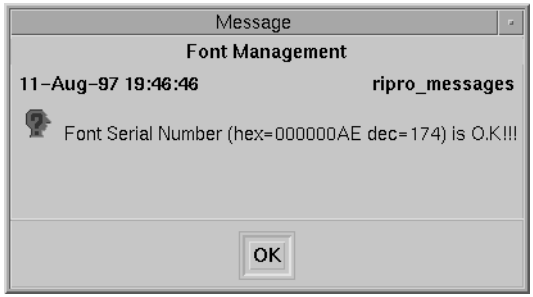
2. Click **New**; the New Name dialog box appears.
3. In the **New Library Name** box, type a name.
4. Click **OK**.

➢ To delete a Font library, select it from the **Library Name** list, and click **Delete**.

Checking the Security Function

Brisque has a built in security mechanism that is used by some fonts. Latin fonts and most Asian fonts do not use the security mechanism but Kanji fonts normally do. When you activate the Security function, Brisque checks the Security mechanism, and automatically corrects any problems.

➢ To check the Security mechanism, from the Composite Font Library Management dialog box, click **Security**.



If the `Font Serial Number hex=xxx dec=xxx is OK!!` message appears, the Security mechanism is functioning properly (meaning that any problems, if such were encountered, were successfully corrected during the check).

Any other message indicates a problem with the security mechanism. Please contact your Creo support technician.

Update OCF

When installing the additional OCF composite font, use this option to enable it.

➢ To update the OCF composite fonts, click **Update OCF**.

Disable KanjiCID

➢ To disable all composite fonts, select **Disable Kanji CID** option.

Disable All Composite Fonts

You can disable all composite fonts during the RIP.

➢ To disable all composite fonts, select **Disable All Composite Fonts** option.

Use In RIP

This option lets you disable selected font libraries during the RIP

- To isolate a font, re-RIP a file repeatedly, with only one font library enabled at a time.
- To enable a font library, select **Use In RIP**.
- To disable a font library, clear **Use In RIP**.

Determining Whether Composite Fonts Caused RIP Failure

In case of a font-related RIP failure, first check the related messages. A `Failed Font` message indicates that a specific font that was missing. PreFlight Check can also determine whether a Font is missing.

Once confirming that a missing font does not cause the failure, access the the Composite Font Library Management dialog box and do the following:

1. Activate the **Security** function.
2. If the Security function reveals no problem, re-RIP the file, since during the Security check, some corrections may have been made.
3. If the RIP fails, select **Disable All Composite Fonts** and re-RIP the file.
   - If the RIP fails, the composite fonts are not causing the RIP failure.
   - If the RIP is successful, one or more composite fonts are causing RIP failure. Proceed to the next step.
4. Select **Use in RIP** to isolate and identify the problematic font(s).

Installing Asian Fonts

This method for installing composite fonts is primarily used for Chinese fonts, but may be implemented for Japanese and other Asian composite fonts.

The font may be supplied in one of the following formats:

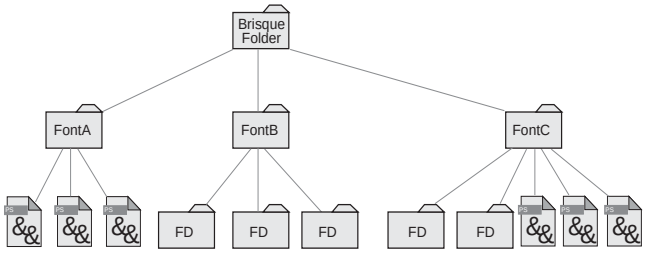
- PostScript files exclusively.
- Font Data that has already been RIPped and is organized into **Font Data** folders (each folder must be properly named in advance, for example, **fonts**, or **fontdata**).
- PostScript files, and Font Data in the **Font Data** folders.

Important Notes Prior to Installation

Before you install, you must copy the font files to the Brisque, without modifying the existing file structure. You may copy the files to the Brisque via AppleShare, a spooler, from a CD-ROM, etc.

- If the fonts are PostScript files only, copy the files into a single folder on the Brisque.
- If the fonts are Font Data only, copy the Font Data folders into a single folder on the Brisque. Do not change the names of the Font Data folders.
- If the fonts are both PostScript files and Font Data folders, you must copy the PostScript files and the Font Data folders into one folder on the Brisque. Do not change the names of the Font Data folders.
- (Note to font vendors.) The font structure supported by the Asian Installer should contain no more than one subdirectory.
- In some cases, Composite-Roman font files may need to be downloaded via the Font Downloader on the Macintosh, instead of using the Asian Installer. For example, ATM fonts.

- You may copy several fonts into one Brisque folder, but each font must be in its own subfolder (as shown in the following figure).



Installing Asian Fonts

1. Copy the Font files to any mounted Read/Write volume.
2. From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the **RIP Setup** panel, and double-click the **Install Asian** icon; the Asian Installer window appears.



3. In the **Install new Composite Font(s) to Library** box, select the destination library (by default, **Kanji**). To create a new Library, see *Creating a New Composite Font Library* on page 204.
4. Click **Select Path**; a browser appears.
5. Use the browser to navigate to the folder where you copied the supplied font files (see *Important Notes Prior to Installation* on page 207).

If you intend to install more than one font at a time in the library, select more than one folder from the browser.



Important: If you select multiple folders, each folder must contain either a single font or multiple fonts.

6. Select one of the following options:

   One Font - during installation, Brisque searches for the PostScript files inside the selected folder and RIPs them.

   Several Fonts - during installation, Brisque searches for PostScript files inside the subfolders, and RIPs them.

   In both cases, any sub-sub folders (Font Data folders) are copied to the library.

7. Click **Done**; the PostScript files are sent to the RIP in one Job Ticket, and Font Data folders are copied to the selected Font library.

   Upon successful completion of the font installation, a message appears.

Installing Morisawa and Adobe Type OCF Kanji Fonts (Optional)

The Brisque supports Morisawa and Adobe Type composite Kanji OCF fonts. In this document, we explain how to install high resolution Morisawa and Adobe Type OCF Kanji fonts. The high resolution Morisawa and Adobe Type Kanji fonts are intended for use with a RIP that defines a resolution higher than 1201 dpi.



For information on backing up, deleting, restoring, and renaming fonts, see *Chapter 23, Latin Font Handling*.

Preliminary Step

Before you install Morisawa or Adobe Type Kanji fonts into your Brisque, you must perform a custom Creo Output Installation to install the **PS Utilities for Kanji** folder onto your Macintosh. This folder contains the applications necessary for installing Morisawa and Adobe Type Kanji fonts. If the **PS Utilities Kanji** folder is already installed on your Macintosh, skip to the next section. This is a setup procedure that needs to be performed only once.

To install the PS Utilities Kanji:

1. From the Apple menu, select **Chooser**.
2. Click the **AppleShare** icon.
3. If your network has multiple zones, in the **AppleTalk Zones** box, select the zone in which the Brisque resides.
4. In the **Select a file server** box, select the Brisque file server, then click **OK;** a dialog box appears.
5. Select **Registered User**.
6. In the **Name** box, type `root`.
7. In the **Password** box, type in the password (`ripro` by default).
8. Click **OK**; a dialog box appears the list of volumes on the selected Brisque.
9. From the **Select the items you want to use** box, click **Ripro Applications**, then click **OK**; the **Ripro applications** icon appears on the Macintosh desktop.

10. Double-click the **Ripro Applications** icon; the Ripro Applications window appears.
11. From the Ripro Applications window, double-click the **CreoScitexBrisqueInstaller** icon; the Creo Installer splash screen appears.
12. Click **Continue**; the Install window appears.
13. Click **Custom Install**; a browser appears.
14. From the browser, select the **PS Utilities Kanji** option, then click **Install**; the **PS Utils Kanji** folder is installed on the Macintosh. This folder contains the SAKI application.

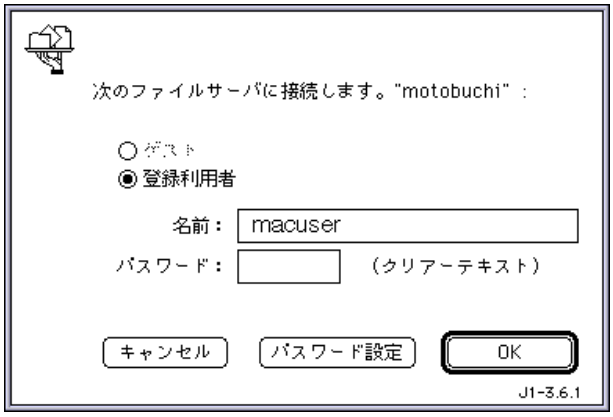
Installing Morisawa and Adobe Type Kanji OCF Fonts

A font from the Morisawa or from the Adobe Type Library can be installed on one Brisque only. Once a font is installed, the diskette is marked and cannot be used to install fonts on another Brisque. However, you can use the same diskette to reinstall the fonts on the same Brisque (that is, with the same PGF Key number).

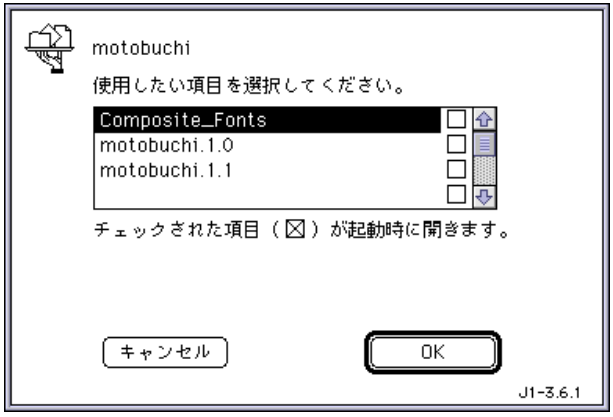
To install High-Res Morisawa and Adobe Type Kanji OCF fonts on the Brisque:

1. On the Macintosh, from the **Apple** menu, select **Chooser**.
2. If you have multiple zones on your network, select the zone on which the Brisque resides.
3. Click the **AppleShare** icon, then from the list of file servers, select the Brisque.
4. Select the **Registered User** option.

5. In the **Registered User Name** box, type `root`, then type your password (`ripro` by default).



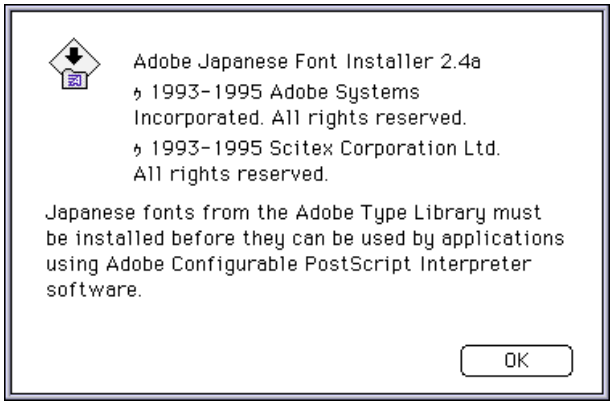
Click **OK**; a dialog box displays the list of volumes on the selected Brisque.



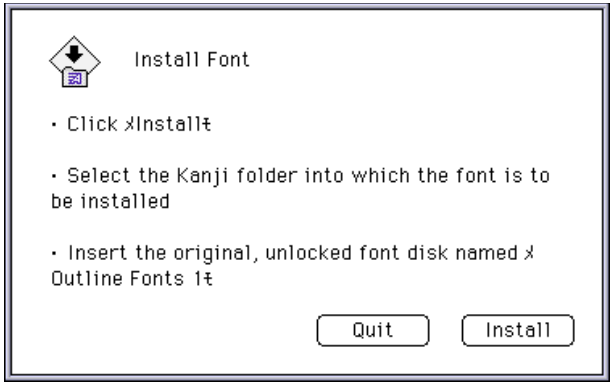
6. Select the **Composite_Fonts** volume, then click **OK**; the **Composite_Fonts** volume icon appears on the Macintosh desktop.



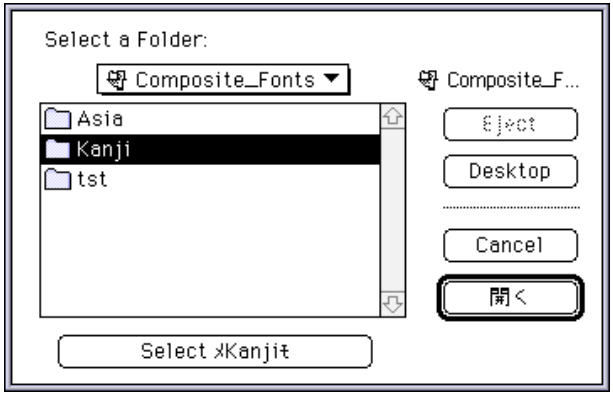
7. From the PS Utils Kanji window, double-click the **SAKI** icon; the Adobe Japanese Font Installer window appears.



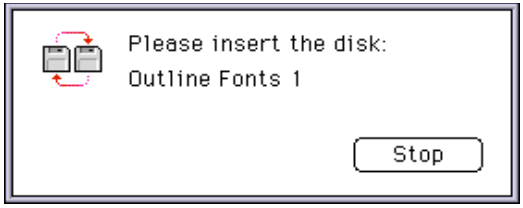
8. Click **OK**; the Install Font window appears.



9. Click **Install.**



10. Navigate to the **Composite_Fonts** folder, click Kanji, then click the **Select Kanji** button; a serial number box appears.
11. Click **OK**, then proceed with the installation, according to the system prompts.



When the font installation is complete, a message appears indicating a successful completion.

12. Click **Quit**.
13. Perform the Verification procedure from the Brisque. (See below for instructions.) Until you perform the Verification procedure, the fonts are not properly installed.
14. To install additional Morisawa Fonts, repeat the procedure from step 6.

Verifying Font Installation

In order to complete the font installation, you *must* perform the verification procedure. Until you perform the verification procedure, the Morisawa and/or Adobe Type Kanji fonts are not properly installed. If, during the verification procedure, the application detects that one of the font files is missing or corrupt, a message is displayed.

To perform the verification procedure:

1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, click the **Fonts** icon; the Font Handling dialog box appears.
2. In the **Library** box, select a font type.
3. Click **Verify Font(s)** to check the new font; a message should appear stating that the particular Font Library has been verified.

Installing FontWorks OCF Kanji Fonts (Optional)

The Brisque supports FontWorks composite OCF Kanji fonts. In this document, we explain how to install high resolution FontWorks OCF fonts using the UNIX installer version 4.5 or higher, which only supports installing FontWorks fonts from a CD-ROM version 3.1 or higher. High Resolution FontWorks fonts are intended for use with a RIP that defines a resolution higher than 1201 dpi.



For information on backing up, deleting, restoring, and renaming fonts, see *Chapter 23, Latin Font Handling*.

Preliminary Step

Before you can install FontWorks fonts onto your Brisque, you must perform a "Custom Install" Creo Brisque Installation to install the **PS Utilities Kanji** folder onto your Macintosh. The **PS Utilities Kanji** folder contains the applications necessary for installing FontWorks OCF fonts. If this folder already is installed on your Macintosh, skip to the next section. This is a setup procedure that only needs to be performed once.

To install the PS Utilities Kanji folder:

1. From the Apple menu, select **Chooser.**
2. Click the **AppleShare** icon.
3. If your network has multiple zones, in the **AppleTalk Zones** box, select the zone in which the Brisque resides.
4. In the **Select a file server** box, select the Brisque file server, then click **OK;** a dialog box appears.
5. Select **Registered User.**
6. In the **Name** box, type `root`.
7. In the **Password** box, type in the password (`ripro` by default).
8. Click **OK**; a dialog box appears the list of volumes on the selected Brisque.
9. From the **Select the items you want to use** box, click **Ripro Applications**, then click **OK**; the **Ripro applications** icon appears on the Macintosh desktop.

10. Double-click the **Ripro Applications** icon; the Ripro Applications window appears.
11. From the Ripro Applications window, double-click the **CreoScitexBrisqueInstaller** icon; the Creo Installer splash screen appears.
12. Click **Continue**; the Install window appears.
13. Click **Custom Install**; a browser appears.
14. From the browser, select the **PS Utilities Kanji** option, then click **Install**; the **PS Utils Kanji** folder is installed on the Macintosh. This folder contains the DummyVIP and Unix Installer application.

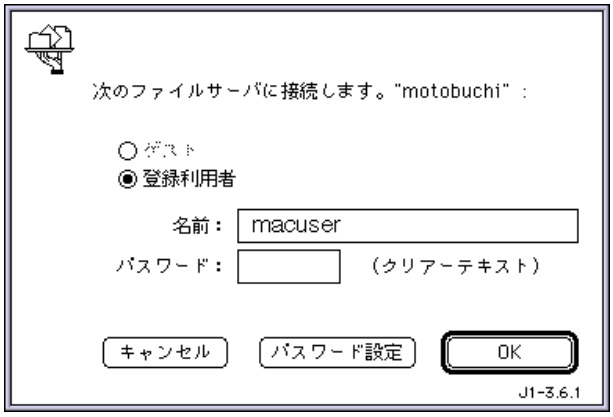
Installing the FontWorks OCF Fonts

A FontWorks font can be installed on one Brisque only. Once a font is installed, the diskette is marked and cannot be used to install fonts on another Brisque. However, you can use the same diskette to reinstall the fonts on the same Brisque (that is, with the same PGF Key number).

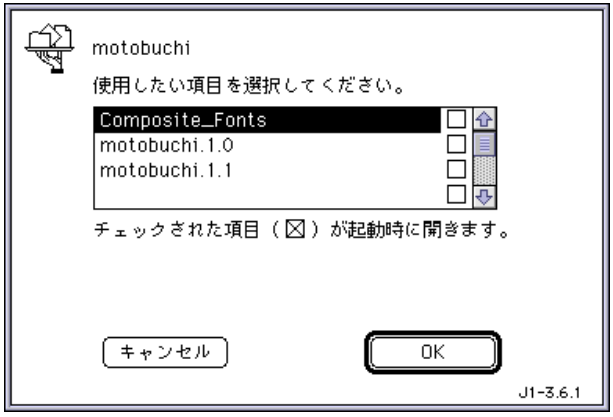
To install High Resolution FontWorks fonts on the Brisque:

1. On the Macintosh, from the **Apple** menu, select **Chooser**.
2. If you have multiple zones on your network, select the zone on which the Brisque resides.
3. Click the **AppleShare** icon, then from the list of file servers, select the Brisque.
4. Select the **Registered User** option.

5. In the **Registered User Name** box, type `root`, then type your password (`ripro` by default).



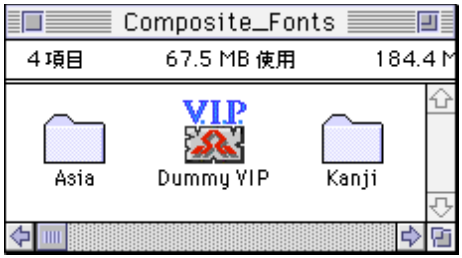
6. Click **OK**; a dialog box displays the list of volumes on the selected Brisque.



7. Select the **Composite_Fonts** volume, then click **OK**; the **Composite_Fonts** volume icon appears on the Macintosh desktop.



8. Drag the **DummyVIP** icon from the **PS Utils Kanji** folder into the **Composite_Fonts** volume on the Brisque.



9. Mount the **FontWorks** CD-ROM onto the Macintosh desktop.



10. From the **PS Utils Kanji** folder, double-click the **UNIX installer**; the following splash screen appears.



11. After a few moments, the splash screen disappears, and the Creo Installer dialog box appears. (You can also click the splash screen to make it disappear.)

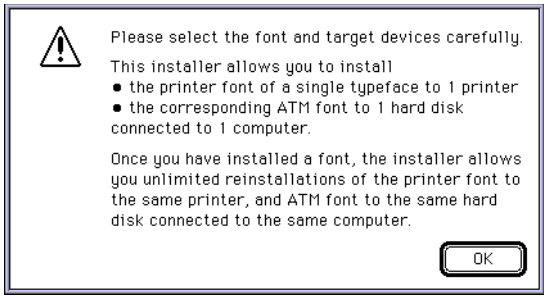
12. In the Creo Installer dialog box, click **OK**; the system prompts you to insert the FontWorks installer disk.



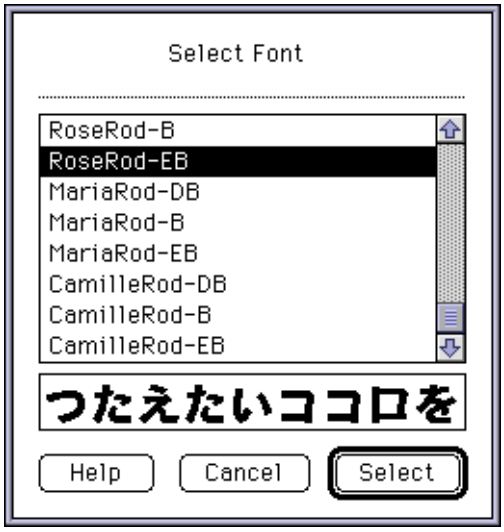
13. Insert the FontWorks installer disk into the Macintosh disk drive; the Select Options dialog box appears.



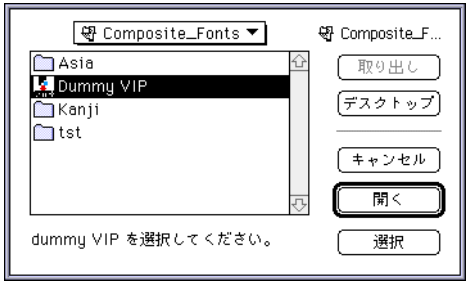
14. Make sure that the **Install Font** option is selected from the box, select the interface language, and click **OK**; a window regarding restrictions on the use of the fonts appears.



15. Read the message carefully, then **click OK**; the Select Font dialog box appears.



16. From the list of fonts, click the one you want to install, then click **Select**; a browser appears.



17. In the browser, navigate to the **Composite_Fonts** volume, then double-click the **Dummy VIP** folder from the list; the Install Font dialog box appears.
18. Select the **Install Printer Font** option, and click **Install**; a message appears prompting you to confirm the command.
19. Click **OK**; a progress indicator appears.
20. When the installation is complete, a message appears indicating successful installation. Click **OK**.

21. Perform the Verification procedure from the Brisque. (See below for instructions.) Until you perform the Verification procedure, the fonts are not properly installed.
22. To install additional FontWorks OCF fonts, repeat this procedure from step 8.

Verifying Font Installation

In order to complete the FontWorks font installation, you must perform the verification procedure. The FontWorks fonts are not properly installed until you perform the verification procedure, . If, during the verification procedure, the application detects that one of the font files is missing or corrupt, a message is displayed.

To perform the verification procedure:

1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, click the **Fonts** icon; the Font Handling dialog box appears.
2. In the **Library** box, select a font type.
3. Click **Verify Font(s)** to check the new font; a message should appear stating that the particular Font Library has been verified.

Installing Morisawa NewCID Kanji Fonts (Optional)

The Morisawa NewCID installation kit contains:

- **Morisawa Font** CD-ROM
- **High Resolution Installer** diskette
- **Read Me** diskette

Important Notes Before Installation

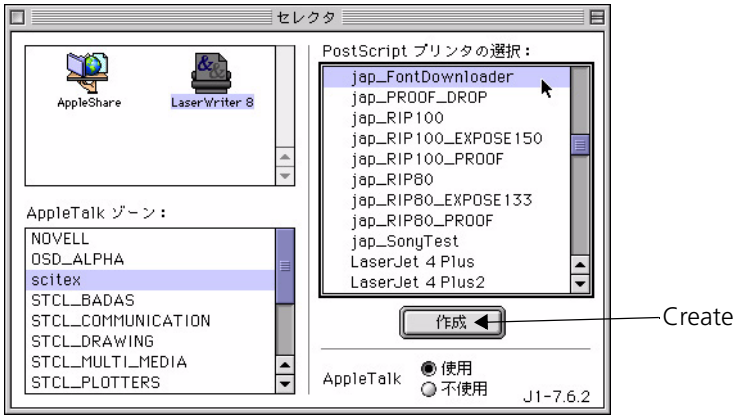
- The high resolution Morisawa NewCID fonts are intended for use with a RIP that defines a resolution higher than 1201 dpi.
- During the fonts installation, do not work with other applications running on your Macintosh and Brisque; the applications may corrupt.
- It is recommended to choose the Mac OS Base option from the Extention Manager when installing Morisawa NewCID fonts.
- It is recommended to perform the installation with low network traffic.
- Prior to the fonts installation, turn off the AntiVirus application on your Macintosh (via the Extention Manager).

Preliminary Step

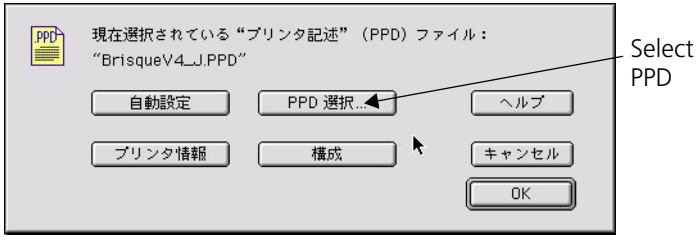
Before installing Morisawa NewCID fonts on your Brisque, you must install the PPD Print Extention on your Macintosh.

1. From the Apple Chooser, designate a printer (**LaserWriter8.x**).

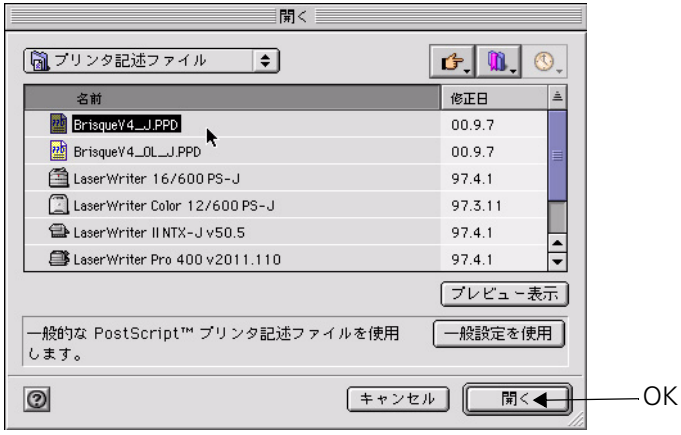
2. Select the zone on which your Brisque is connected, then select a network PostScript printer assigned to your Brisque, for example **jap_FontDownloader.**



3. Click **Create**; the following dialog box appears:

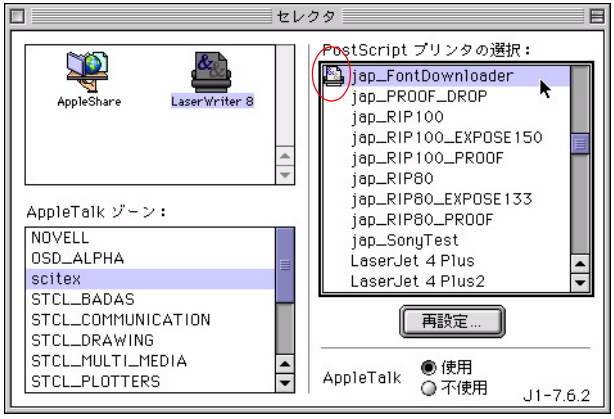


4. Click **Select PPD** to open the Printer Description list.



5. From the **Printer Descriptions** list, select an appropriate PPD file, then click **OK**.

6. To verify that the selected printer has been installed on your Macintosh, go back to the Macintosh Chooser. The Printer icon appears to the left of the selected printer, and the **jap_FontDownloader** icon appears on the Macintosh desktop.

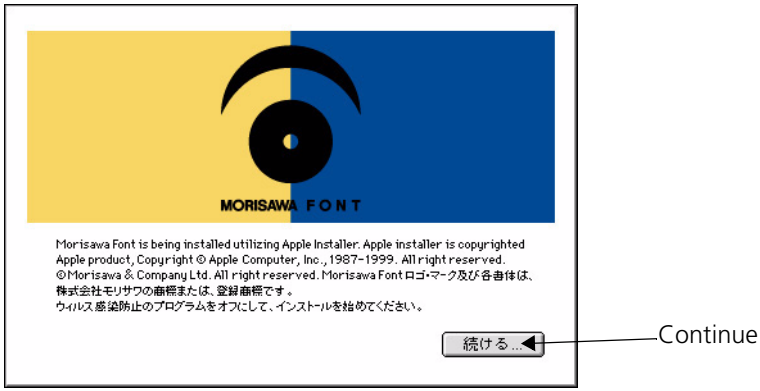




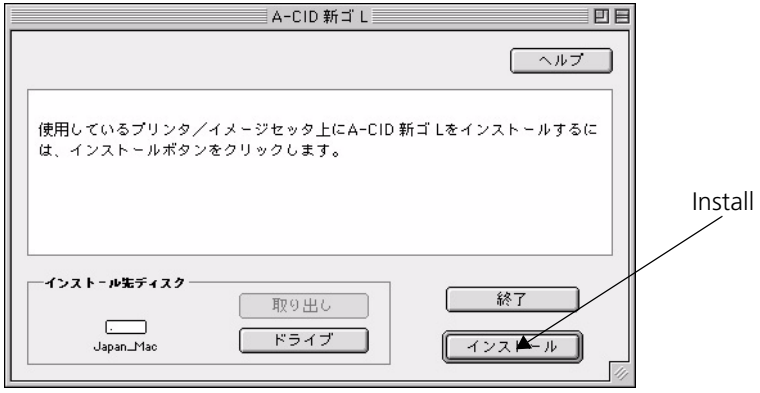
7. Insert the Morisawa Font CD-ROM and the High Resolution Installer diskette into the drives.



8. Click one of the icons in the Installer window below. The Morisawa Font startup window appears.



9. Click **Continue.**



10. To enable communication between your Macintosh and the Brisque, click **Install.**

11. The Installer checks the specification of the selected printer. Then the dialog box appears, displaying the important information such as font size, printer name, destination, free and total space.



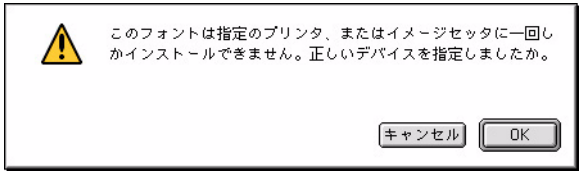
12. Select the disk from the **Device** box.



Important: The KanjiCID library is created automatically if **disk1** is selected (see *Installing the Morisawa NewCID Fonts on Brisque* on page 227). If you wish to install the Morisawa NewCID fonts into another library, use the **New** optioin in the Composite Font Library Management window to create a new destination library. In this case, a new library is located on another disk. Refer to *Creating a New Composite Font Library* on page 204).

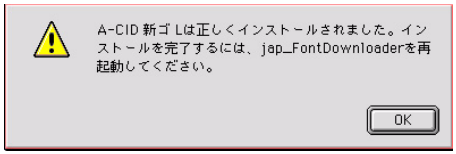
Do not select **disk 0** and **disk 2** as disk 0 is used for Latin fonts, and disk 2 is used for OCF fonts.

13. Click **OK**. The following message warns you that this package can be installed on one Brisque station only.



14. Click **OK** to continue. The system prompts you to reboot the Macintosh.

The system starts to download the Morisawa NewCID fonts from the CD-ROM to your Brisque station.

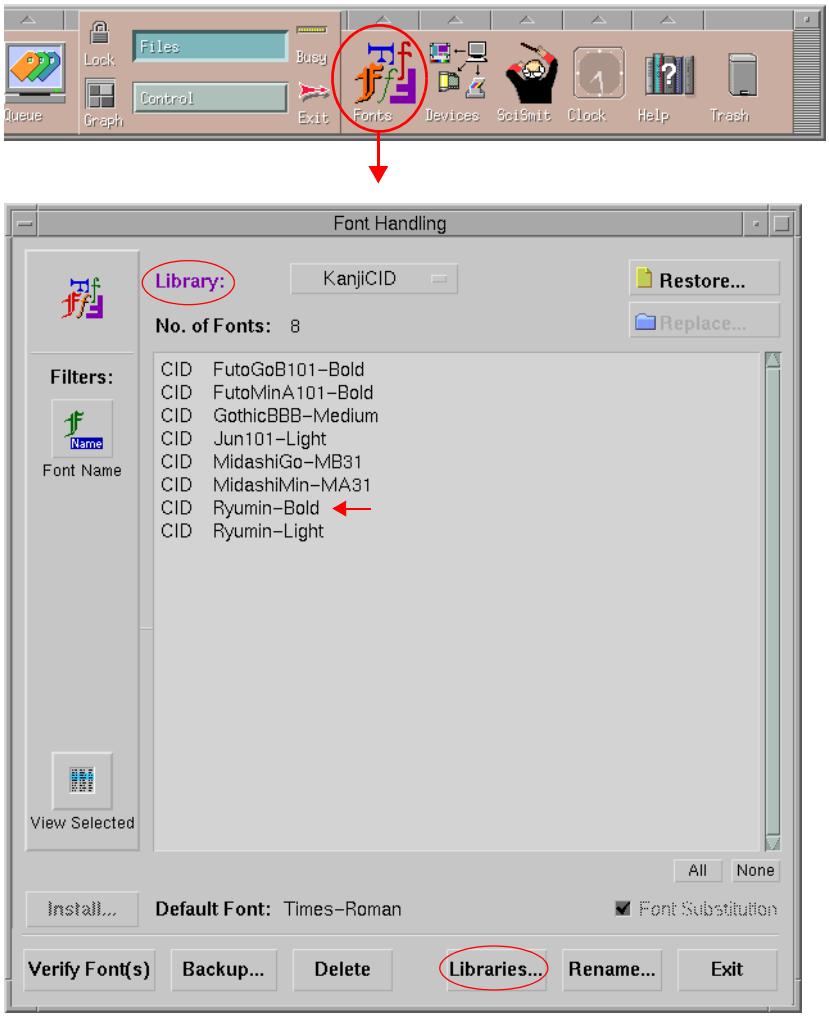


15. Click **OK** to reboot your Macintosh.

The preliminary step of the Morisawa NewCID fonts installation is complete.

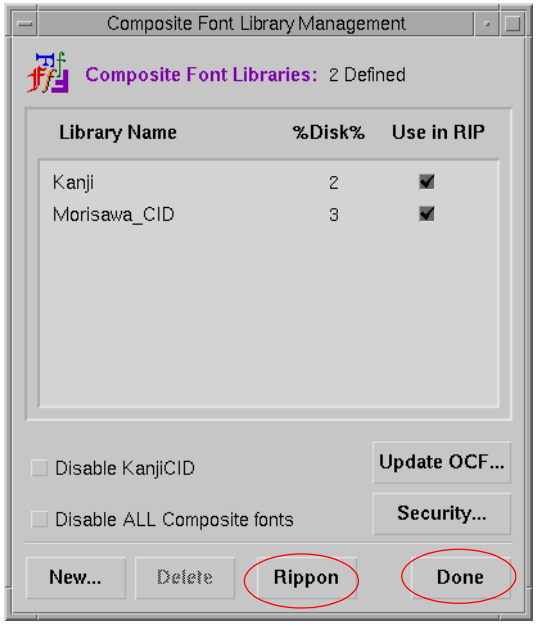
Installing the Morisawa NewCID Fonts on Brisque

1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the **Rip Setup** panel and double-click the **Fonts** icon. The Font Handling main window appears.



2. In the **Library** box, select the destination library (for example, **KanjiCID**) to verify that the Morisawa NewCID font is included.

3. Click the **Libraries** button to open the Composite Font Library Management dialog box.



4. To complete the Morisawa NewCID fonts installation on your Brisque station, click **Rippon**; then click **Done** to return to the Font Handling main window.

5. Click **Exit**. The Morisawa NewCID fonts is installed on your Brisque station.

Installing FontWorks CID Kanji Fonts (Optional)

The FontWorks CID installation kit contains:

- **FontWorks CID** CD-ROM
- **High Resolution Installer** diskette
- **Security** diskette

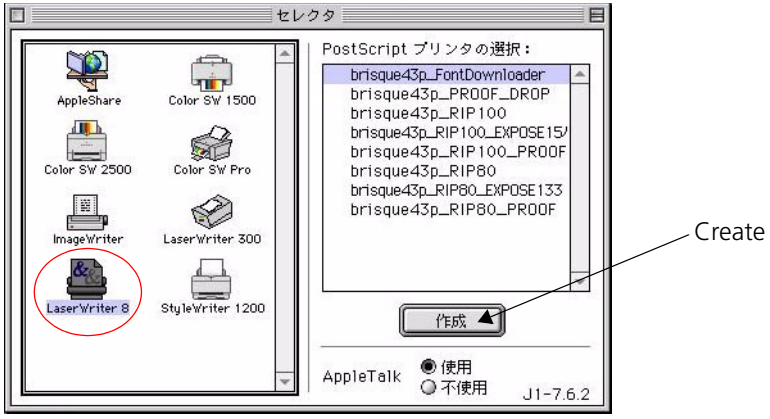
Important Notes Before Installation

- The high resolution FontWorks CID fonts are intended for use with a RIP that defines a resolution higher than 1201 dpi.
- Do not use the High Resolution Installer diskette supplied with the kit. To install the FontWorks CID fonts, download High Resolution Installer from the Brisque 4.0 Accessories CD-ROM.

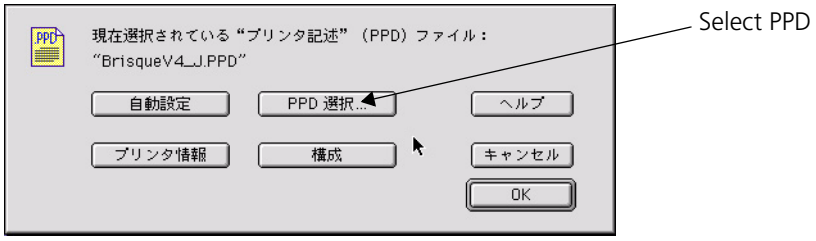
Preliminary Step

Before installing the FontWorks CID fonts on your Brisque, you must install the PPD Print Extention on your Macintosh.

1. From the Apple Chooser, designate a printer (**LaserWriter8.x**).
2. Select the zone in which your Brisque is connected, then select a network PostScript printer assigned to your Brisque, for example **Brisque43p_FontDownloader.**



3. Click **Create**; the following dialog box appears:



4. Click **Select PPD** to open the Printer Description list.



5. From the **Printer Descriptions** list, select an appropriate PPD file, then click **OK**.

6. To verify that the selected printer has been installed on your Macintosh, go back to the Macintosh Chooser. The Printer icon appears to the left of the selected printer, and the **Brisque43p_FontDownloader** icon appears on the Macintosh desktop.





7. Insert the FontWorks CID CD-ROM into the drive.
8. Download High Resolution Installer from the Brisque 4.0 Accessories CD-ROM.



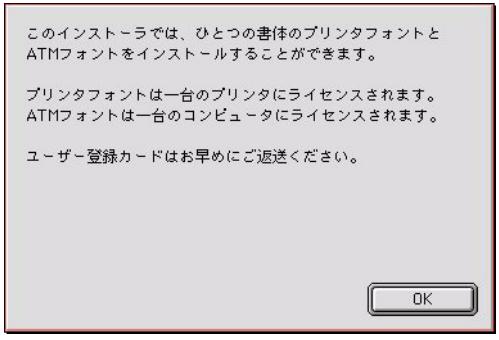
9. Double-click the **CID** icon. The following window appears.



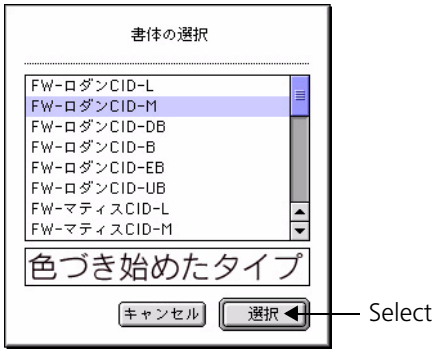
10. Select the **Install Font** option and click **OK**. A message appears asking to insert the Security diskette.



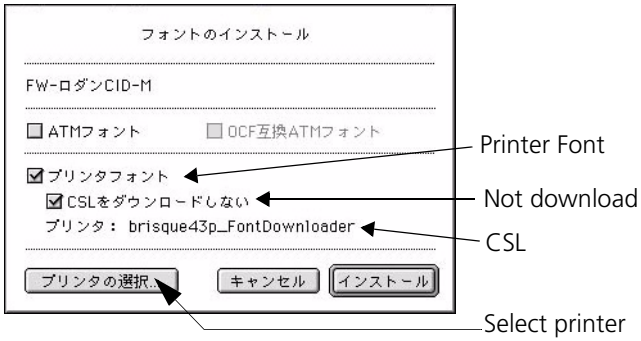
11. Insert the Security diskette into the floppy drive. The following message warns you that this package can be installed on one Brisque station only.



12. Click **OK** to confirm. The Select Font dialog box appears.



13. Select the font you want to install and click **Select**. The Font Installation dialog box appears.



14. Select the **Priter Font** and **Not Download CSL** boxes, then click **Select Printer**. The browser appears.



15. Select a network PostScript printer assigned to your Brisque, here **Brisque43p_FontDownloader** and click **Select**. The **Select Disk** window appears.



16. Select the disk that contains the destination font library (usually, **disk 1**).

Important: Do not select **disk 0** and **disk 2** as disk 0 is used for Latin fonts, and disk 2 is used for OCF fonts.

The disk number appears in the Font Installation dialog box.



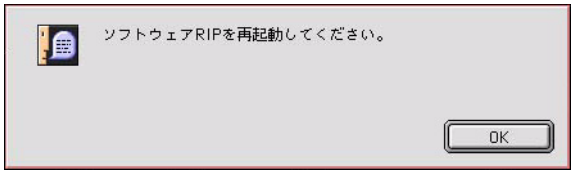
17. Select **Install.** The message box appears asking to confirm your selection.



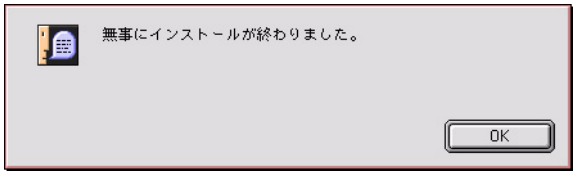
18. Click **OK** to continue.

The system starts to download the selected FontWorks CID font from the CD-ROM to your Brisque station.

System prompts you to reboot your Brisque station.



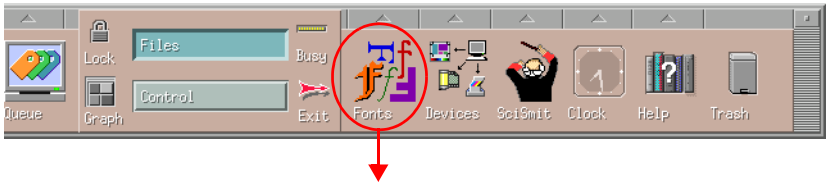
19. Click **OK**. The message appears to announce a successful installation.

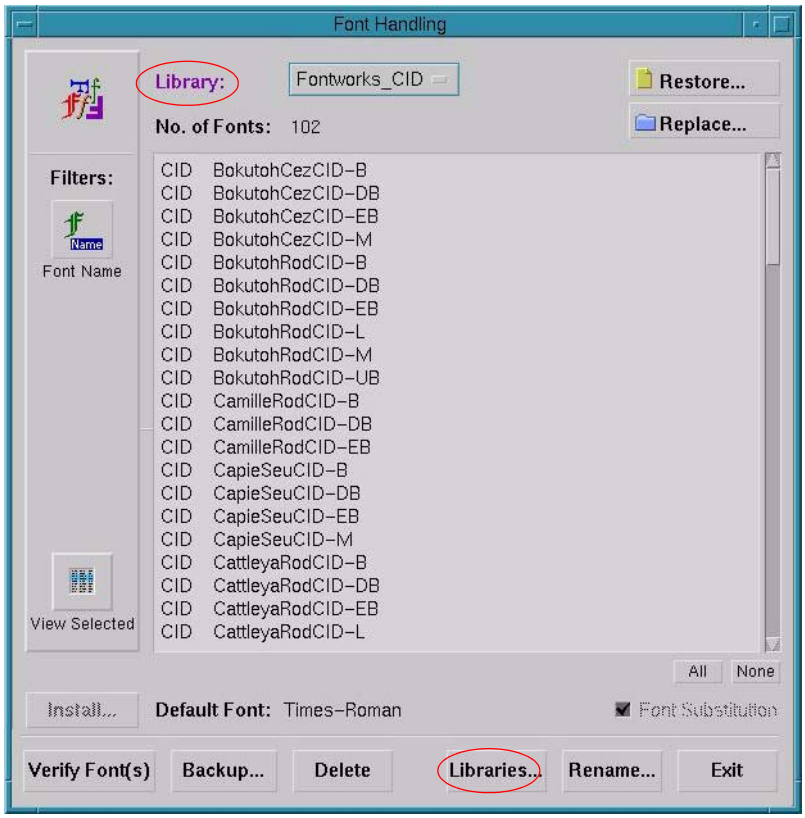


20. Click **OK** to complete the preliminary step of the FontWorks CID font installation.

Installing the FontWorks CID Kanji Fonts on Brisque

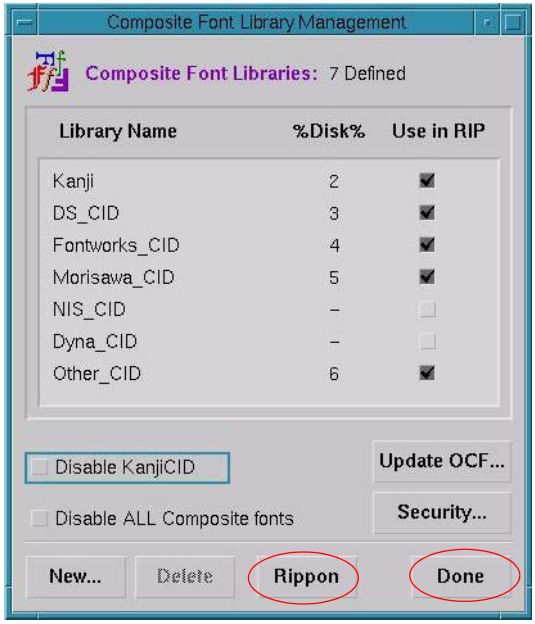
1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the **Rip Setup** panel and double-click the **Fonts** icon. The Font Handling main window appears.





2. In the **Library** box, select the destination library (for example, **FontWorks_CID**) to verify that the FontWorks CID font is included.

3. Click the **Libraries** button to open the Composite Font Library Management dialog box.



4. To complete the FontWorks CID font installation on your Brisque station, click **Rippon**; then click **Done** to return to the Font Handling window.

5. Click **Exit**.

   The FontWorks CID font is installed on your Brisque station.

25 Full Auto Frames (Trapping)

Introduction 238
Accessing FAF 241
The General Tab 243
The Advanced Tab 247
The CT Handling Tab 257
The Sep. Handling Tab 261
Appendix A. Frames for Colors That Include Spot Colors 263

Introduction

This chapter describes Creo Full Auto Frames (FAF), a trapping application. Framing (trapping) is used to prevent gaps between color areas that may be caused by misregistration during printing.

What is Framing

Misregistration occurs when two or more overprinted images are aligned improperly.

Reasons for misregistration include:

- Misalignment of the printing plates
- Shifting or stretching of the paper
- Inconsistent amounts of ink used
- Environmental variables.

Any movement of even a few thousandths of an inch can cause visible gaps or blurs between an object or letter and its color background.



Misregistration (printing process and shift)

Framing is used to compensate for minor amount of misregistration on the press. Without framing, misregistration during printing might produce an objectionable gap or an undesirable line of a different color, appearing on the border between the two colors.

Framing creates an overlap of color areas that “traps” certain colors of one image in the area of the adjoining color element. Trapping is used whenever two adjoining colors are considerably different.

Framing is commonly used where:

- Two tints border each other
- A Linework element (including text) and a tint meet.

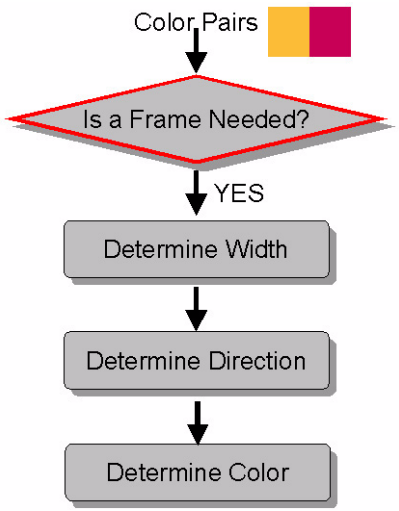


Without trapping With proper trapping

Full Auto Frames (FAF)

Electronic pre-press systems treat a color image not as four individual films but rather as one complete entity. The potential problem of misregistration is handled on the image-processing system by creating an additional image in the form of a "frame." This frame is either an expanded or reduced copy of one or more colors of the original image.

Framing Decision



FAF performs a series of checks on each candidate color pair in order to decide whether or not to create a frame and determine the frame width, the frame direction, and the color of the frame.

This is done by systematically going through a list of conditions for each pair. As soon as a pair matches the conditions for a framing rule, FAF creates a frame accordingly (also if a color pair meets more than one condition).

Framing is performed according to the first requirement met in a hierarchical list of criteria.

FAF checks if either color in the color pair:

- Requested a white frame in RIP
- Receives a coating
- Is a special color
- Is black
- Is a tint, semi-tint, or transparent area
- Is yellow.

If a frame is needed, separation values are used to determine frame direction and color. Frame width is determined independently.

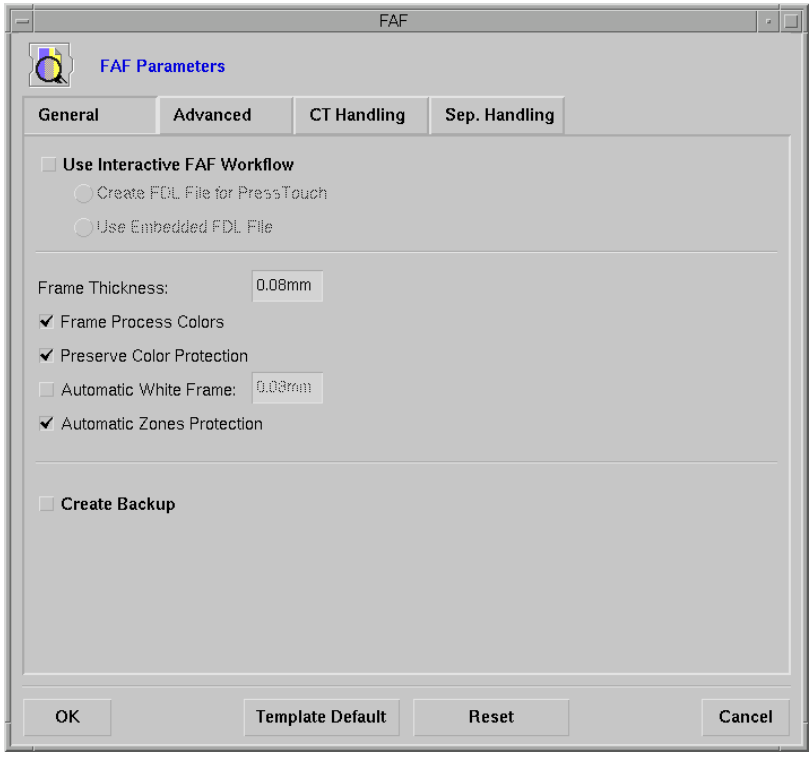
Frame width - is determined according to paper, ink and press conditions. It may also depend on separation values and element geometry. Frame width may be assigned before determining direction and color.

Frame direction - is defined with respect to the color border. The frame may extend in either direction (towards either color) or in both directions (towards both colors)

Frame color - is a combination of separation values from the two colors involved. It depends also on frame direction.

Accessing FAF

- To edit the FAF default operation parameters, from the Brisque Launch Pad, open the **Operations** panel, then double-click the **FAF** icon; the FAF dialog box displays.
- To edit the FAF parameters for a specific Job, from within the Job Ticket Editor, double-click the **FAF** icon; the FAF dialog box displays.
- To edit the FAF parameters for a specific Template, from within the Template Builder, double-click the **FAF** icon; the FAF dialog box displays.



The FAF main window contains the following four tabs:

- General
- Advanced
- CT Handling
- Sep. Handling.

- Click **Ok** to save the newly defined parameters.
- Click **Template Default** to revert to original Template parameters.



Note: When the file is processed by the RIP -> FAF Template and the FAF parameters are modified using the Creo FAF Plug-In for Acrobat application, using the **Template Default** option is the only way to revert to the original Template parameters.

- Click **Reset** to revert to the previously saved parameters.
- Click **Cancel** to exit the FAF window without saving the modifications.

The General Tab

Use the General tab to define the basic frame parameters:

- Use Interactive FAF Workflow
- Frame Thickness
- Frame Process Colors
- Preserve Color Protection
- Automatic White Frame
- Automatic Zones Protection
- Create Backup.

Use Interactive FAF Workflow

The interactive FAF workflow uses the PressTouch ver 1.1 (or higher) application. The Creo PressTouch is a newly developed Macintosh-based application that features extensive viewing and editing capabilities (including Page Framing) for Brisque Pages.

You can perform an interactive FAF workflow in two ways:

- **Create a FDL File for Press Touch**
- **Use an Embedded FDL file**

Create FDL File for Press Touch

1. From the Brisque, create an FDL (FAF Decision List) file; the FDL file is saved within the Page folder. Your Job is automatically put On Hold.
2. From the Macintosh, review and modify an FDL file using the PressTouch application.
3. From the Brisque, using the Queue Manager, release your Job from Hold and complete the FAF process based on the approved FDL file.

Use an Embedded FDL file

You can use an existing FDL file that was previously created and saved within the Page folder. The FDL file can be created on the Brisque or on the Macintosh using PressTouch.



For more information refer to *PressTouch User Guide, 399Z1M088A*.

Frame Thickness

Use this option to define the width of the frame. The default value is **0.08** mm (**0.0031** inches).

Width of frame depends on:

- Printing material such as: paper, cardboard, metallic sheet
- Tolerances of the printing press being used
- Type of image (element size and thickness).

Since frame width does not usually depend on separation values, it can be assigned once for the entire design.

With thicker print media, the potential for mis-registration is greater. To compensate, a wider frame is recommended.

Frame Process Colors

When selected, frames are created for all color pairs that require trapping. By default, this option is selected.

When cleared, frames are created only for pairs of:

- spot colors
- black plus any color
- base colors plus any color.

Preserve Color Protection

When selected, this option prevents trapping of the following.

- **Small text** - small text elements that are detected during the RIP will not have any frame placed around them during the FAF.
- **Black overprint elements** - if you want to trap black overprint elements but still preserve color protection of the other elements, select **Allow Trapping** in the **Black Overprint** section of the RIP Color Handling parameters.
- **Vignettes that are RIPped into CT.**
- **Copy Dot data.**
- **Frame Colors** - frame colors created during the FAF operation.

Automatic White Frame

The primary use of white frames is to emphasize text that is on top of a CT assigned to a window, thereby improving legibility. A white frame is a thin, white border that contains 0% printing value. You can specify the thickness of white frames independently from the value defined in the **Frame Thickness** box.

When this option is selected, text elements that are detected during the RIP will be given the White Frame treatment during the FAF. In order for this option to work properly, the **Text Recognition for White Frame** option must be defined in the RIP operation before the FAF operation. halo

To enable the automatic creation of White Frames option in the FAF window:

1. Select the **Automatic White Frame** box.
2. In the **Automatic White Frame** box, type the desired thickness for white frames.

➢ If the RIP and FAF are defined by the same template, selecting the **Automatic White Frame** option in the FAF/General dialog box automatically activates the **Text Recognition for White Frame** option in the RIP/Color Handling dialog box.

- If the RIP and FAF are not part of one automated workflow, before RIPping the PostScript file, from the RIP main window, click the **Color Handling** button, then from the Color Handling dialog box, select **Text Recognition for White Frame**.

Automatic Zones Protection

The **Automatic Zones Protection** option supports Creo FAF Plug-In for Acrobat and PressTouch ver 1.1 (or higher) features. When selected, areas defined in the input file as protected from FAF, are not included in the FAF process. By default, this option is selected.

Creo FAF Plug-In for Acrobat is a new Creo Trap Plug-In that lets you define the FAF parameters in the input file (PDF and PS files) and rectangular areas that will not be trapped during the FAF process on the Brisque.



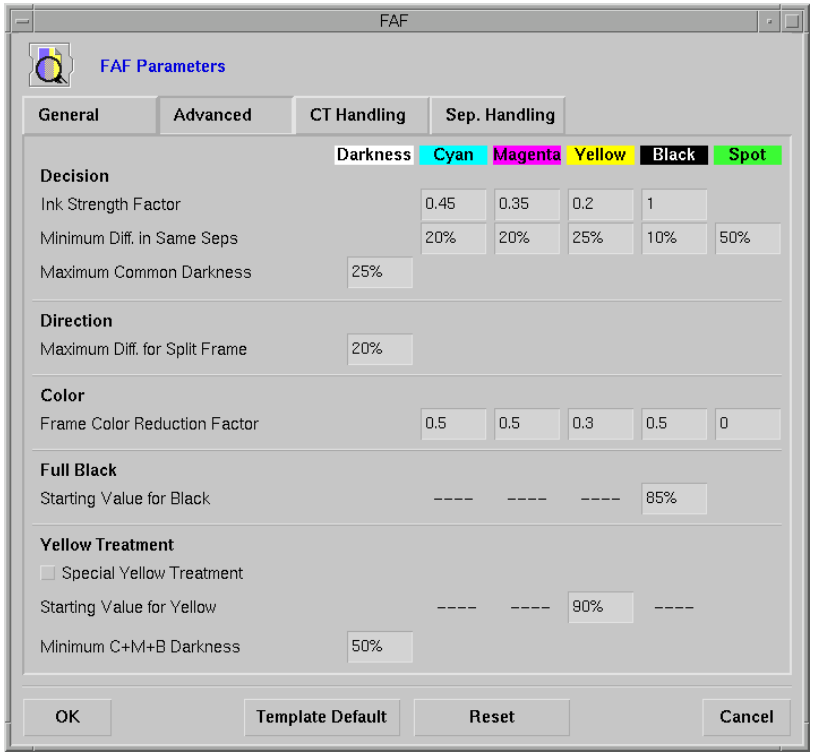
Note: If a PS/PDF file processed by the RIP -> FAF Template has no zones protected from FAF, the **Automatic Zones Protection** option is unavailable.

Create Backup

Select this option to save a backup copy of the LW file before FAF.

If you want to go back to the original Page before FAF, it is recommended to use the **Revert to Untrapped File** option from the Preview application window.

The Advanced Tab



The following advanced parameters are available for the FAF application:

- Decision
- Frame Direction
- Color
- Full Black
- Yellow Treatment.

Note: These parameters are advanced and should only be changed if you are familiar with them.

Decision

FAF creates a frame between two process colors when the following conditions are met:

- The percentage values of at least two different separations in the color pair differ significantly. Of the two separations that differ, one must have a higher percentage value in the lighter (reference) color, and the other must have a higher percentage value in the darker (boundary) color.
- The maximum common darkness of a color pair must be lower than the value defined by the **Maximum Common Darkness** box.

➢ Use the boxes in this section to define the minimum percentage differences between the matching separations of color pairs and to define the maximum common darkness value.

Ink Strength Factor

These values are used in the formula that calculates the darkness (density) of each CMYK separation. The black separation receives the maximum strength of 1.00. The other separations are measured relative to the black separation.

In FAF, the darkness (density) of each separation is defined as follows:

Darkness (per separation) = (%value of separation) x **(Ink strength factor)**

The total darkness (density) of a color area is the sum of the darknesses of the four separations and spot colors.

The default strength factors are: **C=0.45**, **M=0.35**, **Y=0.20**, **K=1.00**.

The default strength of C+M+Y equals 1.00. When you add the strength of the black separation to the CMY, it totals 2.00. This is why the value for opaque colors must be greater than **2.00**.

Because the density of color areas is a key factor in the FAF process, and the Ink Strength Factor is part of the formula that determines Density, if you change the Ink Strength Factor, the frame location, direction, and color may change as well.

➢ To change the **Ink Strength factor** for spot colors, access the RIP parameters in the current Job template and define the spot color **Opacity** values accordingly. The **Opacity** values, initially defined in the application used to generate the PostScript file, are equal to the **Ink Strength factor** in the FAF calculation.

To access the **Opacity** values in the RIP main window, from the **Spot Colors** box, select **Specific**, then click the **Spot Handling** button; the Spot Color Handling dialog box appears displaying the **Opacity** values for all separations.



For further instructions on defining the **Opacity** values in the RIP application, refer to *Chapter 18, RIP, Spot Handling on page 111*.

Minimum Diff. In Same Seps

The FAF function uses a patented formula that automatically creates a frame for color pairs that need trapping. This formula first performs a "separation check" to determine if the percentage values of two or more separations of the pair differ significantly. Each color of the pair must have at least one separation with a significantly higher percentage value than the corresponding separation of the other color. You define the "significant difference" in the **Minimum Diff. In Same Seps** boxes.

The default values for the minimum difference are:

- Cyan = **20%**
- Magenta = **20%**
- Yellow = **25%**
- Black = **10%**
- Spot = **50%.**



Note: A single value is given for a spot color. This value is relevant to all the Spot colors (if there is more than one spot color).

➢ To increase the number of frames, reduce the **Minimum Diff. In Same Seps** values.



Important: To avoid trapping your vignettes, do not define a value below 4%.

Maximum Common Darkness

A significant difference between two separations does not always result in a frame. Sometimes a frame is not needed despite the fact that two separations have a significant difference. When the two colors of the pair have enough "color" in common to ensure that in case of misregistration the gap would not be noticeable, a frame is not necessary.

Once FAF confirms that there is a significant difference between two separations of the pair, it goes on to check the maximum common darkness factor.

FAF compares the darkness of all the separations in the color pair. Then it multiplies the common values by the ink strength factor of that separation. If the resulting value is greater than the **Maximum Common Darkness** value, a frame is not created between the two colors. If the resulting density value is equal to or lower than the **Maximum Common Darkness** value, then a frame is created.

Example:

	C	M	Y	K
% value color 1:	100	0	70	0
% value color 2:	50	30	20	10
Common darkness: (lowest % value)	50	0	20	0

Equation: X = 50% x Ink strength factor of C (0.45) + 0% x Ink strength factor of M (0.35) + 20% x Ink strength factor of Y (0.20) + 0% x Ink strength factor of K (1.00)

If X is greater than the **Maximum Common Darkness** value, then a frame is not created between colors 1 and 2.

The **Maximum Common Darkness** value directly affects the number of frames created between color pairs.

- To increase the number of frames, increase the **Maximum Common Darkness** value.

The Brisque supports defining a **Maximum Common Darkness** value of up to 200%. The default **Maximum Common Darkness** value is **25%**. It is recommended using the default value.

Frame Direction

The FAF application determines the frame direction based on certain criteria, and depending upon whether a frame is being created between two LW areas, or between a LW and a CT area.

Between Two LW Areas

The frame direction is based on the following rules:

- Light tints usually spread into dark tints. That means that the lighter colors of an image should spread into the darker image or tint area.
- Type must be kept as sharp as possible. If the type is lighter than its background, the lighter colors of the type should be spread outwards towards the dark background. If the type is darker than the background, the lighter colors of the background should be spread under the type.

The value that you set in the **Maximum Diff. for Split Frame** box determines whether a frame that is created between process color pairs spreads in one direction only, or is split between the color pair.

When the difference in density between the two colors is less than the value that appears in the **Maximum Diff. for Split Frame** box, the frame is split, and the direction is towards both colors. How the frame is split, whether it is split evenly, or whether the frame spreads more towards one color in the pair, is automatically determined by the algorithm. Usually, the frame is split between the two colors according to the ratio between their density values.

When the difference in density is equal to or greater than the value that appears in the **Maximum Diff. for Split Frame** box, the frame is not split, and spreads entirely in the direction of the darker color.

The default **Maximum Diff. for Split Frame** value is **20%**.

Color

The FAF formula automatically defines the frame color, using many different criteria. The rule-of-thumb for color pairs is that the frame color is made up of the darker separations from both color pairs.

The color of a frame inserted between process color pairs is always darker than both colors of the pair from which it is created. If the two color areas are light tints, a dark frame may be conspicuous. In this case, the algorithm automatically lightens the frame color, according to the user defined **Frame Color Reduction Factor.**



Note: It is not recommended changing the default **Frame Color Reduction Factor** values.

Frame Color Reduction Factor

The **Frame Color Reduction Factor** boxes specify the factor by which each separation is lightened. The value can range from 0 to 1, where 0 = no reduction.

The reduction applies only to the separations of the lighter color that should overlap the darker color.

The default value is **0.5**, **0.5**, **0.3**, **0.5**, **0**.

After reduction, the frame color still remains darker than both tints from which it was created.

The Frame Color Reduction Factor for spot colors is supported. The Frame Color Reduction Factor does not apply to spot colors that are opaque (a spot color whose ink strength is 2.00 or higher is considered opaque.). By default, the color reduction factor for spots is **0.0** (that is, no color reduction).

Full Black

A color is considered to be a black area if its black separation has a percent value greater than the minimum, defined in the **Starting Value for Black** box (**85%** is the default).

Rules for black area treatment:

- Frame direction is toward the black area (which is the darker area).
- Frame color is the CMY of the bordering area and the K of the black area.

The Brisque supports defining a **Starting Value for Black** of 101%. Defining a value of 101% effectively prevents any area from receiving Full Black treatment.

Yellow Treatment

When a color area contains a high percentage of yellow, and there is a high percentage of cyan, magenta or black complementing the yellow in a color, a shift in any of the separations can cause an unsightly yellow line. For example, if there is a dark red or green graphic element on a white background and the yellow separation shifts, it makes a bright halo on the edge of the graphic.

When the **Special Yellow Treatment** option is activated, and a color area has not yet been framed as a result of the previously described conditions, FAF checks the yellow value of all color areas. It compares their yellow percentage values to the minimum (defined in the **Starting Value for Yellow** box). The default value is **90%**.

If the percentage of yellow is more that the minimum specified in the FAF dialog box, then the color area is a candidate for Special Yellow treatment.

Next, FAF calculates the cumulative darkness of the Cyan, Magenta, and Black separations and compares that value to the value contained in the **Minimum C+M+B Darkness** box (**50%** in the default). If the cumulative darkness of the other three separations is equal to/or greater than the minimum, the color area is framed according to the Special Yellow treatment.

Use the options in this section to control the parameters used to identify color areas requiring Special Yellow treatment.

Framing according to the Special Yellow Treatment means that the frame color is derived from the Cyan, Magenta, and Black separations of the color area containing the high percentage of Yellow. The Yellow separation value is reduced relative to the bordering area and the frame direction is towards the area containing the higher percentage of Yellow.

Special Yellow Treatment

➢ To allow special treatment for yellow, according to the parameters defined in the other boxes in the **Yellow Treatment** section of the FAF/ Advanced dialog box, click the **Special Yellow Treatment** box.

Minimum C+M+B Darkness

Increase the minimum values to reduce the number of color areas that are framed. Decrease them to include more instances of color areas containing yellow.

The application calculates the Cyan, Magenta and Black values of color areas, by multiplying the color percentages of the Cyan, Magenta, and Black separations by their ink strength factors, then adding them together:

	Cyan% x **Cyan Ink strength factor**
+	**Magenta%** x **Magenta Ink strength factor**
+	**Black%** x **Black Ink strength factor**
=	**Total**

If the total is greater than the value entered in the **Minimum C+M+B Darkness** box (default = 50%) and more than the **Starting Value for Yellow** (default = 90%), then that color area receives the Special Yellow treatment.

Frames for Colors That Include Spot Colors

Spot colors are colors that cannot be achieved by mixing the four process inks. For example, metallic colors require special inks. The darkness of the spot colors determines their printing order; the darker the color, the later the printing.

There are three types of non-process colors:

Color Type	Exaple
• Spot color	 C 0%, M 0%, Y 0%, K 0%, S1 100% S1 = spot color – PANTONE Yellow 012 CV
• Overprint spot color (spot color overprints process colors)	 C 100%, M 0%, Y 0%, K 0%, S1 100% S1 = spot color – PANTONE Yellow 012 CV
• Multi-spot color (Includes more than one spot color)	 C 0%, M 0%, Y 0%, K 0%, S1 100%, S2 100% S1 = spot color – PANTONE Yellow 012 CV S2 = spot color – PANTONE Orange 021 CVC

Note: Multi-spot colors may contain process colors as well.

The FAF Decision algorithm for calculating frames for colors that include spot colors is described in *Appendix A. Frames for Colors That Include Spot Colors* on page 263.

Base Coat Definition

A base coat is a layer of ink (usually white) applied to the printing surface in order to provide an opaque background for the inks. In packaging, it is used when printing on a clear substate such as a celophane bag.

Base Color Combinations

The framing rules for areas that receive a base coat depend on the color pair combination:

- **Base Coat with Printing Color + Base Coat with Printing Color**

  Frame direction: Is the same as for process color pairs.

  Frame color: Is the same as for process color pairs.

- **Base Coat with Printing Color + Uncoated Area**

  Frame direction: Toward the base coat.

  Frame color: Printing color without the base coat.

- **Base Coat without Printing Color + Any Area**

  No frame is created.

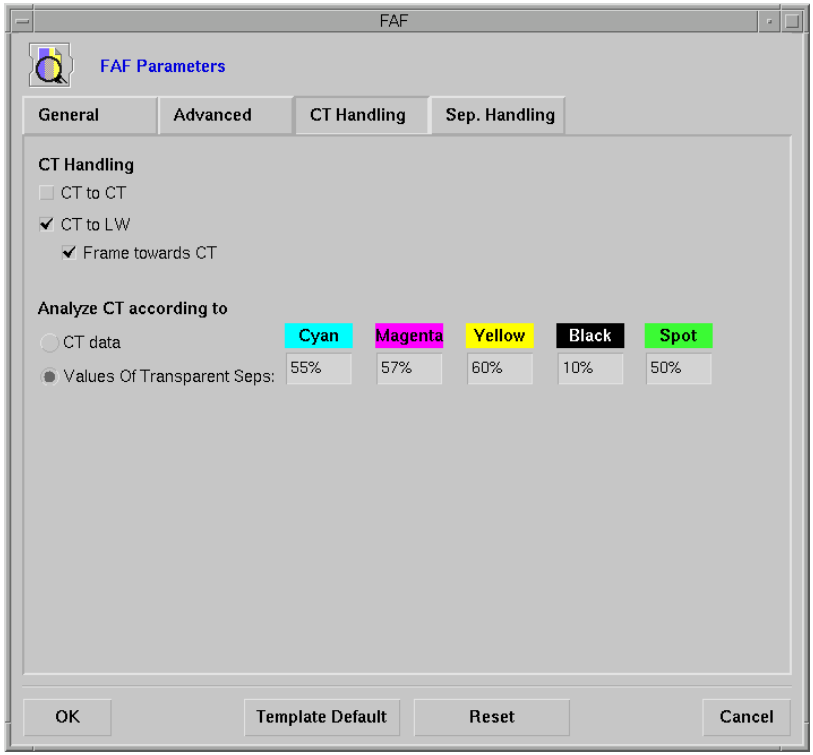
Varnish Definition

Varnish is a clear (uncolored) coating applied on top of a printing surface in order to add durability, gloss, or dulling effects.

Varnish Condition

The varnish area receives the original dimensions of the color area that it is coating, regardless of any frames that are added by the FAF Decision algorithm.

The CT Handling Tab



The automatic CT handling parameters are available for frames are:

- CT to CT
- CT to LW
  - Frame towards CT.

You can analyze the CT according to:

- CT Data
- Values of Transparent Seps.

CT to LW

When you select this option, frames are automatically created between CT and LW areas.

Frame towards CT

When you select this option, frames between CT and LW areas spread towards the CT, and not according to the automatic Decision algorithm, which usually generates frames that spread towards the darker color.

When a CT is cut to the exact size of the window, there are no CT pixels to spread, and frames, if needed, must be placed inside the window.



Note: If CT to LW is checked and Frame Towards CT is also checked then no frame will be created between full black and transparent colors. The user must clear the **Frame Towards CT** to prevent a black color from overlapping the CT data.

When this option is cleared, the frame is created towards the darker color, according to the color pair values.

CT to CT and CT Data

The **CT to CT** and **CT Data** options allow enhanced handling of bordering or overlapping CTs.

Three types of bordering or overlapping CTs exist:

- **Two CMYK CTs** - the two CT windows have the same Color Index after the RIP. See Case 1 on the following page for explanation.
- **One CMYK CT and one Spot CT** - the two CT windows have a different Color Index after RIP. See Case 2 and 3 on the following page for explanation.
- **Two Spot CTs** - FAF handles this case the same way as it does for "one CMYK CT and one Spot CT". See Case 2 and 3 on the following page for explanation.



Note: With all three types, the CT to LW option may be turned on or off without interfering with the frames between the CTs.

Case 1 - Trapping between two CMYK CTs

This case is only valid when operating FAF from a template containing both RIP and FAF.

- To trap between two CMYK CTs, you must create a border area between the two CTs. This is done by running the RIP in **CT Quality** mode.
- To force the RIP to run in **CT Quality** mode, select the **CT to CT** box.



Note: When FAF forces the RIP to run in **CT Quality** mode, the **CT on CT Border** parameter (in the Rip/CT Handling dialog box) is automatically set to **LW Res** and cannot be changed.

Selecting the **CT to CT** box also automatically selects the **CT Data** box. You may manually clear the **CT Data** box, but then no trapping will be performed in addition to the CT Quality's frame. FAF will trap between the actual CTs color values only if a frame is necessary (according to the FAF decisions).

Cases 2 and 3 - Trapping between a CMYK CT and a Spot CT, or two Spot CTs

When trapping between a CMYK CT and a Spot CT, or two Spot CTs you have two options:

- FAFing with the **CT Data** option activated.

  This is the same as trapping between two CMYK CTs (see Case 1 above) where the CT values are taken from the CT file itself, and not from the **Values of Transparent Seps** parameters. Using this option will result in a longer trapping.

- FAFing with the **CT Data** option cleared.

  In this case, the FAF calculates the frame according to the **Values of Transparent Seps**.

These two options can be defined in the FAF window independently from the RIP parameters, and do not require the RIP to run in **CT Quality** mode. In other words, FAFing between a CMYK CT and a Spot CT, or two Spot CTs does not require the use of a single template containing both RIP and FAF. This is because the two CT windows are given different **Color Indexes**, which is the function of the **CT Quality** mode.



Important: If you wish to FAF a file RIPped in the CT Quality mode (that is, CT on CT Border option selected - accessed from the CT Handling sub-dialog in the RIP application) the RIP and FAF operations must be bundled into the same Brisque Template, since the FAF automatically forces the file to RIP with specific parameters.

Values of Transparent Seps

Frames around a transparent separation are governed by the same rules as those for process colors, except that the common darkness limit is ignored (a frame is created even if the common darkness is high), split frame is ignored (frame direction is always towards the darker color), and all transparent separations are considered to have the same constant dot% values as defined in the **Values for Transparent Seps** boxes.

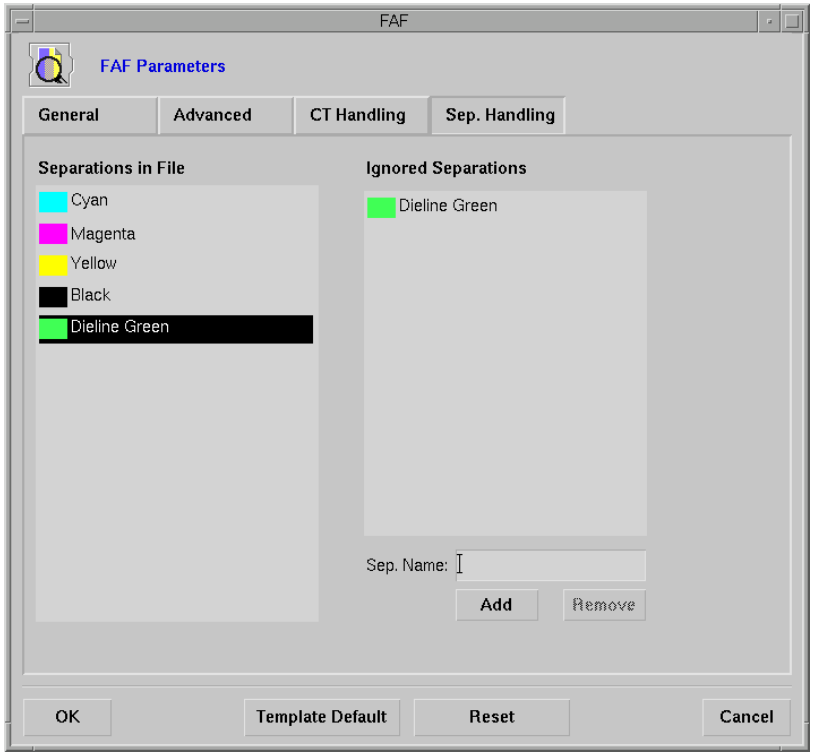
CMYK and Spot values are given to transparent areas in order to determine their darkness. When trapping windows containing CTs, FAF uses one set of average separation values taken from these boxes, and compares it with the neighboring colors in order to determine whether frames should be created, and if so, in what colors. Note that one value is given for the spot color. This value is relevant to all the Spot colors (if there is more than one spot color).

These values are not printed, but are used in the frame decision-making process. They are compared to the CMYK and spot color values of bordering color areas.

The default values (C=55%, M=57%, Y=60%, K=10%, Spot=50%) combine to make a gray tone, which is suitable for the average CT picture.

The Transparent values affect all the windows in the same way, regardless of the darkness of the CT that each contains. Modify the **Values of Transparent Seps** boxes when all of the CTs in the Page are significantly darker or lighter than average.

The Sep. Handling Tab



The **Sep.Handling** tab of the FAF parameters contains the **Ignored Separations** section that lets you define which separation(s) are not included in calculating FAF decisions. This feature is especially useful in a Packaging workflow, as it allows you to select the die line separation so that it is not trapped.

- To add a separation to the **Ignored Separations** list, select it from the **Separation in File** list; it displays in the **Sep. Name** box. Click **Add**.

  You can also type the separation name in the **Sep. Name** box and then click **Add**.

- To remove a separation from the **Ignored Separations** list, click **Remove**.

Note: You can define a separation to be ignored during the FAF operation when creating a Template (the **Separation in File** list is empty). You simply type the separation name in the in the **Sep. Name** box and then click **Add**.

FAF recognizes version data and adds the version separations to the list of separations that are ignored by the FAF.



For more information, refer to *Chapter 31, Versioning on the Brisque*.

Appendix A. Frames for Colors That Include Spot Colors

This Appendix describes the FAF Decision algorithm for calculating frames for colors that include spot colors (that is, non-process colors).

Frames for these colors depend on the combination of the color types in the pair.

The following combinations are described:

- Spot color and spot color
- Overprint spot color and overprint spot color/spot color
- Multi-spot color and non-process color
- Multi-spot color/spot color and process color
- Full black color and non-process color (see *Full Black* on page 252)
- Overprint spot color and process color.

Equations and Definitions

- **Darkness** = %C * ISF_C + %M * ISF_M + %Y * ISF_Y + %K * ISF_K + %S1* ISF_{S1} + %S2 * ISF_{S2} + %S3 * ISF_{S3}...,

  where:

  % - percentage values,
  S1, S2, S3... - spots,

  ISF - Ink Strength Factor.
- **Spot -** Spot color (that is, C0%, M0%, Y0%, K0%, S1 100%).
- **Seps** - Separations (CMYK).
- **LC** - Lighter color. Color whose darkness is lower than the darkness of the other color in the pair.
- **DC** - Darker color. Color whose darkness is higher than the darkness of the other color in the pair.
- **Dspot -** Darkest spot color. Spot color with the highest darkness that is calculated separately for LC and DC.

- **Frame color** = $Frame_{process}$ + $Frame_{spot\ colors}$

  $Frame_{process}$ = %values of CMYK.

  $Frame_{spot\ colors}$ = %values of Spots.

- **Opaque** - a spot color whose ink strength is 2.00 or higher is considered opaque.



Note: If one of the spots in the multi-spot color is opaque, the color is considered opaque.

- **Parallel Seps** (including Spots):

	C	M	Y	K	S1	S2
Color 1	0	40	50	0	100	0
Color 2	0	20	50	0	0	100

The term **Parallel Seps** is used in the following formulas to mean that you are comparing Color 1 separation from like separations of Color 2 (that is, cyan value from Color 1 is compared to cyan value from Color2, magenta value from Color 1 is compared to magenta value from Color2 , etc.).

- **Parallel Spots** (not including process):

	C	M	Y	K	S1	S2
Color 1	0	40	50	0	100	0
Color 2	0	20	50	0	0	100

Spot Color and Spot Color

- **Frame condition:** If Spot Color 1 and Spot Color 2 are different **Spots**, a frame is created.
- **Frame color:** Composed of **Spot** value from Spot Color 1 and **Spot** value from Spot Color 2.

  If none of the colors are Opaque and, for **Parallel Spots**, (**%Spot** in **LC** - **%Spot** in **DC**) > 50%, then reduction is performed according to the following equation:

  Reduction = (1- **Frame Color Reduction Factor**) * **%Spot** in **LC**.

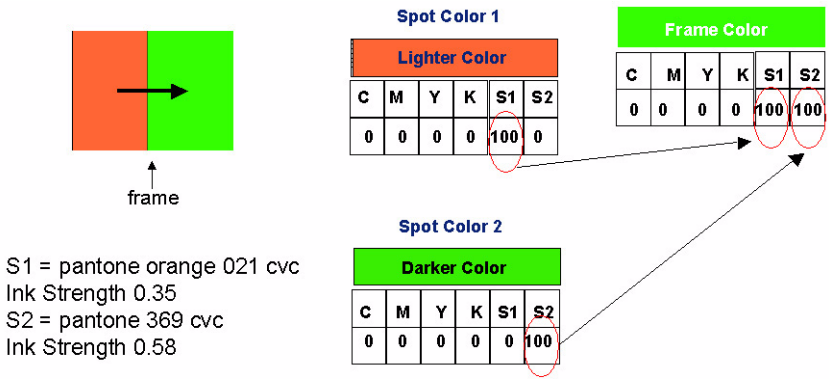
  (In this example, Spot's **Frame Color Reduction Factor** = 0, then Reduction = (1 - 0) * 100 = 100).

- **Frame direction:**

  If absolute value of [Spot Color 1**Darkness** - Spot Color 2 **Darkness**] < **Maximum Diff. for Split Frame**, the frame is split.

  Else, towards the **DC**.

  For example:



Overprint Spot Color and Overprint Spot Color / Spot Color

- **Frame condition:** If the difference between the **Parallel Seps** < value defined in the **Minimum Diff. In Same Seps** box, then no frame is needed.
- **Frame color:**

  $Frame_{process}$ = All **Seps** from the **DC**.

  $Frame_{spot\ colors}$ = Composed of **Spot** value from Spot Color 1 and **Spot** value from Spot Color 2.

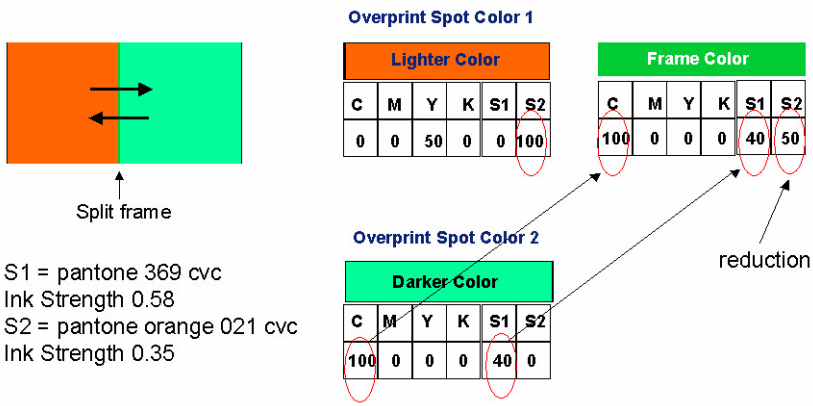
  If none of the colors are **Opaque** and, for **Parallel Spots**, (**%Spot** in **LC** - **%Spot** in **DC**) > 50%, then reduction is performed according to the following equation:

  Reduction = (**%Spot** in **LC** - **%Spot** in **DC**) * (1 - Spot's **Frame Color Reduction Factor**) + **%Spot** in **DC**.

  (In this example, Spot's **Frame Color Reduction Factor** = 0.5, then Reduction = (100 - 0) * (1 - 0.5) + 0 = 50).
- **Frame direction:** Frame to darker color.

  If absolute value of [**Darkness** of **Dspot** in **LC** - **Darkness** of **Dspot** in **DC**] < **Maximum Diff. for Split Frame**, the frame is split.

  For example:



Multi-spot Color and Non-process Color

- **Frame Condition:** If the difference between the **Parallel Seps** < value defined in the **Minimum Diff. In Same Seps** box, then no frame is needed.
- **Frame Color:**

  $Frame_{spot\ colors}$ = **Dspot** from **DC** and all the other from **LC**.

  $Frame_{process}$ = All **Seps** from**DC**.

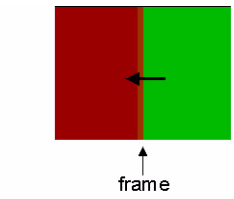
  If none of the colors are **Opaque** and, for **Parallel Spots**, (**%Spo**t in **LC** - **%Spot** in **DC**) > 50%, then reduction is performed according to the following equation:

  Reduction = (**%Spot** in **LC** - **%Spot** in **DC**) * (1 - Spot's **Frame Color Reduction Factor**) + **%Spot** in **DC**.

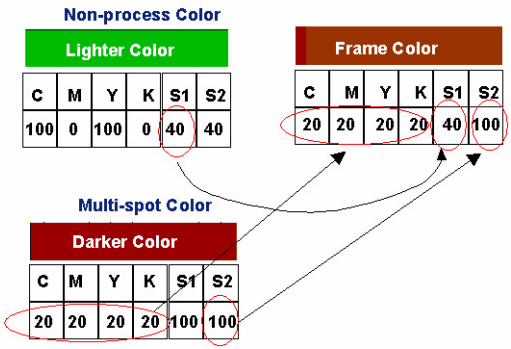
- **Frame Direction:** Frame to **DC**.

  If absolute value of [**Darkness** of **Dspot** in **LC** - **Darkness** of **Dspot** in **DC**] < **Maximum Diff. for Split Frame**, the frame is split.

  For example:



S1 = pantone orange 021 cvc
Ink Strength 0.35
S2 = pantone yellow 021 cvc
Ink Strength 2.5, Opaque



Multi-spot Color/Spot Color and Process Color

- **Frame condition:** a frame is always needed.
- **Frame color:**

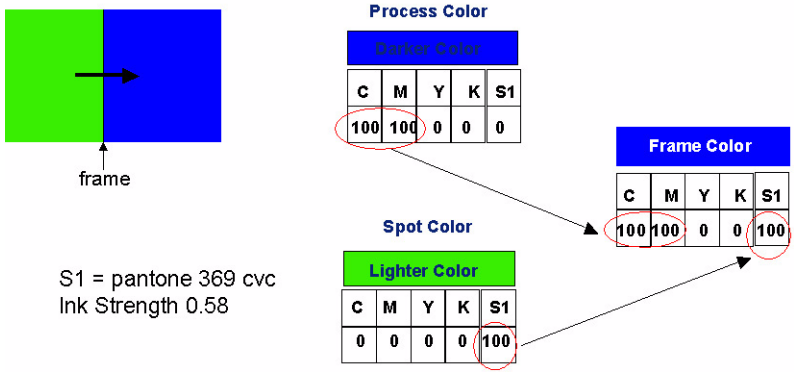
  $Frame_{process}$ = All from the Process Color.

  $Frame_{spot\ colors}$ = **Dspot** from the Spot Color.
- **Frame direction:**

  If absolute value of [**Darkness** of **Dspot** in the Spot Color - **Darkness** of the Process Color] < **Maximum Diff. for Split Frame**, the frame is split.

  Else, towards the **DC**.

  For example:



Full Black Color + Non-process Color

- If the Non-process color is **Opaque** and the **Darkness** of all **Spots** in the Non-process > **%K * ISF$_K$** of the Full Black Color, then:
  - **Frame color:**

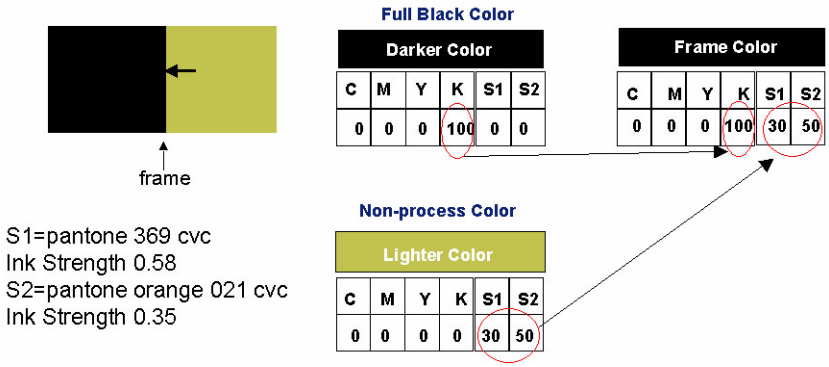
    $Frame_{process}$ = K from the Full Black Color.

    $Frame_{spot\ colors}$ = All **Spots**.
  - **Frame direction:** Towards the Non-process Color.
- If the Non-process Color is not **Opaque** and the **Darkness** of all **Spots** in the Non-process < Black **Darkness**, then:
  - **Frame color:**

    $Frame_{spot\ colors}$ = All **Spots**.

    $Frame_{process}$ = C, M, and Y from the Non-process Color and K from the Black Color.
  - **Frame direction:** Towards the Full Black Color.

  For example:



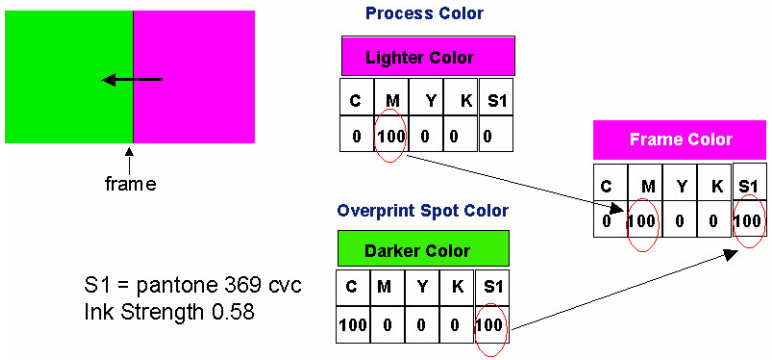
Overprint Spot Color and Process Color

- **Frame condition:** FAF verifies if a frame required between the two process colors as described in *The Advanced Tab* on page 247.
- **Frame color:**

  $Frame_{process}$ = % values of CMYK from the Process Color.

  $Frame_{spot\ colors}$ = % values of **Spots** from the Overprint Spot Color.
- **Frame direction:** Towards the **DC**.

  For example:



26 Translate

Launching the Translate Application 273
Selecting the Input File Type 275
Defining the Translation Parameters 276
TIFF/IT File Format Support 281
Translate Workflows.....284
Translate Workflows at a Glance 298
Raster File Descriptions, Notes and Limitations 300
Supported Translations.....303
Exiting the Translate Application.....305

The Translate application on the Brisque is used to translate unsupported files coming from the PS/2, the Whisper and the Macintosh into Brisque-supported High Resolution file formats. It is also used to create the low resolution (PSImage) files necessary for the APR (Automatic Picture Replacement) workflow (see *Chapter 20, Creo APR/OPI Workflow*).

In order to preview, process and output an Imposition Job on the Brisque, you must Translate the ICF (Imposition Control File), created in Preps, into a Brisque-supported file format, called a Brisque Job. Once you translate the ICF into the Brisque Job format, you can process it with the Brisque Preview, Proof, Export PS, Send, Expose, Plate Expose, InkPRO, Kodak, Kodak Approval XP4, and Super Combine applications.

You can use the Translate application to convert Brisque Jobs back into the FLYT format supported by the Whisper and PS/2 stations. This allows smooth bidirectional movement from the Brisque to the Whisper or PS/2, and back.

You can also use the Translate application to translate various file formats into the TIFF/IT-P1 format, and vice versa. The TIFF/IT (Tag Image File Format for Image Technology) file format was created to smooth pre-press workflow by making it simpler to exchange and transfer images electronically between publishing companies, printers, advertising agencies, color separators, pre-press bureaus, designers, and photographers.



Note: The TIFF/IT-P1 support is a purchasable Brisque option that requires licensing and access password.

Your Brisque enables the impositioning of files (Brisque Job files, PostScript files, Whisper, PS/2) from various platforms, in one session. The Translate application on the Brisque plays an important role in implementing the Creo Imposition workflow.



Tip: Use the Preview application on the Brisque to preview the various translated files from the Brisque platform.
(For detailed information, see *Chapter 16, Preview*).

Launching the Translate Application

To define the Translate default operation parameter:

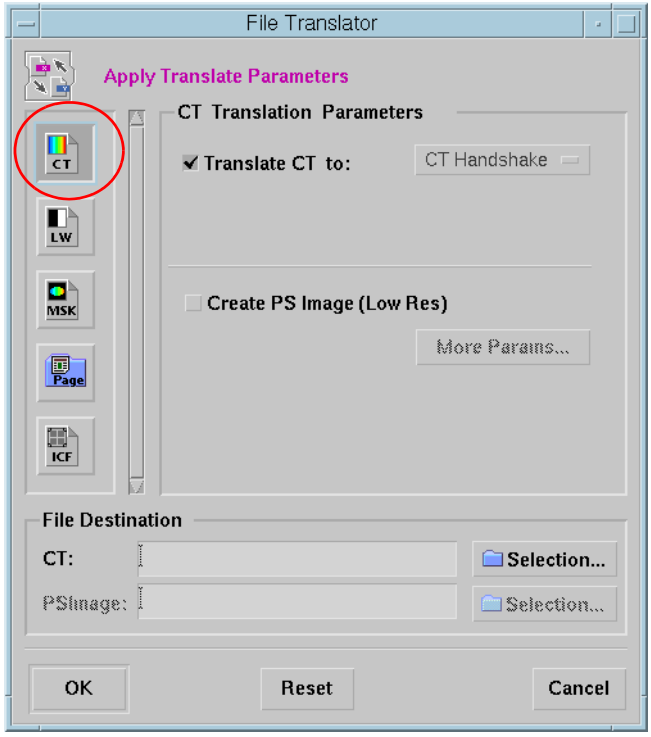
➢ From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the Operations panel, then double-click the **Translate** icon; the File Translator window displays.

To edit the Translate parameters for a specific Job:

➢ From within the Job Ticket Editor, double-click the **Translate** icon; the File Translator window displays.

To edit the Translate parameters for a specific Template:

➢ From within the Template Builder, double-click the **Translate** icon; the File Translator window displays.



Note: The Translate application automatically identifies the input file type. When you drag a file over the **Translate** icon, the File Translator window displays the appropriate parameters.

Item	Description
Source file type section	On the left side of the window, five icons are displayed. They represent categories of the input file types that can be translated by the application.
Translation parameters section	On the right side of the window you can define the translation parameters for the selected file category, including the output file type. The parameters vary, depending on the selected file category.
File destination section	Defines the destination for files created as a result of the Translate operation. The defined destination applies to all categories, regardless of the category that's selected at the time you define the destination. Low resolution files are stored separately from high resolution files.

Selecting the Input File Type

The five categories of file types that can be processed by the Translation application are CT, LW, MASK, Page, and ICF (Preps).

To select a file type category:

➢ click an icon from the left side of the window; the appropriate Translate parameter options appear on the right side of the window.

Input File Category	Input Format	Output Formats Available for Translation
CT 	CT Handshake, CT Native, CT New, TIFF/IT-CT/P1, DCS1, DCS2.	CT Handshake, CT Native, CT New, TIFF CT (same as TIFF/IT-CT/P1), EPSF, DCS, Brisque Job.
LW 	LW Handshake, LW Native, LW New, TIFF/IT-LW/P1.	LW Handshake, LW Native, and LW New, TIFF-IT LW, Brisque Job.
MASK 	Mask Handshake, Mask Native.	CT Handshake, CT Native, CT New, TIFF CT (same as TIFF/IT-CT/P1), EPSF, DCS.
Page 	TIFF/IT FP, Handshake Page, FLYT, CT + LW, Scanned LW, Scanned NLW.	Brisque Job.
	Brisque Job.	FLYT, TIFF/IT-FP.
ICF 	*Preps* ICF.	Brisque Jobs.

(For detailed information, specific limitations and requirements for each translation combination, see *Raster File Descriptions, Notes and Limitations on page 300*).

Defining the Translation Parameters

When you select a file type category icon on the left side of the main Translate window, the relevant Translation parameter options appear on the right side of the window.



Note: If your Translation Parameters include both the Translate High Res to and the Create PSImage options, then the resulting PSImage file points to the High Resolution file created by the Translate operation. If your translation parameters include the Create PSImage option only, then the resulting PSImage file points to the original High Resolution file.

Translating Files

To translate a file to and from a Creo supported file format:

1. Select an icon from the left side of the window to define the input file type; the **Translate <file type> to** list box is labeled with the default output format.

1. Select the **Translate <file type> to** check box; the list box activates.

2. From the **Translate <file type> to** list box, select the required file format.
(Refer to *Raster File Descriptions, Notes and Limitations on page 300*, for detailed information and specific limitations of each translation combination).

3. To generate a low resolution image file (PSImage), select the **Create PS Image (Low Res)** check box.
(Refer to *Defining the Low Resolution (PSImage) Parameters* on page 278).

4. Define the destination of the new output files generated by the Translate operation.
(Refer to *Defining the Output File Destination* on page 280).



Note: If the source and destination folders are in the same volume when translating a Page, the CTs and LWs are not copied to the destination folder. Rather, the data is saved only once on the disk, and is referenced from both the source and the destination folders.

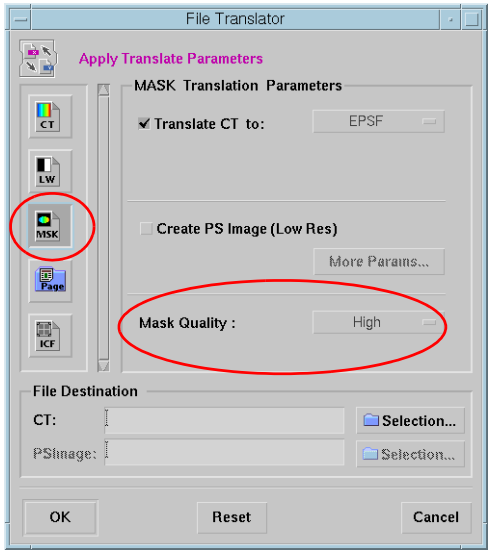
5. Define Mask quality (see *Defining the Mask Quality* on page 277).
6. Click **OK**; the Translate operation begins; a progress Translate icon appears on the Brisque desktop.



Tip: Click the icon to view the progress of the Translate process.

Defining the Mask Quality

If you select the **Mask** input file type icon, the Mask Quality option is activated in the File Translate window. Use this option to determine the level of Mask smoothing.



To define the Mask Smoothing Quality:

➢ From the **Mask Quality** list box, select an option.
Available options are: Very High, High (system default), Medium, Low, and Very Low.

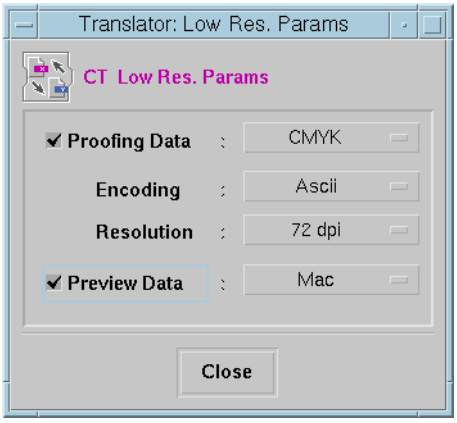
Defining the Low Resolution (PSImage) Parameters

PSImages (Creo Low Res. images) can be created for all CT, LW, and Mask types for use in APR (Automatic Picture Replacement) workflows.

Note: You cannot generate low resolution files from Pages or from ICFs.
If input file contains of spot colors (for example DCS2 file), it can't be translated to PSI (Create PSImage option is inactive).

To generate a PSImage from a High Resolution file:

1. Select the **Create PSImage** check box; the **More Params** button activates.
2. Click **More Params**; the Low Res. Params window displays.



Item	Description
Proofing Data	Lets you specify the proofing data format. Available options are: CMYK, Index, B&W.
Encoding	Lets you select a format for encoding the proofing data of the low resolution image. The available options are: Ascii (system default), Binary (smaller file - EPSF).

Item	Description
Resolution	Lets you define the proof resolution. The available resolution options are: 36 dpi, 72 dpi (default), 144 dpi, 288 dpi. Resolution can not be higher than the input file resolution. When you select a higher resolution value than the input file resolution, the actual resolution of the PSImage will be that of the input file.
Preview Data	Lets you define the preview format of the output file. Options are: Mac, DOS.

To define the Proofing Data Parameters:

1. In the Low Res. Params window, select the **Proofing Data** check box; the **Proofing Data**, **Encoding** and **Resolution** list boxes activate.



Note: This option is used to send low resolution images to the proofer.

2. From the **Proofing Data** list box, select **CMYK** (default), **Index** or **B & W** (black and white).
3. From the **Encoding** list box, select **Ascii** (default), for a more portable format, or **Binary**, for a smaller file (EPSF).
4. From the **Resolution** list box, select **36**, **72** (default), **144** or **288** dpi.

To define the Preview Data format:

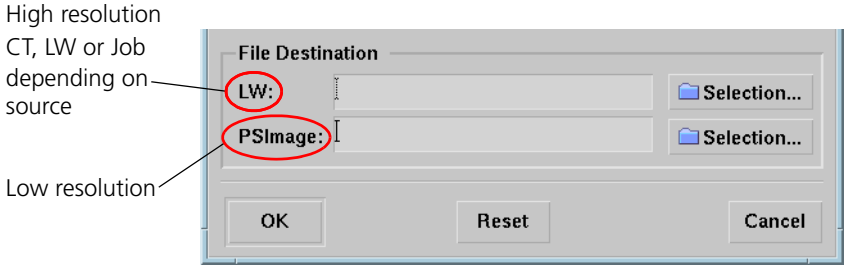
1. If you are going to use the image in a Page building application, select the **Preview Data** check box; the **Preview Data** list box activates.
2. From the **Preview Data** list box, select **Mac** or **DOS**.

To exit the Low Res. Params window:

- Click **Close** to save changes and exit.
  Or, double-click the **Window Control** box to exit the Low Res Params window without saving changes.

Defining the Output File Destination

The File Destination boxes define the locations of the new files generated by the Translate operation. The paths for the resulting High Resolution and Low Resolution images are defined separately. If no destination path is defined, the resulting files are put into the source file directory.



To define the destination folders:

- Click **Selection**, next to one the boxes in the File Destination section to open a browser, then select a folder from the browser. Alternatively, without using the browser, manually type the complete path to the desired destination folder in the **High Resolution** (CT, LW, Mask, Page, ICF) and **Low Resolution** (PS Image) boxes.

Note: The **PSImage** box and its **Selection** button are only active if the **Create PS Image (Low Res)** check box is selected.

Important: If you manually type in the path of the destination folder located on a remote volume, make sure the volume is mounted on the Brisque. (See *Chapter 13, Mount Pro* for details on mounted remote stations and volumes).

TIFF/IT File Format Support

On the Brisque, you can use the Translate application to create TIFF/IT files directly from Brisque Jobs and indirectly from PostScript, PDF and other file formats. The Brisque creates TIFF/IT files in the TIFF/IT-P1 (Profile 1) format. TIFF/IT-P1 is a subset of TIFF/IT, which provides a minimized set of options that allows simpler implementation when the full set of TIFF/IT options are not required.



Note: You can't create TIFF/IT from PS or PDF directly using Translator. Such a file should be RIPed before translation.

The Translate application also translates the TIFF/IT Pages back into the Brisque Job format for direct output or for inclusion with other Page sources.



Note: TIFF/IT support is a purchasable Brisque option requiring licensing and access password.

TIFF/IT File Formats

The TIFF/IT file formats supported by the Brisque include CT, LW, HC and FP (the latter must include at least one of the CT, LW, and HC formats).

Source files are translated into TIFF/IT format as follows:

- CT files are translated into TIFF/IT-CT/P1
- LW files are translated into TIFF/IT-LW/P1 or TIFF/IT-HC/P1



Note: LW files with 256 colors or less are translated into TIFF/IT-LW/P1, while LW files with more than 256 colors are translated into TIFF/IT-HC/P1.

- Brisque Job and Page files are translated into TIFF/IT-FP/P1 and vice versa. However, the TIFF/IT-FP/P1 format (which binds all three file formats [CT, LW and HC] together) is not a recognized Job-type format. It cannot be processed by operations that utilize Job files.

Currently, TIFF/IT-P1 does not support:

- Spot colors
- Partial separation
- Pre-separated input.

Translating TIFF/IT Files

The translation to and from the TIFF/IT format can be executed directly from the Translate application as a single step operation, or as part of a Template Builder flow.

To translate an input file (CT, LW, Page, Brisque Job) to TIFF/IT-P1:

➢ See *Translating Files* on page 276.

To translate a TIFF/IT to a Brisque Job:

1. Drag a TIFF/IT **<filename>-P1_FP** file onto the **Translate** icon.
2. Select the **Page** file input icon.
3. From the **Translate Page to** list box, select **Brisque Job**.

Or,

1. Drag all the components of the TIFF-IT file (that is, **<filename>-P1_LW.tif, <filename>-P1_CT.tif, and <filename>-P1_FP.tif**) onto a Hot Folder containing the Translate operation.
2. Select the **Page** file input icon.
3. From the **Translate Page to** list box select **Brisque Job**.

To translate a Postscript or PDF file to a TIFF-IT-P1 file:

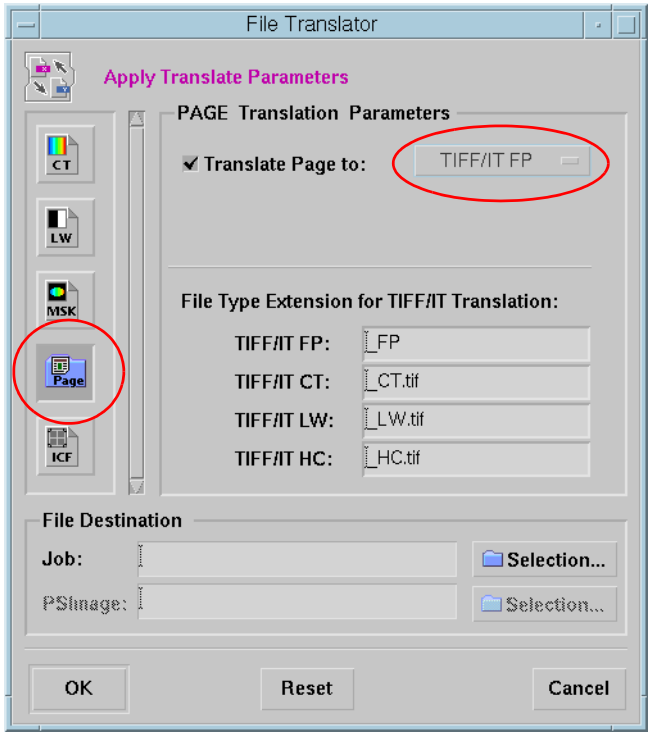
➢ Send the Postscript or PDF to a template that contains the RIP and Translate (predefined with the Translate Page to Brisque Job option) operations; the RIP first converts the file to the Brisque Job format, and the following Translate operation converts the Brisque Job to the TIFF/IT format.

Customizing the TIFF/IT-P1 File Extensions

The Translate application allows you to customize the TIFF/IT-P1 file extensions created when translating Pages to the TIFF/IT-P1 FP file format.

To customize the output TIFF/IT-P1 file extensions:

1. From the left side of the File Translator window, select the **Page** file type icon; the following File Translator window displays.



2. Select the **Translate Page to** check box, then from the list box, select **TIFF/IT FP**.
3. In the **File Type Extension for TIFF/IT Translation** boxes, type the extensions you wish to add to the output TIFF/IT-P1 file types.

Note: Default TIFF/IT-P1 extensions are displayed.

Translate Workflows

Transferring Pages from Whisper and PS/2 workstations to the Brisque involves creating Brisque Hot Folders that define the Translate operation, and verifying that the input files are named in a way that the Brisque will process them correctly. Once unsupported files have been translated into a Brisque supported format, you can process and output them using the other Brisque applications.

You also can take files from the Brisque back to the Whisper or PS/2 station for editing, or to any other retouch station or application like Remake or Adobe Photoshop. When you finish editing the files, you transfer them back to the Brisque, and, if necessary, re-translate them into a Brisque supported file format. (When editing an individual CT or LW of a Page, be careful not to change the file name, or any parameters like size and offset, that require FLYT instructions.)

Translate Workflows at a Glance outlines the different ways to transfer files to the Brisque, and also provides a brief summary of each workflow (see *Translate Workflows at a Glance* on page 298).

Creating Brisque Hot Folders that Initiate the Translation (Preliminary Step)

Before you can send files from a remote station to the Brisque, you must define Hot Folders on the Brisque that are sensitive to the file types that you will be sending. Once a file is sent to a Hot Folder, it is automatically processed according to the Hot Folder definitions.

The Hot Folders that you will use for bringing unsupported files from a remote station to the Brisque can define any workflow, as long as the workflow begins with the Translate operation. Defining these Hot Folders is a setup step that can be performed once. Unless you are working with FLYT files, you can also transfer files to a regular Brisque folder, and Translate them later. FLYTs must go directly to a Brisque Hot Folder that defines a Translate operation. Refer to the Brisque Release Notes for Brisque limitations when using Translate in a Template.

You can create additional Hot Folders at any time, and you can modify the file handling and file processing instructions defined by the Hot Folder at any time.



Note: In order to successfully transfer and translate files coming from a Whisper or from a PS/2, via PTOP or via the NFS mount, the Hot Folders must be located within the Brisque jobs folder, and abide by the naming conventions described in the following procedure.

To create the Brisque Hot Folders that will translate the files coming from remote stations:

1. Whether or not your Brisque is configured with a LanC board, configure the Brisque for LanC communications; the Brisque jobs folder is created.



For instructions on configuring the Brisque for LanC communications, see the *LanC PCI FE Board Installation and Configuration document (39Z50667B)*.

2. Working from the remote station, in the Brisque jobs folder, create a subfolder with the extension .j.



Note: If the folder is created from a Whisper or PS/2 station, then the .j extension is added automatically. For this to work, a LanC board must be installed in the Brisque.

3. Working from the remote station, in the .j subfolder, create several folders, which are automatically given the extension .p. Every Brisque folder in the .j folder that has a .p extension will be visible from the PS/2 and Whisper stations.



Note: When creating the folders from a Whisper or PS/2 station, then the .p extension is added automatically. For this to work, a LanC board must be installed in the Brisque.

You can create these folders from the Brisque as well, but we recommend doing it from the remote station to avoid using names that are incompatible with Whisper or PS/2 naming conventions. If you do create the folders on the Brisque, make sure to manually add the .p and .j extensions.

(Later, working from the Brisque, define these folders with the .p extension as Brisque Hot Folders that define the necessary Translate operation.)

4. On the Brisque, make the folders with the .p extension that you created in the previous step into Hot Folders, and assign them the following parameters:

This Configuration	Requires a Hot Folder Sensitive to this File Type
Whisper to Brisque with LanC	FLYT
Whisper to Brisque without LanC (via SciNet Span Pro)	Page HandShake
PS/2 with FLYT	FLYT
PS/2 without FLYT	CT-LW (Find this option under the Page category.)

If you are going to transfer files from the Macintosh in formats other than the ones listed above (Brisque Translate supported), create Hot Folders sensitive to the relevant file types.

5. Attach a Template to the Hot Folder whose first step (or only step) is the Translate operation.



Important: When you define a Brisque Hot Folder, make sure to clear the Include Subfolders option.



For a complete description of how to create Hot Folders and define their file handling and processing parameters, see *Chapter 7, Setting Up Hot Folders*.

PS/2-Brisque Workflow

You can transfer files between a PS/2 and a Brisque in the following ways:

- Directly via NFS (TCP/IP)
- Directly via LanC (PTOP)
- Via a SciNet Span Pro application on the Macintosh.



Note: With both the LanC configuration, and the NFS mount, you can transfer files to and from the Brisque working from the PS/2 station only (that is, you can access files that reside on the Brisque from the PS/2 station, but you cannot access files that reside on the PS/2 station from the Brisque). If you are working with the SciNet Span Pro applications, you transfer PS/2 and Brisque files, working from the Macintosh.

When you want to send CT and LW files from the PS/2 to the Brisque for processing, keep the following in mind:

- If you work with a RIP that generates a FLYT, send the FLYT to a Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYTs; the associated CT and LW files are automatically transferred along with the FLYT.
- If you work with a RIP that does not generate a FLYT, send the CT and LW files to a Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to CT-LW.



Note: When you work without FLYT, you cannot rename your CT and LW files, since the Brisque recognizes their relation based on the naming convention only.

To copy files from the PS/2 to the Brisque via NFS:

1. Make sure that the 3Com Board for TCP/IP-NFS is installed on the PS/2.
2. Configure the Brisque and the PS/2 for communications via NFS.



See *Brisque Software Installation Guide, 399Z1R029A.*

3. If the necessary Brisque Hot Folders do not exist, create and define them.
   (See *Creating Brisque Hot Folders that Initiate the Translation (Preliminary Step)* on page 284).
4. Working from the PS/2, select a PS/2 FLYT and copy it to a mounted Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYT files; the result is a Brisque Job with a Page that contains the associated CT and LW files.

Or, if you don't need the FLYT, select the CT and LW files and copy them to a mounted Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to CT-LW files, or copy them into a regular Brisque folder and translate them later; the result is a Brisque Job with a Page that contains the CT and LW files.



Important: In order to successfully transfer and Translate files coming from a PS/2, via PTOP or via the NFS mount, the Hot Folders *must* be located within the Brisque *jobs* folder, and you must follow the naming conventions described in the procedure *Creating Brisque Hot Folders that Initiate the Translation (Preliminary Step)* on page 284.

To copy files from the PS/2 to the Brisque via PTOP:

1. Make sure your PS/2 and the Brisque have a LanC board installed.
2. Configure the Brisque and the PS/2 for communications via PTOP.



For instructions on configuring the Brisque for LanC communications, see the *LanC PCI Fast Board Installation and Configuration document, Cat. No. 399Z50667B.*

3. If the necessary Brisque Hot Folders do not already exist, create and define them (see *Creating Brisque Hot Folders that Initiate the Translation (Preliminary Step)* on page 284).
4. Working from the PS/2, select a FLYT and copy it to a mounted Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYT files. The result is a Brisque Job with a Page that contains the associated CT and LW files. Or, if you don't need the FLYT, select the CT and LW files and copy them to a Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to CT-LW files, or copy them into a regular Brisque folder and translate them later; the result is a Brisque Job with a Page that contains the CT and LW files.



Note: When the Translate application receives a single CT or LW file from a remote station, it waits only 50 seconds for the partner CT or LW file. (The Brisque recognizes partners based on naming conventions. Only if the related files have the same base name are they properly gathered into Pages.) If the partner CT or LW file doesn't arrive within 50 seconds, the application goes ahead and processes the single file anyway. If and when a partner file does arrive, it is translated and then added to the Page where the first file resides.

Translating Multi-Page Files

The Brisque Translate automatically gathers Pages with the same base name into one Job. Page numbers do not have to be consecutive for this operation to work (e.g. if the sequence of files arriving to the Hot Folder is 1, 5, and 9, then Page folders numbered 1, 5, and 9 will be created beneath the same Job folder). This feature does not apply to Pre-separated multi-Page files coming from the PS/2.

You can send the individual elements of a Page or Job to the Brisque in any order and at any time. To ensure that the files are gathered into a single Job, with the elements properly grouped into Pages, make sure that the following conditions are met before copying the files to the Brisque:

- All of the elements (FLYTs, CTs, and LWs) must have the same base name.
- FLYTs and their associated CT-LW pairs must have the same base name and number.

You can take a CT or LW file back to the PS/2 for editing, then return it to the Brisque for Translation (if necessary) via the same Hot Folder. If re-translation is unnecessary, just copy the edited file back to the same location, without changing its name. The updated file replaces the existing one. Please note that if you are going to edit an unsupported file on the PS/2, you must first Translate it back into a PS/2 supported file format.



Note: When you take an individual element of a Page (that is, a CT or LW file) from the Brisque to the PS/2 for editing, be careful not to change the file name, or to modify parameters that require FLYT instructions, such as resolution, size, scale, and offset.

File Naming Conventions

A multi-Page Job is RIPped on the PS/2 according to the following naming convention:

Job Name	Page Names
example	example_6 (LW)
	example_6I (CT)
	example_6F (FLYT)

When you send Example_6F (the FLYT) to the Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYT files, the FLYT and its associated CT and LW are Translated into a Brisque Job, that uses the following naming convention:

Job Name	Page Name	File Names
example.job	example-P7.p	example-P7.ct
		example-P7.lw



Note: The Page number n on the PS/2 becomes Page number n+1 on the Brisque after the translation. (The same is true for Whisper files.)

If you copy files from the PS/2 to the Brisque without using any Translate Hot Folder, the CT and LW files retain the names assigned to them by the PS/2, with the following extensions added:

LW	example_6	example_6.lw
CT	example_6I	example_6I.ct
FLYT	example_6F	example_6F.exc

Whisper-Brisque Workflow

Brisque supports the LanC board, which allows you to send files directly from a Whisper to a Brisque via PTOP, and also, while working at the Whisper station, to bring files from the Brisque to the Whisper for editing. You can use the Translate application to translate all unsupported Whisper picture types into Brisque supported formats, and, if necessary, to Translate a Brisque NLW back into the Native LW format for editing on the Whisper.

If your Brisque configuration does not include a LanC board, you can use the SciNet Span Pro, or SciNet Profile (Macintosh applications) to move files between the Whisper and the Brisque. (Whisper to Macintosh via PTOP, Macintosh to Brisque via AppleShare or TCP/IP.)



For instructions on sending scanned files from the Whisper to the Brisque, see Scanning in Linework Mode section in *Chapter 27, CopyDot Workflow*.



Note: Operations can be initiated from the Whisper, or from the MAC, via SciNet applications, but not from the Brisque.

Note: Whenever you copy Pages from the Whisper to the Brisque, you must send the FLYT.

To move files from the Whisper to the Brisque via PTOP:

1. Make sure your Whisper and Brisque has a LanC board installed.
2. Configure the Brisque and the Whisper for communications via PTOP.



For instructions on configuring the Brisque for LanC communications, see the *LanC PCI Fast Board Installation and Configuration document, Cat. No. 399Z50667B.*

3. If the necessary Brisque Hot Folders do not already exist, create and define them (see *Creating Brisque Hot Folders that Initiate the Translation (Preliminary Step)* on page 284).
4. From the Whisper, select a FLYT and copy it to a mounted Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYT files. The result is a Brisque Job with a Page that contains the associated CT and LW files.

To move files from the Whisper to the Brisque via SciNet Span Pro, when the Brisque is not configured with a LanC board:

1. Make sure your Whisper and Brisque has a LanC board installed.
2. Configure the Macintosh and the Whisper for communications via PTOP.
3. If you do not have a Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to Page Handshake files, then create and define one (see *Creating Brisque Hot Folders that Initiate the Translation (Preliminary Step)* on page 284).
4. Use the Apple Chooser to mount the Brisque Hot Folder on the Macintosh desktop.
5. Working from SciNet Span Pro, use the Receive from Scitex function to select the Whisper FLYT and bring it to the Macintosh.
   If you define the following parameters, the files are converted into the Page Handshake format, and sent directly (via AppleShare or TCP/IP) to the Brisque Hot Folder that will translate the Page Handshake file into a Brisque Page.
   a. In the Destination section of the smaller File Process window, select **Creo Page** from the **Format** list box.

b. In the Options section, select both the **Receive LW** file, and the **Receive CT** file options.

c. From the File Process window, click **Receive**, and from the Destination Folder browser that displays, select the mounted Brisque Hot Folder.



Note: By default, the SciNet Span Pro application translates Whisper files into the HandShake Page format. If you redefine the SciNet Span Pro parameters to translate the incoming files into the Native format, you must send them to the Brisque via a Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to LW Native files.
We recommend that you leave the HandShake Page default alone.

SciNet Span Pro and SciNet Profile

SciNet Span Pro and SciNet Profile are applications that run on a Macintosh. They provide a link between the Macintosh and Creo production systems for tasks such as converting, moving, managing, and finding files. Using the SciNet Span Pro applications to move large files from the Macintosh to the Brisque via PTOP is normally more efficient than transferring files via AppleShare. SciNet Profile also has a Search function that lets you simultaneously search all LanC configured stations on the network for a specific file. This can be especially useful in the Imposition workflow, when you need to locate a misplaced Page. (But please note that the search function can take a long time.)

Use SciNet Profile:

- To copy files between any Whisper, PS/2, Creo Server, Macintosh, or Brisque on the network. Please note that the SciNet Profile application is only for use with devices configured with a LanC board.
- To simultaneously search all LanC configured stations on the network for a specific file.

Use SciNet Span Pro:

- To copy and convert non-Creo files (such as JPEG or GIF) into a format supported by the Brisque or by the Brisque Translate.
- To copy and convert Brisque files into formats supported by an editing station/application.
- To copy files from the Whisper to the Brisque when the Brisque configuration does not include the LanC board.

To prepare to transfer and translate files using the SciNet Span Pro/ SciNet Profile applications:

1. Install a LanC board on the Macintosh.
2. Install the SciNet Span Pro applications on the Macintosh.
3. Configure the remote stations and the Macintosh for communications via PTOP. If any of the stations are configured without a LanC board, configure these stations and the Macintosh for communications via AppleShare or TCP/IP.
4. If the necessary Brisque Hot Folders do not exist, create and define them (see *Creating Brisque Hot Folders that Initiate the Translation (Preliminary Step)* on page 284).

SciNet Span Pro

The SciNet Span Pro application lets you transfer and translate files in one of three modes:

- **Receive from Scitex -** you bring files to the Macintosh for processing from a LanC device via PTOP.
- **Send to Scitex -** you send files to a LanC device via PTOP.
- **File Conversion -** you convert (translate) file formats from one to another (files must be on the Macintosh or on a mounted Mac volume).

Receive from Scitex

Use the **Receive from Scitex** function to bring files via PTOP from a LanC device to the Macintosh for processing.

To transfer and translate files in the Receive from Scitex mode:

1. To build a list of files that will be received from a Creo device, click **Add**; the browser that appears lets you access files on devices that are configured with a LanC board only. (The only Brisque files that you can access using the Receive from Scitex function located in the jobs/.j/.p folder).
2. Define any necessary conversion parameters.
3. Click **Receive**; the Destination Folder browser displays, listing folders accessible via AppleShare.
4. Select a destination folder, then click **Select**; the files are brought to the Macintosh via PTOP, then processed and directed to the destination folder according to the following:
   - If the destination folder is a Brisque Hot Folder that is mounted on the Macintosh desktop via AppleShare, the files are transferred to the Brisque via AppleShare.
   - If the destination folder is a SciNet Span Pro hot folder that defines a transfer to a LanC device, then the files are transferred via PTOP.

Send to Scitex

Use the **Send to Scitex** function to send files to a LanC device via PTOP.

To transfer files in the Send to Scitex mode:

1. To build the list of files that will be sent to a creo device, click **Add**; a regular Macintosh browser displays, listing files that are accessible via AppleShare.
   You can also add files to the list by dragging and dropping them from

any open window on the Macintosh (a mounted Brisque volume, or a SciNet Profile window) into the list that appears in the File Process window.

2. Define any necessary conversion parameters.
3. When the list is complete, click **Send**; the Destination Folder window appears, giving you access to folders on devices that are configured with a LanC board only. (The only Brisque folders that appear are the ones with the .j/.p extension that are located in the Brisque jobs folder).
4. Select a destination folder, and click Select; the files are sent to the defined destination folder via PTOP.

File Conversion

Use the *File Conversion* function to convert files into a format supported by the destination device.

To transfer and translate files in the File Conversion mode:

1. To build the list of files that will be converted, click **Add**; a regular Macintosh browser appears, displaying files that are accessible via AppleShare.
   You can also add files to the list by dragging and dropping them from

any open window on the Macintosh (that is, a mounted Brisque volume, or a SciNet Profile window) into the list that appears in the File Process window.

2. Define the necessary conversion parameters.
3. Click **Convert**; the Destination Folder browser displays, listing all the folders that are available via AppleShare.
4. Select a destination folder, and click **Select**; the files are converted and transferred to the Destination folder according to the following:
   - If the Destination Folder is a Brisque Hot Folder that is mounted on the Macintosh desktop via AppleShare or TCP/IP, the files are transferred to the Brisque via AppleShare.
   - If the Destination Folder is a SciNet Span Pro Hot Folder that defines a transfer to a LanC device, then the files are transferred via PTOP.



For detailed instructions, see the *SciNet Span Pro User Guide*.

SciNet Profile

Use SciNet Profile to manage files on all the LanC configured devices on the network from the Macintosh.

To transfer files on the network using SciNet Profile:

1. Open the main SciNet Profile window, and double-click each station in the list whose files and folders you want to access. Each time you double-click a station from the SciNet Profile window, a window displays, listing the contents of the selected station.



Note: Only devices that are configured with a LanC board appear in the SciNet Profile window.

2. Drag and drop files from one window to another.
   - If you are moving FLYT files to the Brisque from a Whisper, select the **Copy Relation File**s option from the Profile Preferences window (accessed by clicking **Edit -> Preferences -> Other**) and

click **OK**; when you drag the FLYT directly into a Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYTs, the associated CT and LW information is automatically transferred too.

- If you are copying FLYT files from a Star PS or a Creo Server, in Profile Preferences, deselect the **Copy Relation Files** option, then drag the FLYT and associated CT and LW files into the same Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYTs. If the three files have the same base name, and the two Hot Folders define the same output destination, the files are properly grouped into one Page of a Brisque Job.
- If you are copying PS/2 CT and LW files only, without the FLYT, you can either put them directly into a Brisque Hot Folder (sensitive to LW and CT) for translation, or you can copy the CT and LW files into any Brisque folder, and translate them later.
- If you want to transfer files from a Brisque back to a PS/2 or Whisper for editing, and they are not in a format supported by the PS/2 or Whisper, you will have to bring them to the SciNet Span Pro application for translation back into a PS/2 or Whisper supported format.



For detailed instructions, see the *SciNet Span Pro User Guide*.

Translate Workflows at a Glance

The following table provides a brief overview of the different workflows available for transferring files to the Brisque. When we mention a Hot Folder, assume that the only operation defined by the Hot Folder is Translate. Refer to the relevant section of this chapter for a complete description of a particular workflow.

Connection	Via	Comments
Whisper to Brisque	LanC (PTOP)	On the Whisper, select the FLYT, then copy it to a Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYT files. The result is a Brisque Job, with a Page that contains the associated CT and LW files.
	SciNet Profile (PTOP)	Working from the Macintosh, use SciNet Profile to copy a Whisper FLYT from the Whisper to a Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYTs. The result is a Brisque Job. Make sure that in the SciNet Profile Preferences dialog box, the Copy Relation Files option is selected (see *SciNet Profile* on page 296).
	SciNet Span Pro (PTOP/ AppleShare)	When you do not have a LanC board on the Brisque, you can use the SciNet Span Pro Receive from Creo function to bring the Whisper FLYT, CT, and LW files to the Macintosh, translate them into Page Handshake, then move them via AppleShare into a Brisque Hot Folder (sensitive to Page Handshake) that is mounted on the Macintosh desktop.

Connection	Via	Comments
PS/2 to Brisque	LanC (PTOP)	On the PS/2, select the FLYT, and copy it to a Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYT. The result is a Brisque Job with a Page that contains the associated CT and LW files. If the PS/2 RIP that you are working with does not generate a FLYT, you can send the CT and LW files to a Hot Folder sensitive to CT-LW. The result is a Job with a Page that contains the CT and LW files.
	NFS (TCP/IP)	On the PS/2, select the PS/2 FLYT, and copy it to the Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYT. The associated CT and LW information is automatically copied with the FLYT. Or, if you are working without FLYT files, copy the CT and LW files to the Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to CT-LW.  **Important:** In order for the files to be transferred and translated properly via the NFS mount, you must copy the files into a Hot Folder that is located within the Brisque jobs folder. (see *Creating Brisque Hot Folders that Initiate the Translation (Preliminary Step)* on page 284).
	SciNet Profile (PTOP)	On the PS/2, select the FLYT, and copy it to a Brisque Hot Folder that is sensitive to FLYT. The result is a Brisque Job with a Page that contains the associated CT and LW files. If the PS/2 RIP that you are working with does not generate a FLYT, you can send the CT and LW files to a Hot Folder sensitive to CT-LW. The result is a Job with a Page that contains the CT and LW files.

Raster File Descriptions, Notes and Limitations

Raster File Descriptions

The following describes the types of raster files that can be translated by the Brisque.

Name	Description
CT Handshake	Creo CT Handshake format (up to 4 separations CMYK, 8 bit separation).
CT Native	Creo native (Whisper) CT format (up to 4 separations CMYK, 8 bit separation).
CT New	Creo extended CT format (spot color support), up to 32 separations.
TIFF CT	CMYK TIFF or B&W TIFF 8 bits deep (same as TIFF/IT-CT/P1).
Mask Native	Creo Native masking format.
Mask Handshake	Creo Handshake masking format.
EPSF	Rasterized EPSF files.
DCS 1	DCS version 1 (4 separations + master).
LW Handshake	Creo Extended LW Handshake format (up to 4 separations CMYK, up to 248 colors).
LW Native	Creo LW format (up to 4 separations CMYB, up to 248 colors).
LW New	Creo extended LW format. Up to 32 separations, up to 64K colors.
TIFF LW	Indexed RGB TIFF (8 bits) and B&W TIFF (1,2 and 4 bits).
TIFF/IT-LW/P1	CMYK image file format for LW (contains up to 255 colors).

Name	Description
TIFF/IT-CT/P1	Same as TIFF CT *(see above)*.
TIFF/IT-HC/P1	TIFF/IT-P1 high resolution continuous tone file format (can contain more than 255 colors).
TIFF/IT-FP/ P1	TIFF/IT-FP/P1 format binds all three TIFF/IT-P1 file formats (CT, LW and HC) together (not a recognized Job-type format and cannot be processed by operations that utilize Job files).
FLYT	Final Layout.
Page Handshake	Handshake Page.
CT+LW	CT and LW combined (with PS/2 naming conventions).
DCS2	Multiple (master + separations) or single. Valid as an input only, not as an output (can't be created).

Important Notes

- ICF Translate - the output file (Brisque Imposition Job) always receives the same name as the input file (the ICF). You may rename the ICF file before translating it on the Brisque. The resulting output Imposition Job will be named according to the renamed ICF.
- ICF Translate - the following output applications support the Rectangle mark from Preps (Preps 3.5.2 or higher).
  - ❒ Proof
  - ❒ Expose
  - ❒ Plate Expose.
- Translate supports the Signature Range naming convention.

General Limitations

- CT native and CT Handshake RGB files are translated to CMY color space
- Resource fork information is not copied to translated file
- No CT to LW, or LW to CT translation
- CT + LW works as a FLYT
  - Supporting CT Handshake + LW Handshake, in VIP naming convention
  - Supporting CT Native + LW New or LW Native, in PS/2 naming convention.
- CT + LW refers to two elements on the same Page. When you are working with CT+LW files (without a FLYT) their relative offset must be 0,0.
- No PSI files are created when DCS2 (single) is the source.

TIFF/IT Limitations

- LW files with 256 colors or less are translated into TIFF/IT-LW/P1, while LW files with more than 256 colors are translated into TIFF/IT-HC/P1.
- Brisque Job and Page files are translated into TIFF/IT-FP/P1 and vice versa. However, the TIFF/IT-FP/P1 format is not a recognized Job-type format. This means that it cannot be processed by operations that utilize Job files.
- Currently, TIFF/IT-P1 translation does not support Spot Colors, partial separation and Pre-separated input.

Brisque Job to FLYT Limitations

- The Translate application supports composite pages up to four separations, and pages that contain LW files with no more than 248 colors. Pre-separated files and Spot Colors are not handled.
- Composite files with more than 248 colors are not split into Pre-separated FLYTs.
- Imposition Jobs and non-composite CTs are not supported.

Supported Translations

The following outlines file types supported by the Brisque (see translation notes):

Input	Output												
	CT H/S	CT Native	CT New	EPS F	DCS [5]	TIFF CT[12]	LW H/S	LW Native	LW New	TIFF/ IT-LW	TIFF/ IT-FP	FLYT[8]	Creo Job
CT H/S		✓	✓	✓[3]	✓[2]	✓[3]							
CT Native	✓		✓	✓[3]	✓[2]	✓[3]							
CT New	✓[4]	✓[4]		✓[3]	✓[2]	✓[3]							
Mask H/S[7]	✓	✓	✓	✓[3]	✓[2]	✓							
Mask Native[7,9]	✓	✓	✓	✓[3]	✓[2]	✓							
EPSF	✓	✓	✓		✓[2]	✓[3]							
DCS[5]	✓	✓	✓	✓[3]		✓							
TIFF CT[12]	✓	✓	✓	✓[3]	✓[2]								
LW H/S								✓	✓	✓[2]			
LW Native							✓		✓	✓[2]			
LW New							✓[6]	✓[6]		✓[2]			
LW TIFF							✓[6]	✓[6]	✓				
TIFF/IT-LW							✓	✓	✓				
TIFF/IT-HC[12]									✓				
TIFF/IT-FP													✓
FLYT[8]													✓
H/S Page													✓
CT + LW[11]													✓
ICF													✓
Scanned LW/ NLW[10,11]													✓
Creo Job											✓	✓	

Translation Notes

✓	Indicates a supported translation.
1	Limited to rasterized EPSF files (files with rasterized CT data).
2	Limited to full CMYK files (files with all 4 separations).
3	Limited to either full CMYK files or single separation files. The single separation files are translated to gray level files.
4	Limited to files with up to 4 separations from the CMYK color space.
5	DCS version 1 (5 files, 4 separations).
6	Limited to files with less than 248 colors.
7	When Handshake and Native masks are translated to EPSF and DCS, the mask is translated to a clipping path. PS Images also maintain the clipping path. Mask H/S and Mask Native formats can also be translated to the other CT formats, but the mask will not be retained.
8	Only supported if a LANC board is installed.
9	ICFs created in the *Preps* application.
10	Supports Pre-separated Creo Monoscan Scanner and Creo Smart 342L Scanner with the SmartDOT special kit files in the LW/NLW format. Turns them into a Pre-separated Brisque Pages.
11	Translated only if operation performed via a Hot Folder.
12	The TIFF CT format is identical to the TIFF/IT-CT/P1 format.

Exiting the Translate Application

To exit the Translate application:

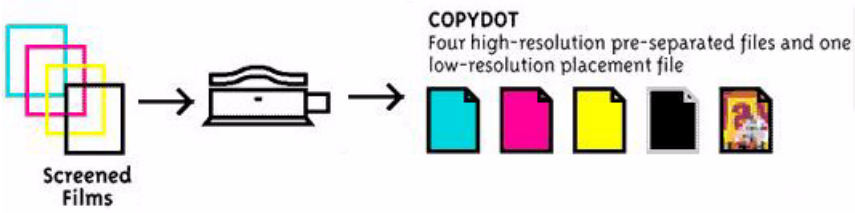
- Click **OK** to confirm the newly defined Translate parameters and exit the File Translator window.
  Or, click **Reset** to revert to the previously defined Translate parameters; the main File Translator window remains open.
  Or, click **Cancel** to exit the File Translator window without saving changes.

27 CopyDot Workflow

Overview 308
Scanning in LW Mode 310
Scanning in Bitmap Modes.....311
LW Scanning Versus Bitmap Scanning 313
Half Resolution Workflow 314
Sample Workflows.....315

Overview

The Brisque lets you incorporate digital files of scanned analog films (imagesetter output film), generated by the Creo-supported scanners, into the Brisque production workflow.



The following scanners and software applications are supported by the Brisque:

Scanner	Scanner Software
Creo Renaissance	Renaissance 2 scanner version 1.2[a]
Creo Smart 342L	SmartDOT
Creo EverSmart Pro	EverSmart DOT
Creo EverSmart Supreme	EverSmart DOT
Purup-Eskofot Monoscan	Monoscan JPS[b]

a. For more information refer to *Appendix A.* on page 321.
b. Version 6.6Q - 8 (not including version 9). For more information refer to *Appendix B.* on page 323.

Limitation: While exposing CopyDot files on the Dolev or Lotem, you must use the TSP screen board on the Brisque.

Scan files in one of the following supported modes:

LW/NLW mode	Bitmap modes
To incorporate whole Pages that exist on analog film into your digital workflow.	To incorporate whole Pages that exist on analog film into your digital workflow.
When you want the scanned images to be ready for output from the Brisque. In this workflow, RIP is unnecessary.	When you want to incorporate a whole or partial analog bitmap Page into a digital Page. You can RIP the scanned image on the Brisque if it is a complete Page. Or, you can first place the scanned partial image on a PostScript Page, using a Page Layout application, and then RIP the PostScript file on the Brisque.



For detailed information on scanning with the supported scanners, refer to the following guides:

For Renaissance, see *Renaissance User Guide*.
For Purup Eskofot Monoscan, see *Monoscan Scanner User Guide*.
For Creo Smart 342L with the SmartDOT special kit, see *SmartDOT for Smart 342 (L) Installation and User Guide (399Z50374C)*.
For EverSmart Pro & EverSmart Supreme, *see EverSmart Scanners User Guide (399Z51895B)*.

Scanning in LW Mode

Scanning in the LW Mode can be very efficient when you want to incorporate whole Pages that already exist on analog film into your Brisque production workflow.

To incorporate analog Pages into the Brisque workflow:

1. Set the scanner to create Pre-separated Handshake LW files or Pre-separated New LW files.



Tip: You can also scan into an I/O device (such as a Whisper) with the Creo Monoscan scanner. The result is one Native LW file per color separation, named filename.c, filename.m, filename.y, filename.k.

2. Create and define a Hot Folder, if one does not exist, that is sensitive to the Scanned LW/NLW input file type, and defines the Translate operation. (For additional instructions see *Chapter 7, Setting Up Hot Folders*).

3. Scan the images into a Hot Folder that is sensitive to the Scanned LW/NLW file type. The Hot Folder activates the Translate operation, and the result is a Pre-separated Brisque Job with one Page that contains the LW files.



Tip: To automate the workflow when scanning to the Brisque or a Macintosh, scan directly into the Hot Folder that defines the Translate operation.

Scanning in Bitmap Modes

When you want to incorporate information that exists on film only into a digital Page, set the scanner to create bitmap files.
When using the Bitmap mode, the supported scanners offer the following formats:

- **DCS1.0 -** consists of a master file with four High Res. files for CMYK separations.
- **DCS 2.0 Single (Monoscan supported only)** - consists of a single file that holds the master file together with all the High Res. files for each separation within it. This format supports process separations (CMYK) and spot separations.
- **DCS 2.0 Multiple -** consists of a single master file and a High Res. file for each separation. This format supports process separations (CMYK) and spot separations.
- **PDF Composite (Renaissance supported only) -** consists of a single file that holds the master file together with all the High Res. files for each separation within it. This format can be RIPed directly, without any prior conversions (in composite mode). This format supports process separations (CMYK) only.
- **PDF Spot Composite -** consists of a single file that holds the master file together with all the High Res. files for each separation within it. This format can be RIPed directly, without any prior conversions (in composite mode). This format supports process separations (CMYK) and spot separations.
- **EPS Composite (Renaissance supported only) -** consists of a single file that holds the master file together with all the High Res. files for each separation within it. This format can RIP directly, without any prior conversions (in composite mode). This format supports process separations (CMYK) only.
- **EPS Spot Composite -** consists of a single file that holds the master file together with all the High Res. files for each separation within it. This format can be RIPped directly, without any prior conversions (in composite mode). This format supports process separations (CMYK) and spot separations.
- **PSImage -** Contains a single Low Res. file (master file) and four High Res. files for the process separations (CMYK). The PSImage file does not support spot separations.



Note: All the options described here are supported by the Brisque workflow.

To incorporate a whole or a partial analog Page into a digital Page:

1. Set the scanner to create bitmap files.
2. Scan the film into a Brisque, a PS/2 workstation, a Macintosh, a Creo Server, or any other platform that supports PostScript files; the result is single or multiple output files, according to the selected format available for the Bitmap mode (described on *page 311*).
3. You can RIP a Low Res. file directly on the Brisque to create a Brisque Page.
   Or, you can first place a Low Res. file into a Page Layout application for further modification and continue with procedure.
4. When you finish building the Page, print the Page to a PostScript file; the PostScript file can be closed as either a Composite file or as a Pre-separated file.
   During the RIPing process on the Brisque, the Low Res. file is replaced with the High Res. files.



Important: During the RIP, the scanned elements are automatically marked for protection from FAF. FAF protection does not allow the FAF operation to manipulate the protected element.

5. Make sure that the High Res. files are properly located in the High Resolution File Paths for APR (Automatic Picture Replacement), and RIP the PostScript file on the Brisque (see *Chapter 19, High-Resolution File Paths* and *Chapter 20, Creo APR/OPI Workflow*, for details.)



Note: The RIP LW resolution must be identical to the scanning resolution.

LW Scanning Versus Bitmap Scanning

The following table presents a few of the advantages and disadvantages of scanning in the LW/NLW mode, versus scanning in the Bitmap mode.



Note: When you scan in the Bitmap mode, the PostScript file that incorporates the scanned image can be closed as either a Composite file or as a Pre-separated file.

File Format	Advantages	Disadvantages
Scanned LW/ NLW	• RIP/other processing operations are unnecessary • Faster scanning • Brisque supported format	• Not compressed • Inconvenient for partial Pages workflow
Pre-separated Scanned Bitmap	• Compressed, easier to archive • Versatile format • Allows partial Page workflow.	• RIP required • No trapping • All Pages in the PostScript are Pre-separated.
Composite Scanned Bitmap	• Compressed, easier to archive • Versatile format • Allows partial Page workflow • FAF available for digital data.	• RIP is required.

Half Resolution Workflow

You can output Pages whose LW resolution is exactly half of the defined output resolution. This is called the Half Resolution workflow.

For example, you can scan a full Page with the Creo EverSmart Supreme scanner in the LW mode at resolution 50, and output it at resolution 100. The LW resolution must be identical to the defined output resolution, or exactly half (when a Job includes Half Resolution Pages, the system automatically exposes them at the defined output resolution).

Sample Workflows

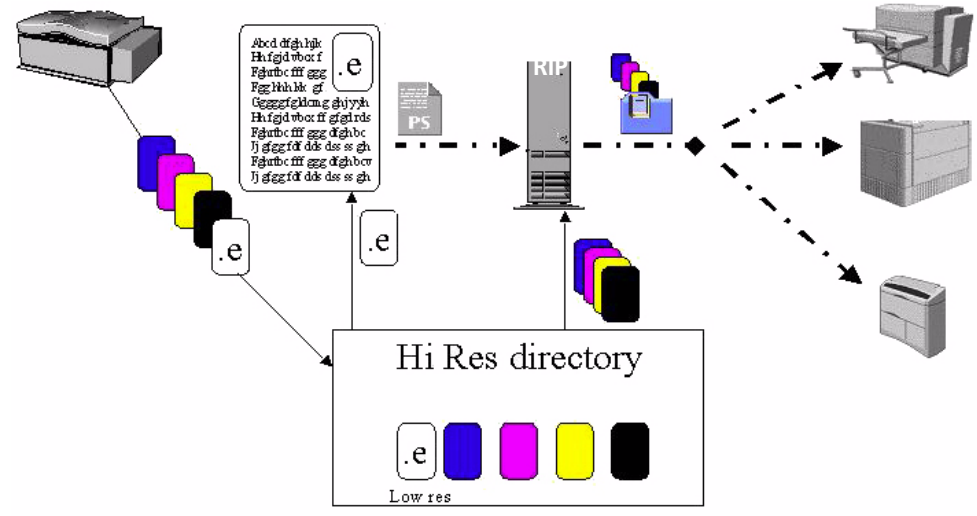
PS Image for Partial Page Workflow

1. Scan the analog films into a **HiRes** directory.
2. Place the **.e** (low resolution PSImage) file onto a Page Layout application (such as QuarkXpress) and print the PS file into the Brisque.
3. RIP the PS file to create a Brisque Job; the Brisque Job now includes the High Res. files.



Note: The High Res. path for RIPing must point to the scanned files.

4. Use the final Page for any purpose.



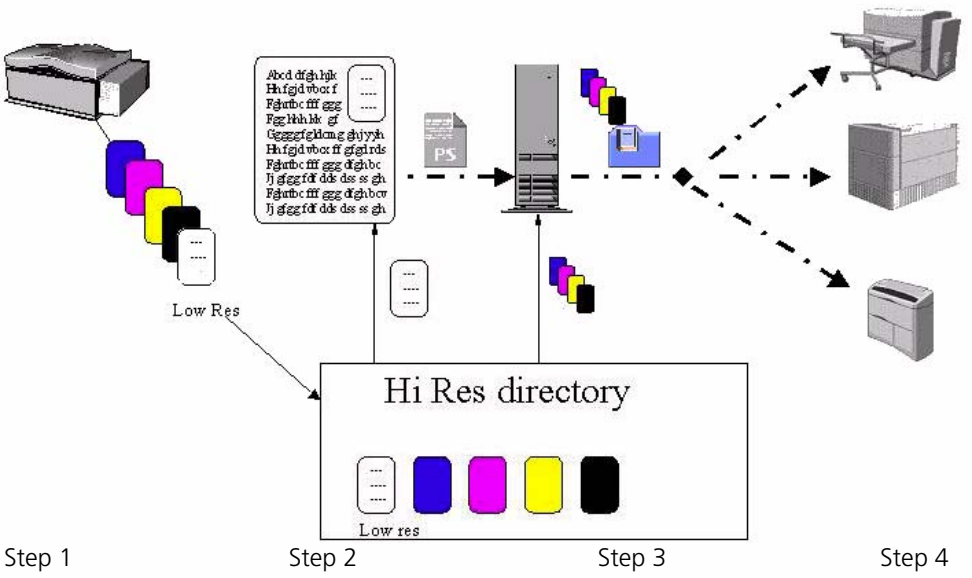
Step 1 Step 2 Step 3 Step 4

DCS 1/DCS 2 for Partial Page Composite Workflow

1. Scan the analog films to **HiRes** directory.
2. Place the DCS Low Res. file onto a Page Layout application and print the PS file into the Brisque.
3. RIP the PS file to create a Brisque Job; the Brisque Job will now include the Hi Res. files.

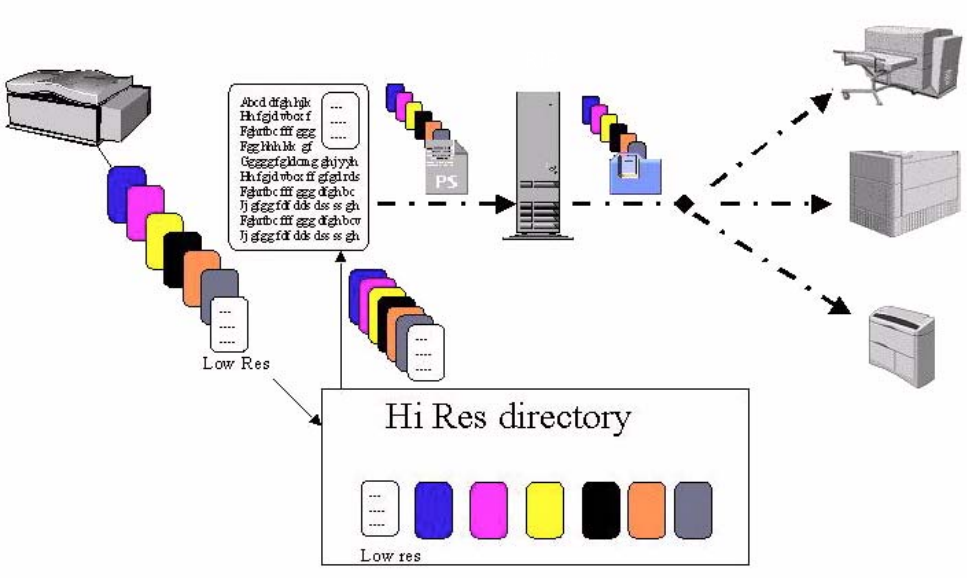
Note: The The High Res. path for RIPing must point to the scanned files.

4. Use the final Page for any purpose.



DCS 1/2 for Partial Page Pre-separated Workflow

1. Scan the analog film to **HiRes** directory.
2. Place the DCS Low Res. file onto a Page Layout application and print the PS file into the Brisque.
3. RIP the PS file to create a Brisque Job.
4. Use the final Page for any purpose.

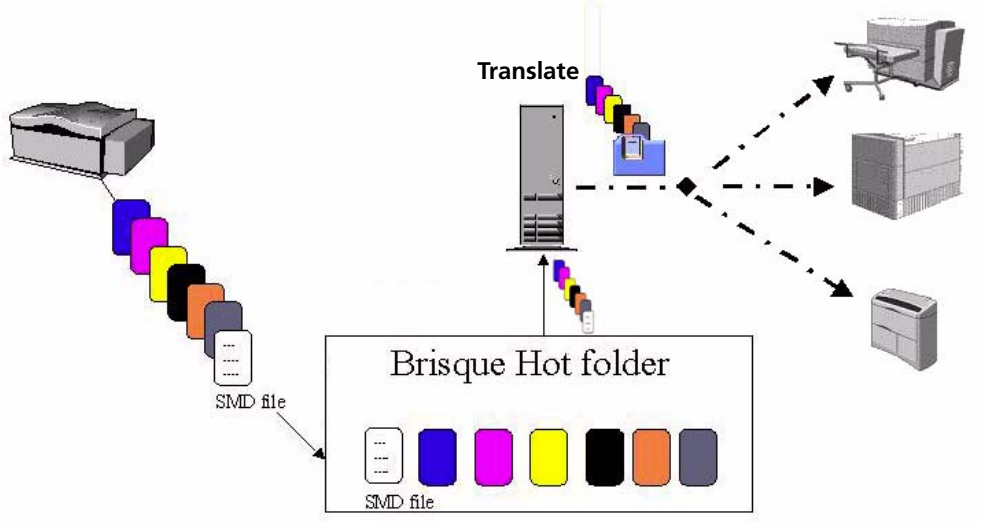


Step 1 Step 2 Step 3 Step 4

Note: In Pre-separated workflow using a Copy Dot file (for example, D&D a Pre-separated PS file onto the **Rip -> Merge -> FAF** Template), CopyDot images in the file are not protected after the Merge operation and framing is possible. Merge does not retain all the protections that RIP applied, therefore CopyDot files can be damaged during the FAF process.

NLW for Whole Page Workflow

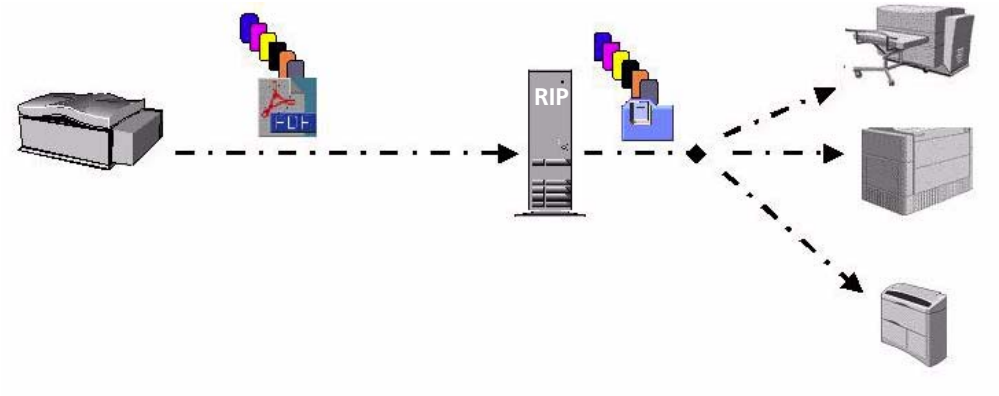
1. Scan the analog films into Hot Folder as NLW/LWHS (one for each separation).
2. The Hot Folder translate the scanned NLW/LWHS files into a Brisque Job, containing NLW files.
3. Use the final Page for any purpose.



Step 1 Step 2 Step 3

PDF/EPS Composite (new format) for Whole Page Workflow

1. Scan the analog films as PDF/EPS into the Brisque.
2. RIP the PDF or EPS file to create a Brisque Job.
3. Use the final Page for any purpose.



Step 1 Step 2 Step 3

The following table summarizes the infomation about CopyDot scan formats:

CopyDOT Scan Formats

Format	Scan Result	Spot Support	Use	PostScript Type	PostScript Containes	Remarks
PS Image			Place Low-Res file in DTP application	Composite	low-Res	* APR * Single LW * FAF Enabled
				Separations	low-Res	* APR * Multiple LW * FAF Disabled
DCS I			Place master file in DTP application	Composite	low-Res	* APR * Single LW * FAF Enabled
				Separations	Hi-Res	* Multiple LW * FAF Disabled
DCS 2	Single  *MonoScan Support Only	16 Sep. Max	Place file in DTP application	Composite	low-Res	* APR * Single LW * FAF Enabled
				Separations	Hi-Res	* Multiple LW * FAF Disabled
	Multiple 	16 Sep. Max	Place master file in DTP application	Composite	low-Res	* APR * Single LW * FAF Enabled
				Separations	Hi-Res	* Multiple LW * FAF Disabled
LWHS			Template- Translate page to Creo JOB.			Hot Folder - sensitive to scanned LW/NLW. Can be edited in Remake/PressTouch
NLW		16 Sep. Max	Template- Translate page to Creo JOB.			Hot Folder - sensitive to scanned LW/NLW. Can be edited in Remake/PressTouch
PDF Composite	 *Renaissance Support Only		Rip DIrectly			FAF support on Brisque version 4 only.
EPS Composite	 *Renaissance Support Only		Rip DIrectly			FAF support on Brisque version 4 only. Can be placed in DTP
PDF Spot Composite			Rip DIrectly			FAF support on Brisque version 4 only.
EPS Spot Composite			Rip DIrectly			FAF support on Brisque version 4 only. Can be placed in DTP

02.2001 Printing Workflow Solutions Division

Appendix A.

The Renaissance File Formats on Brisque 4.0

The Brisque 4 was tested with the Renaissance 2 Ver 1.2g and CopyDot ToolKit version 3.0 different file formats.

The following table shows tests Results:

Format	Pre Sep / Composite	RIP	FAF	Comments
PS Image (Scitex .e) (print from Quark)	Pre Sep	OK	OK	Support 4 process colors.
PS Image (Scitex .e) (print from Quark)	Composite	OK	OK	Support 4 process colors.
DCS1 (print from Quark)	Pre Sep	OK	N/A	Support 4 process colors.
DCS1 (print from Quark)	Composite	Bad result[a]	N/A	Support 4 process colors.
DCS2 (print from Quark)	Pre Sep	OK	N/A	Support 4 or less process color and spot colors.
DCS2 (print from Quark)	Composite	Bad result[b]	N/A	Support 4 or less process color and spot colors.
PDF Composite (directly to Rip)	Composite	OK	OK	Support 4 process colors.
EPS composite (directly to RIP)	Composite	OK	OK	Support 4 process colors.
PDF Spot Composite (directly to RIP)	Composite	OK	OK	Supports spot colors.
EPS Spot Composite (directly to RIP)	Composite	OK	OK	Supports spot colors.

Format	Pre Sep / Composite	RIP	FAF	Comments
NLW Formats		N/A	N/A	Supports 4 or less process color. These formats can be translated to Brisque job: ➢ Drag&Drop the scanned a LW/ NLW file + SMD file onto the **Translate LW -> Brisque Job** Hot Folder.

a. It is recommended to create CT file.
b. It is recommended to create CT file

Appendix B.

The Purup-Eskofot Monoscan File Formats on Brisque 4.0

The Brisque 4 was tested with the Purup-Eskofot Monoscan Ver 8 and CopyDot ToolKit version 3.0 different file formats.

The following table shows the tests results:

Format	Pre Sep / Composite	RIP	FAF	Comments
PS Image (Scitex .e) (print from Quark)	Pre Sep	OK	N/A	Support 4 process colors.
PS Image (Scitex .e) (print from Quark)	Composite	OK	OK	Support 4 process colors.
DCS1 (print from Quark)	Pre Sep	OK	N/A	Support 4 process colors.
DCS1 (print from Quark)	Composite	OK	OK	Support 4 process colors.
DCS2 (print from Quark)	Pre Sep	OK	N/A	Support 4 or less process color and spot colors.
DCS2 (print from Quark)	Composite	OK	OK	Support 4 or less process color and spot colors.
PDF Composite (directly to Rip)	Composite	N/A	N/A	Support 4 process colors.
EPS Composite (directly to RIP)	Composite	N/A	N/A	Support 4 process colors.
PDF Spot Composite (directly to RIP)	Composite	OK	OK	Supports spot colors.
EPS Spot Composite (directly to RIP)	Composite	OK	OK	Supports spot colors.

Format	Pre Sep / Composite	RIP	FAF	Comments
NLW Formats		N/A	N/A	Supports process and spot colors. These formats can be translated to Brisque job: ➢ Drag&Drop the scanned a LW/ NLW file + SMD file onto the **Translate LW -> Brisque Job** Hot Folder.

28 Export PS

Supported Input and Output File Formats.....326
Defining the Export PS Parameters 327

The Export PS application on the Brisque lets you convert various file formats (including Creo) into various rasterized PostScript formats. The exported PostScript files can then either be sent to disk or printed directly to an AppleTalk printer.

The output file size of the Export PS application on Brisque version 4.0 is up to 8-up (904 mm X 1130 mm).

When the Export PS application is activated, it checks that the minimum free disk space required to process the input file is available on the destination file system. The minimum free disk space required is equal to the size of the input file (Job, Page, CT or LW).

Export PS is a purchasable application, requiring a password and licensing.



Tip: Contact your local Creo Center for details.

Supported Input and Output File Formats

Export PS supports the following input file types:

- Page (CT/LW)
- Composite/Pre-separated Brisque Job
- LW only (New, Native, Handshake (TIFF BMP), TIFF/IT-LW, TIFF/IT-HC))
- CT only (New, Native, Handshake, TIFF (Full CMYK)).

Export PS supports the following output PostScript formats:

- Composite
- Pre-separated
- DCS
- DCS 2.0 Single
- DCS 2.0 Multi
- EPS.

Defining the Export PS Parameters

To define the Export PS default operation parameters:

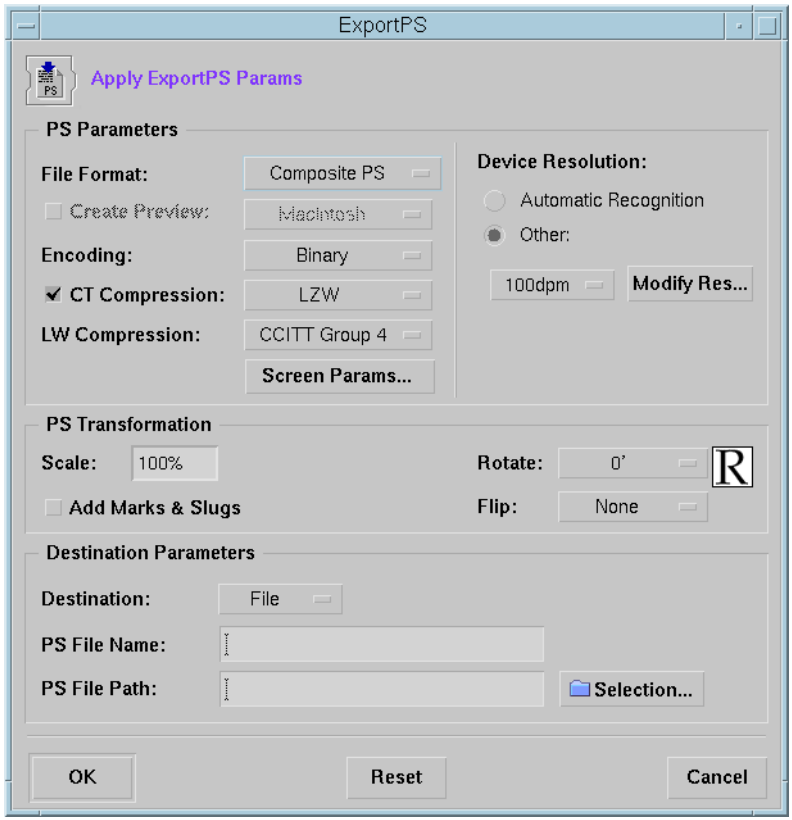
➢ from the Brisque Launch Pad, open the Operations panel, then double-click the **Export PS** icon; the Export PS window displays.

To edit the Export PS parameters for a specific job:

➢ from within the Job Ticket Editor, double-click the **Export PS** icon; the Export PS window displays.

To edit the Export PS parameters for a specific Template:

➢ from within the Template Builder, double-click the **Export PS** icon; the Export PS window displays.

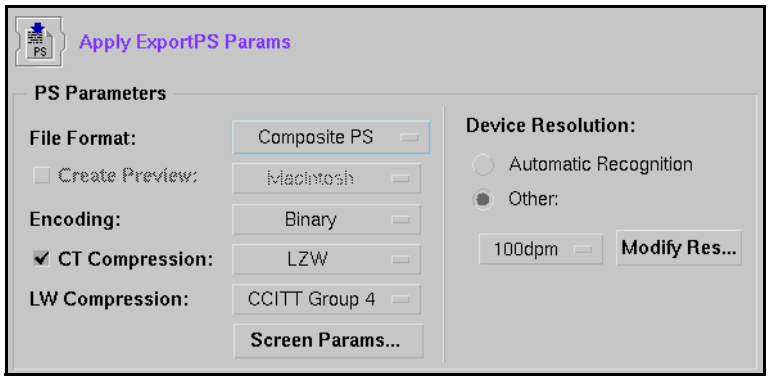


The Export PS parameters are grouped as follows:

- General PostScript parameters, including screening information
- PostScript transformation parameters
- Destination (output) parameters.

Defining the General PostScript Parameters

Define the PostScript Parameters to specify the format of the output PostScript file created by the Export PS application.



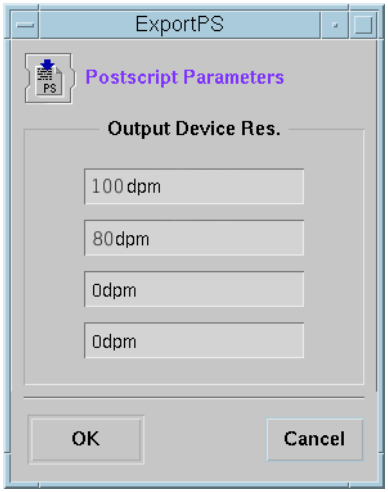
Item	Description
File Format	Determines the created PS file format. Formats are: • Composite PS • Pre-Separated • EPS • DCS • DCS 2.0 Single • DCS 2.0 Multi.

Item	Description
File Format (continue) 	**Note:** Export PS cannot export Pre-separated jobs as Composite PostScripts. You cannot manually select the Single or Multiple file format when exporting to DCS 2.0. Composite input files are automatically exported as a Single DCS 2.0 file, while Pre-separated input files are exported as Multiple DCS 2.0.
Create Preview 	Defines Preview selection. Automatically selected only when selecting DCS, DCS 2.0 or EPS file formats. Available options: **TIFF -** for Mac or PC. **Mac -** for Mac only. **Note:** When the Create Preview option is selected, you cannot print to a network printer (the Printer option from the Destination Parameters is unavailable).
Encoding	Selects a format for encoding the PS file. Available options are: **Binary** (default) or **ASCII** (increases the size of the PostScript file and is recommended for portable PostScript files).
CT Compression	Determine the compression method for CT files. The available compression methods are: **LZW** - a lossless compression method, which works best for files containing repetitive data such as text and monochrome images. **JPEG** (High, Medium-High, Medium, Medium-Low, and Low) - a lossy compression method, reducing the image quality and file size. The trade-offs are: **JPEG High -** Highest compression, smallest file size, and lowest quality. **JPEG Low -** Lowest compression, largest file size, and highest quality.

Item	Description
LW Compression	Determine the compression method for LW files. The available compression methods are: **CCITT Group 4** - a lossless compression, provides a better compression ratio with LW files than LZW **LZW** - a lossless compression method, which works best for files containing repetitive data such as text and monochrome images.
Screen Parms	Applies screening parameters to export file. For use by external users.
Device Resolution	Define the resolution of the output PS file. **Automatic Recognition** - Selected when the final device resolution is identical to the original file. **Other** - Selected when the destination device resolution differs from that of the original file. Select the appropriate resolution from the list. We recommend you do not change the resolution.

1. From the **File Format** list box, select a format.
2. From the **Encoding** list box select a type.
3. Select compression format.
    a. Select the **CT Compression** check box, then select a compression method from the list box.
    b. Select the LW compression method from the **LW Compression** list box.
4. Select the output resolution of the file.
    a. Select the **Automatic Recognition** check box if output device resolution is identical to input file resolution.
    b. If the output device resolution differs from the input file resolution, select the **Other** check box, then select the appropriate resolution from the list box.

c. To edit the Output Device Resolution list, click **Modify Res.**; the following Export PS window displays.



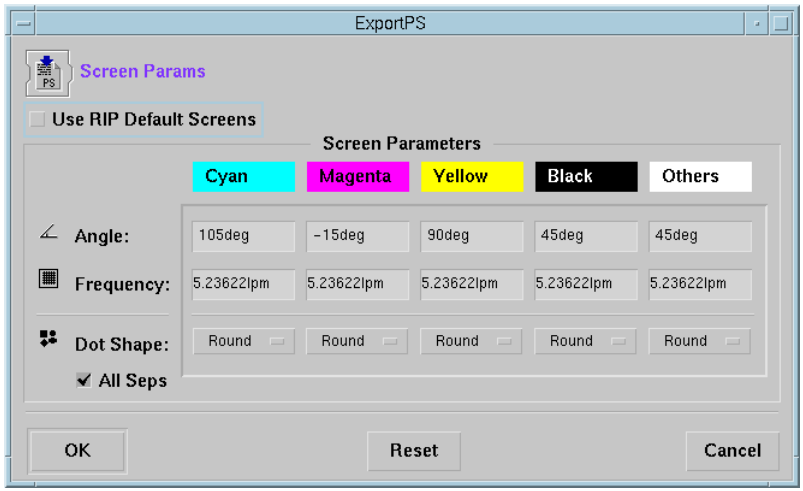
d. In the resolution boxes, type four most frequently used resolutions and click **OK**; you return to the Export PS window. The values from this window will be listed in the **Device Resolution** list box.

Defining the Screening Parameters

Define the screen parameters to include screening information within the output PostScript file.

To define the Screen Parameters:

1. In the Export PS window, click **Screen Params**; the Screen Parms window displays.



Item	Description
Use RIP Default Screens	Selects the use of the default RIP parameters.
Angle	Changes the default angle for each separation and for spot colors (Others). This option is used in order to prevent the creation of a moiré patterns.
Frequency	Defines the number of halftone cells per millimeter for each separation and for spot colors (Others). Halftone cells are the organization of the a pattern of dots that simulates gray levels or color shades on the screen into manageable structures.

Item	Description
Dot Shape	Selects the shape of the dot for each separation and for spot colors (Others), according to your output device, the resolution and the media used, as well as the type of image. The available Dot Shapes are: Round, Diamond, Ellipse, Line, Square or Cross.
All Seps	Defines the Dot Shape parameters for all the separations.

1. In the Angle box, under each separation, as well as for the spot colors (Others), define the angle of exposure.



Note: All spot colors are set to the angle defined in the **Others** box, normally 45°.

2. In the Frequency box, under each separation, as well as for the spot colors (Others), define the resolution frequency in lines per millimeter (lpm).
3. In the **Dot Shape** box, under each separation, as well as for the spot colors (Others), define the shape of the dot.
4. To collectively define all the separations, select the **All Seps** check box.
5. Click **OK**; the Screen Parameters you defined are saved and you return to the Export PS window.

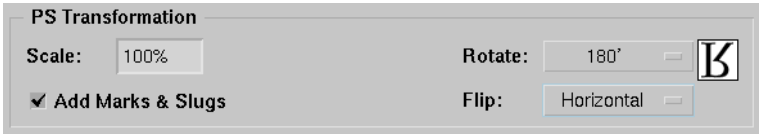


For additional information on Screen Sets, see *Chapter 40, Screen Sets*.

Defining the PostScript Transformation Parameters

PS Transformation defines the size and orientation of the output PostScript file.

Note: The PS Transformation options are not available when the Create Preview (Macintosh) option is selected.



Item	Description
Scale	Scales to assigned value during the RIP.
Add Marks & Slugs	Adds crop-marks, registration marks, and the file name to the PostScript file. If the file is Pre-separated, the Separation Name is added as well.
Rotate	Rotates file by 0°, 90°, 180°, or 270° during the RIP.
Flip	Flips the file horizontally, vertically, both or none during the RIP.

1. In the **Scale** box, type a scale you wish the file to be RIPped at.
2. To add marks and slugs to the output file, select the **Add Marks & Slugs** check box.
3. To rotate the output file, select **0**°, **90**°, **180**°, or **270**° rotation angle for the **Rotate** list box.
4. To flip the output file, select **Horizontal**, **Vertical**, **Both** or **None** from the **Flip** list box.

Note: The icon on the right represents the output file, to help you realize its direction.

Designating the Output Destination

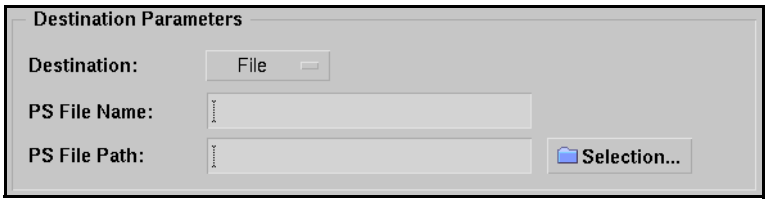
You can save the output file as a PostScript file (Print to File) or output the converted output PostScript file directly to a printer.

You can export the PostScript file to a printer anywhere on the network. This operation, called PrintPS, is a sub-operation of the Export PS application. PrintPS is automatically activated whenever you print a PostScript file to a network printer. PrintPS works independently from the Export PS, and both applications run on a separate queue, so that files can be printed and converted at the same time. This comprehensively increases throughput.

Saving to File

To save the PS to file:

1. In the Export PS window, click the **Destination** list box and select **File**; a file oriented Destination Parameters section is displayed.



Item	Description
Destination	Determines the file destination. Option are: FIle or Print. The relevant boxes in the section change according to the selection.
PS File Names	The destination file name.
PS File Path	The destination file path.
Selection	Selects a path from a browser. When a selection is made from the browser, the **PS File Path** box displays the selection.

2. In the **PS File Name** box, type the PS File Name (Optional).
3. Click **Selection**; the browser displays.
4. Select a path from the browser and exit; the path is displayed in the **PS File Path** box.



Note: If you do not enter in a filename and/or a file path, the Export PS application will create the output PostScript file with the name of the input job, and will save it in the original path of the job. However, this will overwrite any PostScript file with the same name existing in that path.

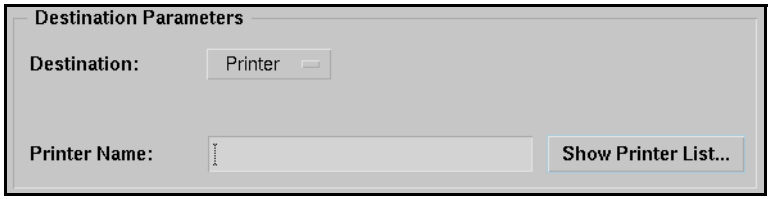
5. Click **OK** to send the PostScript file to disk.

Printing to a Network Printer

Note: Printing to a network printer is not possible when the Create Preview (Macintosh) option is selected in the Export PS window. You will not be able to select the Printer option from the Destination menu list. Accordingly, when printing to network printer, the Create Preview (Macintosh) option is unavailable (see *Defining the Export PS Parameters* on page 327).

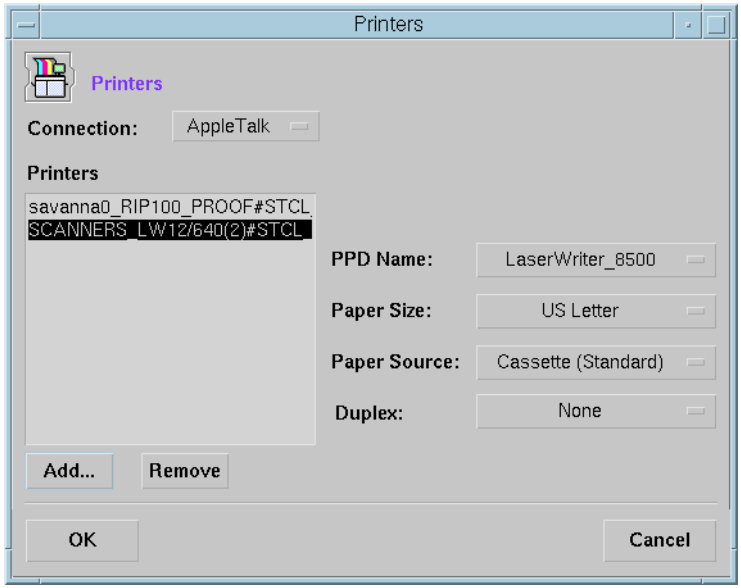
To print the PS file to a network printer:

1. In the Export PS window, click the **Destination** list box and select **Printer**; a printer oriented Destination Parameters section is displayed.



Item	Description
Destination	Determines the file destination. Option are: File or Print. The relevant boxes in the section change according to the selection.
Printer Name	The selected printer's name.
Show Printer List	Selects a printer from a list or defines a new one.

2. Click **Show Printer List** to select a printer from the Export PS Printers window that displays.



Item	Description
Connection	Defines the printer communication method. The options are: AppleTalk - basically a Macintosh network. LPR (Line Printer) - the network of remote PC printers.
Printers	Displays the list of defined printers.
PPD Name	Displays the name of a specific printer definition, which include the paper size, source and duplex options.
Paper Size	Displays all the paper sizes defined in the PPD.
Paper Source	Displays all possible paper sources defined in the PPD.
Duplex	Allows dual sided printing if so required, as defined in the PPD.

3. From the **Connection** list box, select the connection Type.
4. From the Printers section, click a printer to select it, then click **OK**; you return to the Export PS window and the selected printer is displayed in the **Printer Name** box.
5. Click **OK** to print the PostScript file to the printer you selected; the system prompts you to confirm the printing.



Note: If a PostScript file fails to print, you can resubmit it to the printer. The PrintPS sub-step of the Export PS will start automatically and print the file.

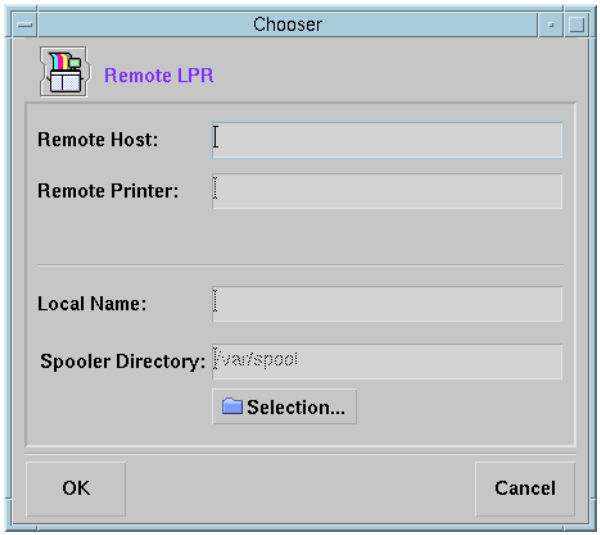


Tip: If you open the Export PS window to resubmit the PostScript file and you click OK, the Export PS will begin processing the file again.

Adding a printer to the list

To add an LPR printer to the list of printers:

1. From the **Connection** list box, select **LPR** and click **Add**; the LPR Chooser window displays.



Item	Description
Remote Host	TCP/IP address or DSN name of remote printer.
Remote Printer	Remote printer name.
Local Name	User defined name. Will show up in the printer list.
Spooler Directory	Location of spooler on the Brisque. Local data volume is recommended.
Selection	Launches a browser, from which to select the spooler directory.

2. In the **Remote Host** box, type the TCP/IP address or DSN Name of remote printer.
3. In the **Remote Printer** box, type the Remote Printer name (optional).
4. In the **Local Name** box, type a logical name. This name will show up in

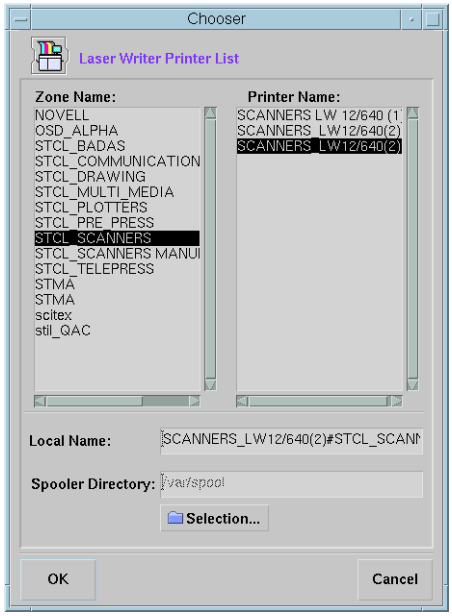
the printers list.

5. To define the spooler location, type the location in the **Spooler Directory** box, or select a directory, using the browser, by clicking **Selection**.

6. Click **OK**; the printer will show in the Export PS Printers window.

To add an AppleTalk printer to the list of printers:

1. From the **Connection** list box, select **AppleTalk** and click **Add**; the AppleTalk Chooser window displays.



Item	Description
Zone Name	Displays all the network zones.
Printer Name	Display the list of printers for each zone.
Local Name	User name
Spooler Directory	Location of spooler on the Brisque. Local data volume is recommended.
Selection	Launches a browser, from which to select the spooler directory.

2. In the Zone Name section, click a zone; the zone is highlighted and a list of the printers assigned to selected zone appear in the Printer Name section.
3. To select a specific printer, click one in the Printer Name section.
4. In the **Local name** box, type the local printer name.
5. Select a Spooler Directory by typing the name in the **Spooler Directory** box, or click **Selection** and select a directory from the browser.
6. Click **OK**; the printer will show in the Export PS Printers window.

29 Store

Defining the Store Parameters....345
Storage Modes....348

The Store application lets you store Jobs, Imposition files, Packing files, post-RIP files, and plate-mark files. Once a job is stored in the Storage database, it can be easily retrieved at a later time, with it's contents, for reprocessing.

Three modes of storage are available:

- **Short Term (also referred to as Work in Progress) -** stores the job files on a local or mounted Brisque volume until you are ready to continue to the next operation in the workflow.
  A Short Term store may be placed on the workflow after Proof and before Expose. For example, when the approval of a customer is required prior to the final output.
- **On Press -** stores a job after a Plate Expose and keeps the files available for an immediate plate remake.
  This option is ideal in the event of an unexpected plate emergency. Once the print job that uses the selected plates is successfully completed, you manually release the files from this protected state, and then promote the files to a longer storage mode status.
- **Long Term -** collects job files for long term storage.
  The Storage Manager application keeps a log file for each stored job. Each log file contains information about the destination location of the entire contents of a job and its files, and a time log of the storage operation. The archive file is stored either on a local or remote Brisque volume, Creo Server, or Jaz disk.

Each storage mode has unique properties and limitations, each intended for different types of workflows. You choose the storage mode according to your workflow.
(For more detailed information, see Storage Modes on page 348).

The Store operation can be inserted at different stages in the workflow. More than one Store operation can be part of a single automated workflow, however two Store operations cannot be implemented directly after one another, without any operation separating them.

When **Update Storage Manager** is selected in the Store Parameters window, stored files are managed by the Storage Manager in a storage database. The Storage Manager lets you track the location of all the elements making up a stored job. The Storage Manager categorizes stored jobs based on their storage mode status.
(For more information on how to use the Storage Manager, see *Chapter 30, The Storage Manager*).

Defining the Store Parameters

You can edit the system Store default operation parameters, or you can edit the Store parameters for a template or for a specific job.

To edit the Store default operation parameters:

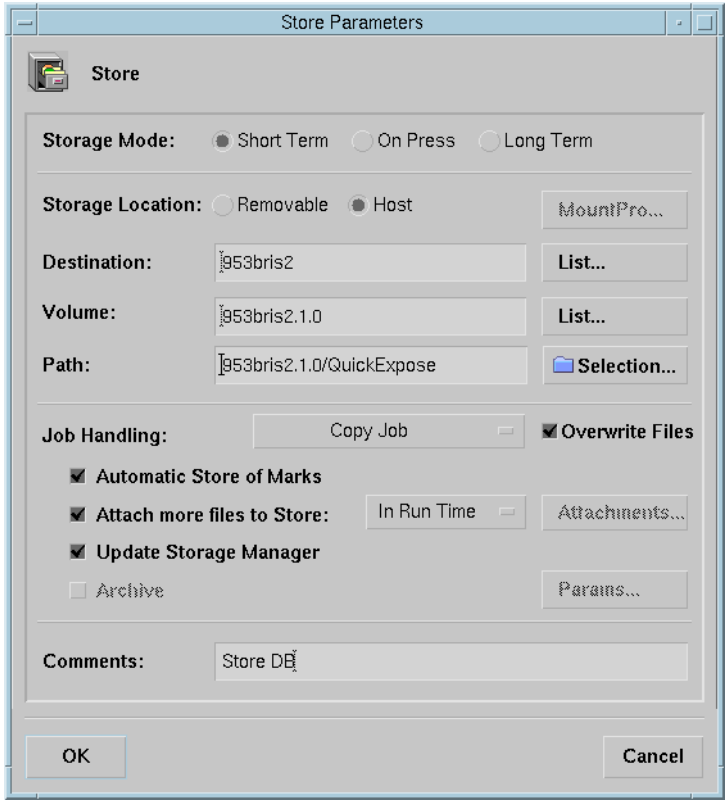
➢ From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the Operations panel, then double-click the **Store** icon; the Store Parameters window displays.

To edit the Store parameters for a specific Template:

➢ From within the Template Builder, double-click the **Store** icon; the Store Parameters window displays.

To edit the Store parameters for a specific Job:

➢ From within the Job Ticket Editor, double-click the **Store** icon; the Store Parameters window displays.



Item	Description
Storage Mode	Stores jobs via a unique workflow. **Short term -** temporarily stores jobs during an ongoing production. **On press -** stores files while a job is being printed on the press. **Long term -** store completed jobs that do not require further processing.
Storage Location	Lets you store jobs to a local or remote Brisque volume, or to a mounted Jaz disk.
MpountPro	Launches the MountPro application which defines the location of a host storage device.
Destination	Defines a remote station location. **List -** selects a remote station from a browser.
Volume	Defines a volume for storage location. **List -** Selects a volume from a browser.
Path	Displays the path of a selected volume. **Selection -** defines the path for a selected volume.
Job Handling	(Relevant for Imposition Jobs, only). Defines how the Brisque handles files during the Store operation. **Copy -** copies the elements of a job to a selected destination. **Move -** Moves he the elements of a job to a selected destination. **Move Job and Original Pages -** same as Move, deletes Pages and CT or LW files from source location after move.
Overwrite Files	Automatically overwrites existing files with same name at destination.
Automatic Store of Marks	Stores Marks along with Pages, for Imposition Jobs, only.

Item	Description
Attach more files to Store	Stores additional files along with the stored job. **Now -** performs it immediately. **In Run Time -** Performs the storage when the Store operation queue is activated.
Update Storage Manager	Commands the Brisque to update the Storage Manager database.
Archive	Currently not available.
Comments	Allows you to add your own comments and add them to the storage log file.

Storage Modes

Each storage mode has unique properties which make them appropriate to different workflows.

Available Storage Modes:

- Short Term (Work In Progress)
- On Press
- Long Term.

To choose a Storage Mod:

➢ from the Store Parameters window, select a storage mode.





Important: Jobs stored prior to Expose in the On Press or Short Term storage modes, may be promoted to a longer storage mode status, via the Storage Manager application. Jobs stored in the Short Term storage mode can be moved to the On Press storage mode. Jobs stored in the Long Term storage mode cannot be demoted to a shorter storage mode status.
(See *Chapter 30, The Storage Manager* for a detailed explanation of the rules governing the modification of the storage mode status of a Job).

Short Term (Work in Progress)

Short Term lets you temporarily store jobs during an ongoing production. Normally you apply a Short Term store after a Proof or Improof, prior to Expose. This storage mode is useful during a production workflow that requires the customer's approval of a Proof or Improof prior to final output. The typical time period for a Short Term storage operation would normally last in the range of a week to two weeks, however a job may be kept at this storage mode for as long as you want. A Short Term store can also occur after an Expose.

Short Term storage is performed on a local or remote Brisque volume. Short Term storage on a Jaz disk is not supported.

On Press

On Press mode lets you store files while a job is being printed on the press. A Store operation in this storage mode generally occurs after Plate Expose. The advantage of On Press storage is the ability to rapidly retrieve print data after a Plate Expose for a quick plate remake in case of a plate emergency (for example, plate press malfunction, or a broken plate)



For more information on this feature, see *Chapter 30, The Storage Manager*, *Quick Re-Expose of a Stored Job* *on page 377*.

On Press storage normally lasts for several hours to days, and the job remains in an on-hold state until you release it from this state by promoting the stored job to a higher storage mode status or by advancing the job to the next step in an automated Job Ticket workflow.

On Press allows you to store files on a local or remote Brisque volume, but not on a Jaz disk. This enables quicker retrieval of the job elements in the event of a quick re-Expose.



Important: You can only perform a Quick Re-Expose on a stored job that has already been through at least one Plate Expose output step.

Long Term

Long Term storage lets you store completed jobs that do not require further processing. You cannot perform a regular Brisque operation on a job once it has been stored in the Long Term storage mode. The archived file cannot be handled by the Brisque until all the job elements are retrieved from the archive and placed in a Brisque volume. The log file in the Storage Manager lets you locate and retrieve the Storage Location of the archived job and its attached elements.

The Long Term storage mode lets you to store a job on a local Jaz drive, as well as to any mounted Brisque volume.

(To understand the unique properties and limitations for each Storage Mode, see *Storage Mode Properties and Limitations* *on page 366*).

Defining the Storage Location

After Expose, the Brisque lets you store jobs to a local or remote Brisque volume, or to a mounted Jaz disk.

The available Storage Location devices:

- **Removable -** this option is available for a mounted Jaz disk in the Long Term storage mode only.
- **Host -** any Brisque volume, local or remote, on any host on the network. This option is available for all Storage modes.

To define the Storage Location:

➢ Select **Removable** or **Host** in the upper section of the Store Parameters window.



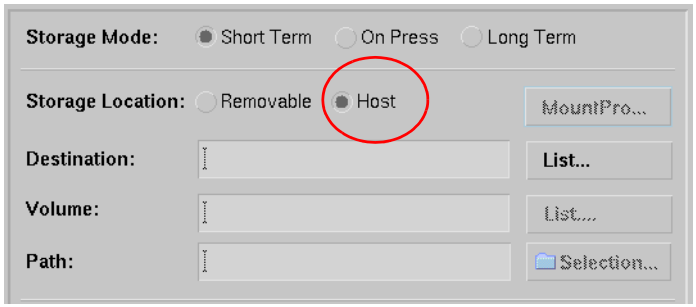
Note: The Storage Location parameters in the *Storage Manager window vary according to the selected storage mode.*
If your Brisque is not part of a DNS network and you wish to work with remote Brisque volumes, then before working with the Store application, define the remote Brisque as Host on the local Brisque, and define the local Brisque as a Host on the remote Brisque(s). (For more details, see *Adding a Remote Station to the Host List on page 352*).

Defining a Host Storage Device

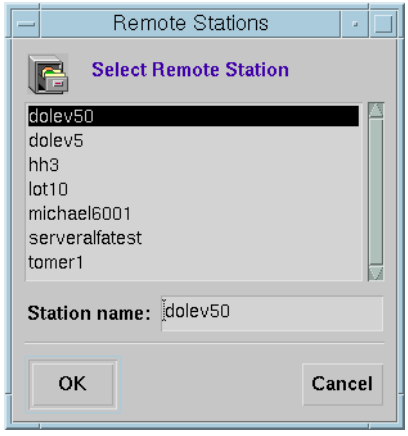
The Storage Location parameters define where jobs and their elements are sent upon reaching the Store operation.

To define the location of a Host storage device:

1. From the Store Parameters window, select **Host** as Storage Location.

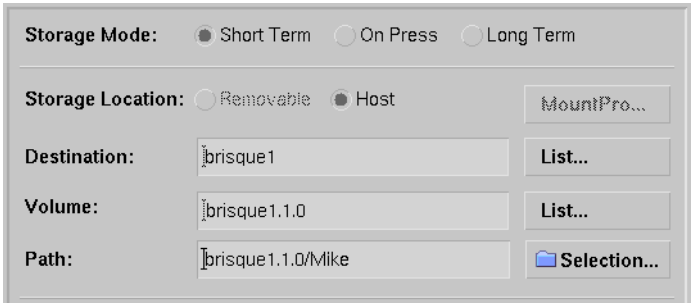


2. In the **Destination** box, type the destination of the host, or click the Destination **List** button; the Remote Station window displays, showing the available remote stations.



Note: Only stations that have been defined as hosts via the SMIT utility appear in the *Remote Station* window.
(To add an additional remote station to the list, see *Adding a Remote Station to the Host List on page 352*).

3. Select the Brisque station from the list, and click **OK**; you return to the Store Parameters window. The name of the selected remote station appears in the **Destination** box. The default data volume of the selected station appears in the **Volume** and **Path** boxes.
4. To select a different volume, click the Volume **List** button, then select the destination volume on a selected remote station, from the list box.
5. To change the path of the selected volume, click the Path **Selection** button; a standard browser is displayed, showing the folders that exist on the selected remote volume. Use the browser to designate the destination folder for files to be processed by the Store operation.





Tip: We suggest that you define a Storage folder that is situated on a Brisque volume dedicated for Storage only. This folder should have restricted access and be strictly maintained. This is because the Quick Re-Expose and Resume to Queue operations first retrieve the stored file elements from the storage Destination Location folder and then copy them back to the Source Location before continuing.

Adding a Remote Station to the Host List

Unless you are working on a DNS network, before you can use the Store operation, the remote station must be defined as a host on the local Brisque, and the local Brisque must be defined as a host on the remote station. In addition, if you want the names of remote Brisque(s) to appear in the Remote Station list, define them as hosts on the local Brisque. Adding a station to the Host List is a setup step that only needs to be performed once.

To add a station to the Host List:

1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the Services panel.
   a. Double-click the Terminals icon; the Brisque Password window displays.
   b. In the **User** box, type `root`, and in the **Password** box, type your password; the SMIT window displays with the Hosts Table open.

   Or,

   a. From the Services panel, double-click the **SMIT** icon; the Brisque Password window displays.
   b. In the **User** box, type `root`, and in the **Password** box, type your password; the SMIT window displays.
   c. The default user name is `ripro`.
   d. Select **Communications Applications and Services**.
   e. Select **TCP/IP**.
   f. Select **Further Configuration**.
   g. Select **Name Resolution**.
   h. Select **Hosts Table**.
2. Select **Add a Host**; the Add a Host Name window displays.
3. Type the IP address in the **IP Address** box and host name in the **Host Name** box, then click **OK**; an expanded Add a Host Name window displays.
   (If you do not know the Host Name and IP Address, check with your system administrator, or see *Determining the Host Name and IP Address of a Remote Station* on page 354).
4. When the **running person** icon indicates that the attempt to add a remote station is complete, click **Done** to return to the Add a Host Name window.

To add another remote station to the Host list:

➢ Repeat the above procedure.

To exit the SMIT utility:

1. Click **Cancel**.
2. Select **Return to: System Management**.
3. Click **Cancel** again.

Determining the Host Name and IP Address of a Remote Station

In order to mount a a remote station volume, you must know its name. In order to add a station to the Host List, you must know its Name and IP Address. You can look up this data in the SMIT utility on the remote station.

To determine a Brisque's Name and IP Address:

1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the Services panel.
2. From the Services panel, double-click the **SMIT** icon; the Brisque Password window displays.
3. In the User box, type `root`, and in the Password box, type your password; the SMIT window displays.
4. The default user name is `ripro`.
5. Select **Communications Applications and Services**.
6. Select **TCP/IP**.
7. Select **Minimum Configuration & Startup**.
8. From the Available Network Interfaces list, select your communication interface according to your Brisque platform:
   - **EN0** - E30, 43P-150 (Tiger II), 6F1 (Condor) and 44P-170 (Hammerhead)
   - **EN1** - F50 and 43P-140 (Tiger I).



Tip: If you are not sure which setting to use, advise with your hardware technician or system administrator.

The Minimum Configuration & Startup window appears.

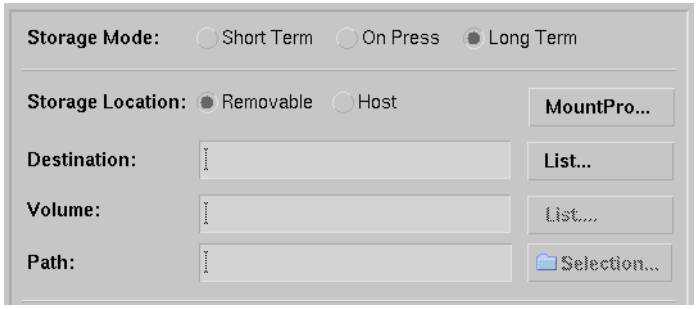
9. Make a note of the information displayed in the top two boxes:
   - The **Hostname** box displays the host name.
   - The **Internet Address** box displays the Internet address. (Disregard the **Internet Address** box that appears further down, under the **Nameserver** heading).
10. To exit the SMIT utility, click **Cancel**, select **Return To: System Management**, then Click **Cancel** again.

Defining a Removable Storage Device

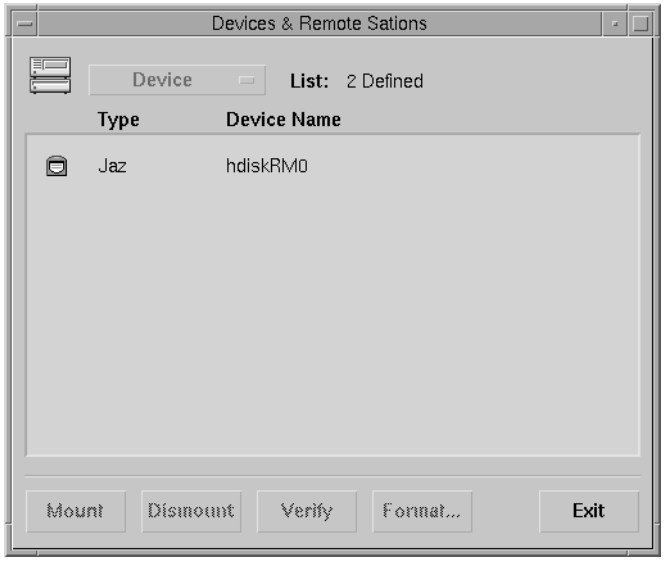
When you are working in the Long Term Storage Mode, you can archive the job elements on a locally mounted Jaz disk, while the job log file is stored in the Storage database. This option is only available for jobs stored in the Long Term storage mode.

To define the location of a Removable storage device:

1. Select the Storage Mode Long Term option.
2. Select the Storage Location Removable option.



3. Click **MountPro**; the Devices and Remote Stations window displays. (The system automatically detects locally connected Jaz drives).



Note: You cannot automatically type the Jaz disk name in the **Device Name** box. In order to select a device you must define the Jaz via the MountPro application.

Note: The **list** box in the upper left corner of the window remains inactive, displaying the Device mode. When MountPro is activated from the Store Parameters window, this list is inaccessible.

4. Select a Jaz device from the list, and click **Mount**; the selected Jaz device appears as a destination in the Storage Parameters window.

For detailed descriptions of other Jaz-related functions, such as formatting a Jaz disk and dealing with a corrupted Jaz disk, see *Chapter 13, Mount Pro*.

Archiving Jobs for Long Term Storage

The Brisque lets you store the elements of a Job file including other attached files.

To store a Job for Long Term storage:

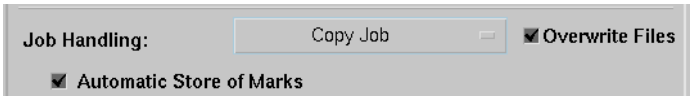
1. From the Store Params window, select **Long Term** storage mode.
2. Select **Host** for storage location.
3. Define the destination volume and path.
   (See *Defining a Host Storage Device on page 350*).
4. To continue defining the Store parameters, see *Job Handling* on page 358.



Note: Attach any file to the Job to be archived using the Attach Files feature. (For instructions, see *Attaching Files to the Stored Job on page 360*).

Job Handling

The Job Handling parameters define how the Brisque handles files during the Store operation. The Store operation copies or moves the stored job elements to the defined destination location.



To include the original pre-RIP (for example, PDF or Postscript files) and plate-mark files for any stored Job, use the Attach more files to Store option.
(For more information on attaching files, see *Attaching Files to the Stored Job on page 360*).

Copy

To copy all the elements of a Job to the selected Destination Location:

- From the **Job Handling** list box, select **Copy**; the original job file remains in its source folder.

Move

To move the job to the selected destination location:

1. From the Job Handling menu list, select **Move**; during the Store operation the files are first copied to the destination location, and then deleted from the source folder. The Pages and CT/LW files of an Imposition job are also copied to the destination location, but are not removed from their source folder.
2. To automatically delete these files, select **Move Job and Original Pages**.

Move Job and Original Pages

To move an Imposition Job:

- From the **Job Handling** list box, select **Move Job and Original Pages**. With this option, the same function applies as the Move option described above, but here the Pages and CT/LW files are deleted from the source location after the entire content of the Imposition Job is moved.

Overwrite Files

To automatically overwrite existing files in the same folder that contain the same name with the new files:

- Select the **Overwrite Files** check box.



Important: If this option is cleared, and files with the same name exist in the folder, the Store operation fails.



Note: The Copy and Move options also apply to any files or Marks selected with the Attach Files option.

Automatic Store of Marks

To automatically store Marks:

- Select the **Automatic Store of Marks** check box (for Imposition Jobs, only).

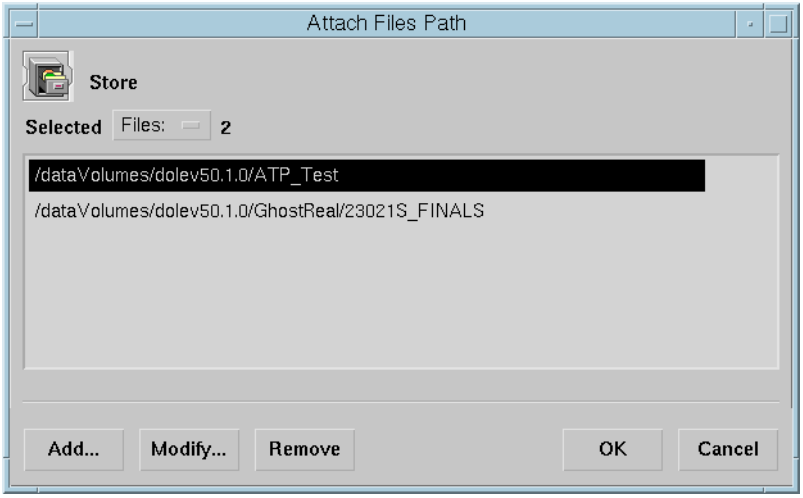
Attaching Files to the Stored Job

Use this option to store any file (for example, pre-RIP and marks files) along with the stored job file elements.



To attach Files and Marks to a Store operation:

1. From the Store Params window, select the **Attach more files to Store** check box.
2. From the **Attach more files to Store**, select the time schedule for the operation:
   - **Now -** the Attachments button on the right is enabled.
   - **In Run Time -** the Attachments button remains disabled. The Attach Files Path window will display automatically when the Store operation queue is activated during an automated workflow. At that point, you may select the files you wish to attach.
3. If you select **Now**, click **Attachments**; the Attach Files Path window displays.



If you select **In Run Time**, you will perform the rest of the procedure when the Store operation queue is activated during an automated workflow. (The Attach Files Path window will automatically appear).

4. To define the files or marks to be attached, select **Files** or **Marks** from the **Selected** list box, in the Attach Files Path window.
5. Click **Add**.
    a. If you Selected **Files**, the Attach Files browser window displays. Use the browser to select the files to attach to the Store operation. (For additional information on the Brisque's browser, see *Chapter 3, Managing Files and Folders*).
    b. If you Selected **Marks**, the Marks Inventory window displays. Select all the Marks to attach to the Store operation and click **OK**.
6. In the Attach Files Path window, click **OK** to confirm and complete the Attach Files command.

To remove an attached file from the selected file list:

➢ From the Attach Files Path window, select the file in the files list and click **Remove**.

To modify the parameters of an attached file in the selected list:

1. From the Attach Files Path window, select the file in the file list and click the Add button; either the Attach Files window or Marks Inventory window appears.
2. Perform the appropriate changes to your selected file.

Updating the Storage Manager

The local Storage Manager on the Brisque allows you to monitor and manipulate all stored files contained in the Storage database. Using the Storage Manager you can quickly retrieve an entire file set for an output job stored in a predefined volume folder. Stored jobs are viewed in the Storage Manager according to the storage mode, defined for each job.

To command the Brisque Store to update the Storage Manager database:

- Make sure the **Update Storage Manager** check box is selected (selected by default).



To command the Brisque to perform the Store operation without updating the Storage Manager database:

- Clear the **Update Storage Manager** check box.
  You can use this option as a limited alternative to the Send operation. For example, use Store to rapidly send the entire contents an Imposition job (Imposition job and associated Pages) to a removable Jaz device. Since the Store operation updates the assign file of the job being processed, you can then work with the Imposition job directly from the Jaz disk.



Important: Performing a Store with the **Update Storage Manager** check box cleared, will prevent you from being able to manipulate the job from the Storage Manager.

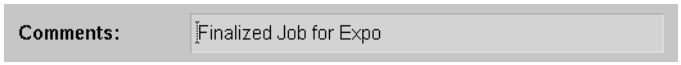
To launch the Storage Manager on the Brisque:

- from the Brisque Launch Pad, open the Management Tools panel and double-click the **Storage** icon; the Storage Manager window displays. (For a detailed explanation of this tool, see *Chapter 30, The Storage Manager*).

Adding Comments

The Store application allows you to add your own comments regarding the current Store operation. For example, information which may help to identify the job easily at a later stage. This is optional.

These comments will be saved to the storage log file, and can be viewed at any time from the Storage Manager window, by clicking **Show Info**.



To add user-defined comments:

- in the **Comments** box, type any text for comment.

Monitoring the Store Progress

When the Store operation is reached in the Job Ticket workflow, the Brisque automatically begins the storage procedure. The Brisque created additional Store folders in the defined path on the selected storage device, and the progress of the Store operation is displayed.

The Storage Folder on the Destination Volume

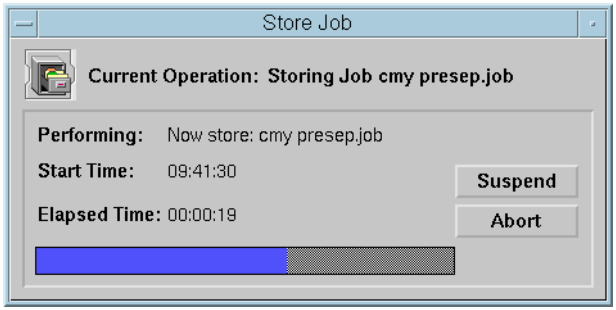
The Brisque automatically creates an additional folder under the path you defined for the Destination Storage Location from within the Store Params window. The stored job elements are stored in this folder. The name of the new folder is derived from the selected Job Name separated by an underscore from the name of the Source Brisque station it was taken from. The folder is also given the .store extension. For example, the job **ProjectOfBob.job** is given the **ProjectOfBob.job_Brisque1.store** storage folder.

If file attachments were chosen to be part of the stored job, more folders are created within the new Store folder, each for File Attachments and for Mark Attachments.

Controlling the Progress of the Store Operation

Once the Store operation is initiated, the Brisque gathers the defined job elements and attached files (if selected) from their source location(s) and store them in the defined destination location.

While this is taking place, the progress of the Store operation is displayed in the Store Job window.



To pause the Store operation:

- Click **Suspend**; the Store operation is put on hold and the button changes from `Suspend` to `Resume`.

To resume the Store operation after Suspend:

- Click **Resume**.

To cancel the Store operation:

- Click **Abort**, then in the confirmation dialog that follows, click **OK**.

Viewing the Store Progress

The local Queue Manager also reflects the status of a job up to and including the Store operation. Once the job is successfully sent to a remote Brisque for further processing, the job either disappears from the local Queue, or appears in the Completed list with the word `Store` in the Status column. You can monitor the progress of a job that was stored to a remote Brisque, by displaying the remote Queue on the local Brisque.

To view the Store progress from the Queue Manager:

- In the Queue Manager window, in the Now Running list, look for the Store operation displayed under the Current column while the retrieval process is being performed.

Storage Mode Properties and Limitations

The following table details the properties and limitations for each of the three Storage modes: Short Term, On Press, and Long Term.

Parameters	Storage Mode		
	Short term	**On Press**	**Long Term**
Typical Length of Storage	1 - 2 weeks	Several hours to ~2 days	Unlimited
Typical Length of Storage	Before Expose	After Plate Expose	Last operation in workflow (after successful Job completion)
Store Location: Local/Remote Brisque volume	✓	✓	✓
Store Location: Jaz disk			✓
Ability to launch regular Brisque operations on the stored Job	✓	✓	
Allows Quick Re-Expose functionality		✓	
Enables Storage Mode modification	To Long Term or On Press	To Short or Long Term	

30 The Storage Manager

The Expanded Storage Manager 369
Viewing Jobs.....371
Handling Jobs in the Storage Database 377

The Storage Manager application lets you monitor and manage Job files that have been previously stored in the Storage database on the local Brisque via the Store application.

The Storage Manager lets you perform the following actions on Jobs stored in the Storage database:

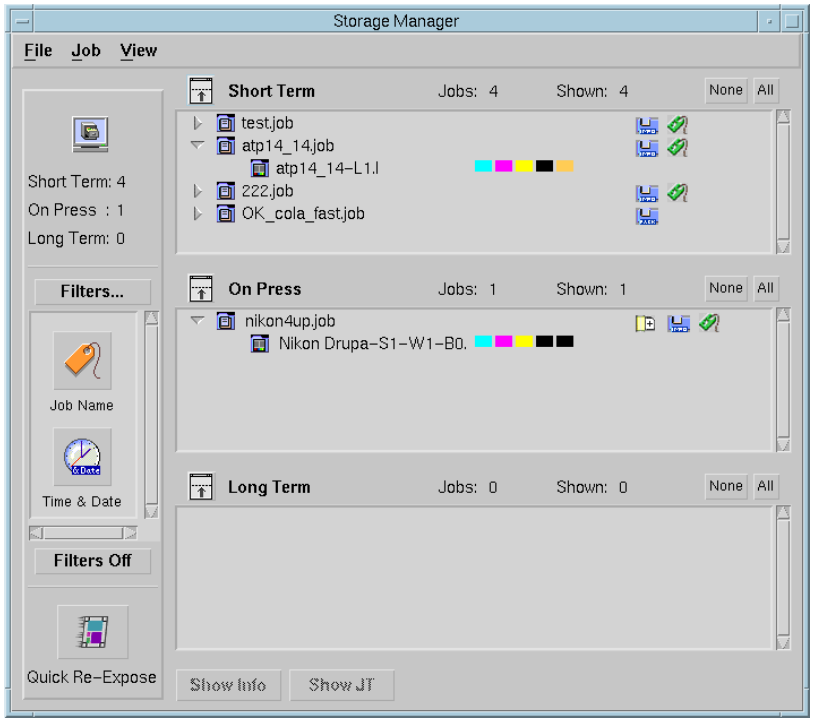
- View the Storage parameters of any Job stored in the Storage database. These parameters include: the source and destination location of the stored job elements, the date and time of storage, and user comments about the stored job.
- Quickly change the storage mode status of a stored job.
- Rapidly perform plate remakes (quick re-Expose) of an output job, in the event of a plate emergency.
- Quickly identify the locations of the original pre-RIP, post-RIP, and plate-marks files attached to the elements of a stored job, for quick retrieval of the files.
- Remove jobs from the Storage database list.
- Continue a job to the next defined operation in an automated workflow, using the Resume to Queue command.

The Expanded Storage Manager

The Storage Manager window is the interface from which you monitor and manipulate the jobs stored in the Storage database.

To activate the Storage Manager:

1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the Management Tools panel.
2. double-click the Storage icon; the expanded Storage Manager window displays.



Note: The upper left panel in the Storage Manager window displays the total number of stored Jobs in the Storage database.

The Storage Mode Panes

The jobs stored in the Storage database are categorized into three groups, according to their user-defined storage mode:

- Short Term
- On Press
- Long Term.

The Storage Manager window is divided into three sections, based on these storage modes.

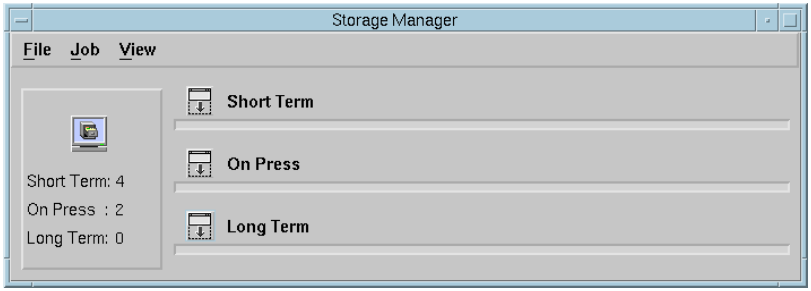
(For more detailed information on storage modes, their limitations and properties, see *Chapter 29, Store*).

Above each Storage Mode section the following boxes appear:

Box	Function
Jobs	Displays the total number of stored Jobs for each Storage Mode category.
Shown	Displays the total number of stored Jobs currently displayed in the category, based on the display filter you have selected.

To minimize the Storage Manager window:

➢ Click **Minimize** icon in the upper left corner of each Storage Mode section.



Viewing Jobs

The Storage Manager lets you view the stored jobs list in various ways.

The Job Storage Icons

To the right of each job, a number of icons appear. These icons display the properties and contents of the stored Job:

Icon	Property of Stored Job
	Indicates that the stored job is an Imposition Job.
	Indicates that the stored job is a Packaging Job.
	Indicates that the stored job is a regular job.
	Indicates that another Brisque operation follows the Store operation in the current Job Template workflow.
	Indicates that the stored job contains other attached files. (see *Chapter 29, Store* for more information).
	Indicates that the stored job contains attached marks (see *Chapter 29, Store* for more information).

Viewing the Layout and Separation Data of a Stored Job

The Storage Manager lets you to view the layout or separation data of any job displayed in the Storage database.



To view the Layout/Separation data of a stored Job:

➢ Click the triangle to the left of the job name; a branch appears below the selected job, displaying all the layouts for that job and their CYMK and Spot color (if any) separations.

To collapse a Layout branch of a selected file:

➢ Click the same triangle you clicked to open the branch.

Viewing Jobs with the Filters

Use Filters to regulate which Jobs are displayed in the expanded display area of the Storage Manager.
(For detailed information on how to use Filters, see *Chapter 2, Introduction to the Desktop, Brisque Filters* on page 18).

To generate a list of Jobs according to a specific filter:

➢ From the Filters panel in the Storage Manager window, click one of the following Filter icons:

Icon	Property of Stored Job
	**Job Name filter -** Use this filter to generate a list of stored Jobs from the Storage database with a particular Job name.
	**Time and Date filter -** Use this filter to generate a list of stored jobs within a defined time period.



Note: You cannot use the Job Name and Data and Time filters simultaneously to generate a list that meets the combined parameters of both filters.

Viewing More than One List at a Time

You can open more than one Storage Manager windows on the Brisque desktop at a time. In each window you can select a different filter and/or expand different Storage Mode panels.

To open additional Storage Manager windows:

1. From the Brisque Launch Pad, open the Management Tools panel.
2. double-click the **Storage** icon; an additional Store Management window displays.

Viewing the Store Information of a Job

You can view the Store Information of any job that is listed in the Store Manager window.

Store Information includes:

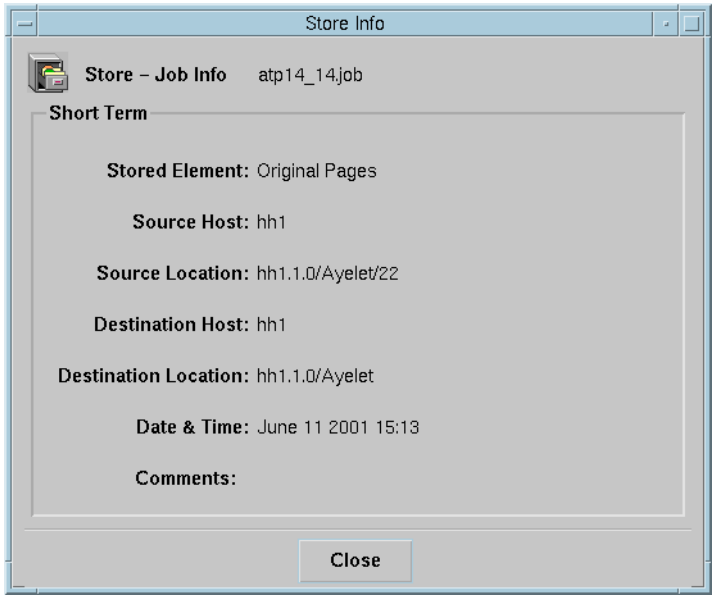
- The storage location of all the elements of a stored job.
- Relevant data pertaining to the storage mode status and the content of the stored job.
- The date and time the Store operation was performed.
- The source location of the job before the Store operation was performed.
- Comments about the stored job.

To view the Store Information of a Job listed in the Storage Manager:

1. Select the job from the **Storage Manager** list.
2. At the bottom of the Storage Manager window, click **Show Info**.



Or, from the View menu, select **Show Info**; the Store Info window displays.



In addition to the Job Name and the Storage Mode status of the selected job, other Storage Information is displayed within the main area of the Store Info window, as described next:

Stored Element

Displays which elements of the selected job were sent to storage. It does not display the actual file names of these elements, however the Storage Manager does keep an internal log of these files.

- **Original Pages -** refers to the original Pages of a job
- **Attached Files -** refers to any attached files defined by the Store parameters. These may include pre-RIP and plate-mark files.

Source Host

Indicates the source Brisque, from where the elements of the stored job were taken for the Store operation.

Source Location

Indicates the volume and path of the source location, from where the file elements were taken before the Store operation. The original file elements can be found here (provided that the files were not moved, deleted, or changed since the Store operation) if either of the Job Handling parameters were selected in the Store operation:

- **Copy -** For an Imposition or non-Imposition job
- **Move -** For an Imposition job only. The original files of an Imposition job are removed from the source location when **Move Original Pages** is selected.

When another Brisque operation follows the Store operation, all the file elements of a job are copied to the source location for further processing.

Destination Host

Displays the location of the Brisque that contains the stored elements of the selected job.

Destination Location

Displays the volume and path to the stored elements of the selected job. As long as the stored files are not renamed or moved from this folder, the stored elements remain there. You can always use the File Manager to verify whether the files are in fact still there. When a Brisque operation is

performed after a Store operation in an automated workflow, the Brisque copies the stored elements from the destination location back to the source location for further processing.



Important: When you send a stored job for Quick Re-Expose or advance a job to the next step in its job template workflow (Resume to Queue) from the Storage Manager, the Brisque first retrieves the elements of the stored file from its destination location and copies them back to its source location before continuing. This is done regardless of whether the job elements already exist in the source location. It is therefore important not to move or modify any of the elements belonging to a stored job from within their destination location folders.



Tip: We suggest that you dedicate a unique folder, situated on a Brisque volume, that is used for storage only. This folder should have restricted access and be carefully maintained.

Date and Time

Displays the date and time the Store operation was performed on the selected job.

Comments

Displays comments about the Stored job. The displayed comments comprise the type of the job and the user-defined comments (from the Store application).

- **Job Type:**
  - **Imposition Job -** An Imposition Job stored on a local or remote Brisque volume.
  - **Packaging Job -** A Packaging Job stored on a local or remote Brisque volume.
  - **Usual Job -** A non-Imposition Job stored on a local or remote Brisque volume.
- **User-defined Comments -** Entered in the **Comments** box in the Store window.

Handling Jobs in the Storage Database

The Storage Manager lets you manipulate jobs that are listed in the Storage Manager window.
These operations include:

- Quickly performing plate remakes (Quick Re-Expose option).
- Advancing the workflow of a job following the Store operation (Resume to Queue option).
- Opening the Job Ticket of a job directly from the Storage Manager.
- Changing the storage mode status of a stored job.
- Deleting stored jobs from the Storage database.

Selecting a Job

Before you can handle a job, you must first select it.

To select a Job from the list:

➢ Click it; the job title is highlighted.

To clear a job:

➢ Click it again.



Note: You cannot select multiple jobs from the Storage Manager in order to perform batch operations.

Quick Re-Expose of a Stored Job

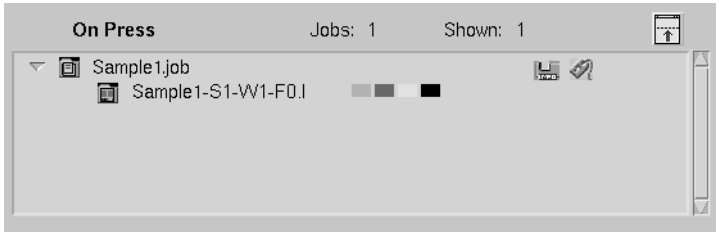
The feature lets you perform rapid plate remakes for jobs that appear in the On Press list in the Storage Manager window. This option is very useful in the event of a plate press emergency, such as a damaged plate.

It is possible to use the Quick Re-Expose feature only if all the following conditions are met, otherwise the operation will not continue (the Brisque will inform you if this occurs):

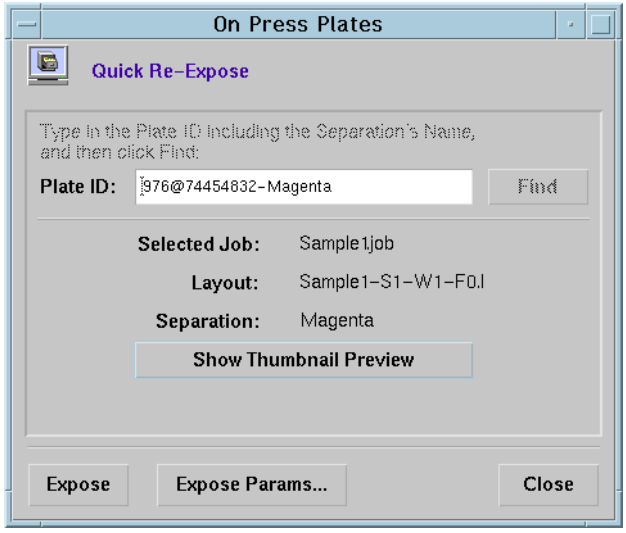
- The selected job is currently stored in the On Press storage mode.
- The selected job has been through at least one Expose output.
- The selected job and all of its elements are stored on a local Brisque volume.

To perform a plate remake of a stored job using the Quick Re-Expose feature:

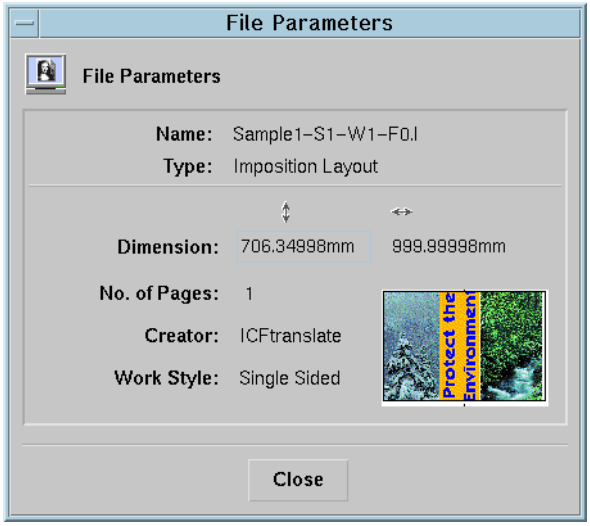
1. From the On Press section of the Storage Manager window, click the triangle to the left of the job name; the Layouts data for the selected file will branch down.



2. From the Layouts branch, double-click any of the CMYK or Spot Color separation boxes; the On Press Plates window appears with the Plate I.D. and Layout info of the selected job separation.



3. To view the information about the file in a thumbnail outline, click **Show Thumbnail Preview**. This option currently supports Imposition jobs only.

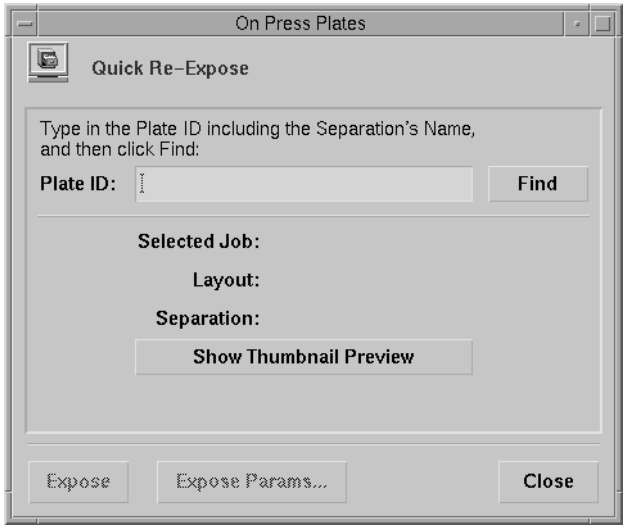


4. Click **Expose** to automatically submit the job to Expose using the predefined Expose Parameters.
   Or, click **Expose Params** to display the Expose window from where you can define new Expose Parameters before sending the job to Expose.

Alternatively:

1. From the Storage Manager window, click the **Quick Re-Expose** icon in the lower left side of the window; the On Press Plates window displays.

Note: The Quick Re-Expose button can only be used for jobs that have a predefined Plate ID mark. Plate ID marks can only be given to jobs that have already been sent to Plate Expose.



2. Click **Show Thumbnail Preview** to view the information about the file, including a thumbnail outline preview of the selected layout.
3. In the **Plate ID** box, type the plate ID number followed by the separation color extension (the separation layout you wish to re-Expose), then click **Find**; the Brisque retrieves the job from On Press storage and displays its layout data and the **Expose** and **Expose Params** buttons are enabled.
   For example, `123@16031998.Cyan` (separation extension with initial capital).

For more information on the Plate ID mark, see *Chapter 43, Exposing to Plate, Printing the Plate ID* on page 216.

4. Click **Expose** to automatically Expose the job using the predefined Expose Parameters.
   Or, click **Expose Params** to display the Expose window, where you can define new Expose parameters before Exposing the job.



Note: Once the Quick Re-Expose operation has been initiated, the Brisque will first determine whether all the conditions required for a Quick Re-Expose have been met (see *Quick Re-Expose of a Stored Job on page 377*).
If these conditions are not met, the Quick Re-Expose operation will not continue.
If all conditions are met, the Brisque then rapidly retrieves the elements of the stored Job from its Storage Location (Destination Location) and copies them to the Source Location.

Resume to Queue

The Storage Manager lets you control the progress of a job throughout a Job Ticket workflow. Following a Store operation, the Job workflow queue is put on hold. When you are ready to send the job to the next step in the workflow (for example to Expose), you activate the Resume to Queue feature for that job from the Storage Manager.

To verify the on hold status of a job, following the Store operation:

- From the Storage Manager window, identify the Job Ticket icon next to the selected job in either the On Press or Short Term sections.
  Or, from the Queue Manager window within the Now Running list, look for the Store operation displayed under the Current column. The next step in the Job Ticket is displayed under the Next column.

To advance a job to the next Job Ticket operation in a workflow:

1. From the Storage Manager window, select a job.
2. From the Job menu, select **Resume to Queue**; the Storage Manager retrieves the stored file elements from the storage destination location, and the Source Destination Path modify window displays.



Note: If the stored file elements have been moved from the storage destination location, the Resume to Queue operation fails.

3. Click **No** to keep the original source location path as the destination of the retrieved stored elements.
   Or, click **Yes** to modify the source location path; the Store window displays.
4. In the Store window, click **Selection**; a browser displays allowing you to modify the path.
   The progress of the retrieval is displayed in the Queue Manager window in the Now Running list. The Send operation appears under the Current column while the retrieval process is being performed.



Important: You can only modify the path of the source location for a stored job, if you define a local Brisque volume.



Note: Once the stored file elements are successfully retrieved and copied to the source location, the job will automatically continue to the next step in the Job Ticket.

Opening a Job Ticket Directly from the Storage Manager

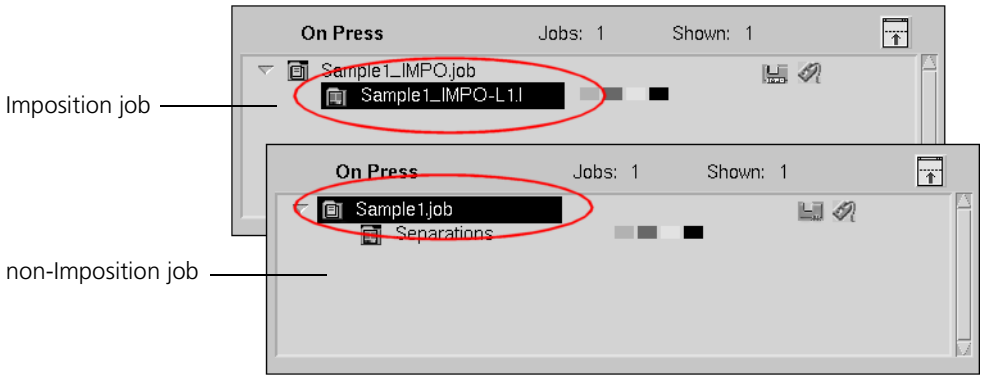
The Storage Manager allows you to open the Job Ticket of a job directly from the Storage Manager window, without having to access the Queue Manager on the Brisque.



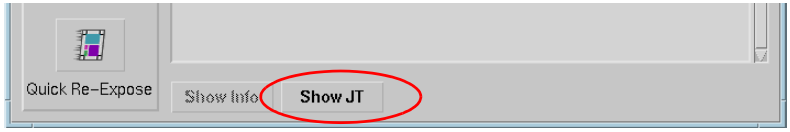
Important: This option is only available from the Layout or Separation level of a job, and not from the Job level.

To open the Job Ticket of a job directly from the Storage Manager:

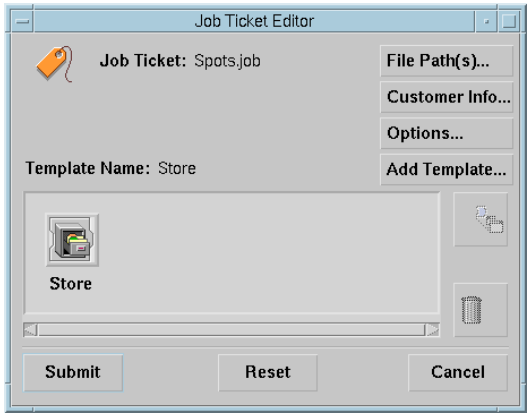
1. From the Storage Manager window, select a layout or a job whose Job Ticket you wish to view.
   For a regular non-Imposition Jobs - make a selection from the Job level.
   For Imposition or Packaging Jobs - make a selection from the Layout level.
   The **Show JT** button is enabled.



2. Click **Show JT**.



The Job Ticket Editor window appears displaying the Job Ticket of the selected separation or layout.



Performing a Brisque Operation on a Job Stored in the Long Term Mode

You cannot perform a regular Brisque operation on a job once it has been stored in the Long Term storage mode. The archived file cannot be handled by the Brisque until the job contents are retrieved from the archive and restored on a Brisque volume. The log file in the Storage Manager lets you locate and retrieve archived elements of the stored job and its attached elements from the storage location.

Changing the Storage Mode of Stored Jobs

The Storage Manager lets you change the storage mode of a job listed in the Storage Manager according to the following rules, relating to the unique properties and limitations of each storage mode.

- A job stored in Short Term mode can be moved to Long Term storage or to the On Press mode.
- A job stored in the On Press mode can be moved to Short Term storage or directly to Long Term storage.
- You cannot move a job from Long Term archive storage to any other Storage Mode.

To change the storage mode of a stored job:

1. From the Storage Manager window, select the job.
2. From the Job menu, select either **Move to Short Term Mode**, **Move to On Press Mode**, or **Move to Long Term Mode**; a Move confirmation dialog box is displayed, prompting for a change in the current storage parameters.
3. Click **Yes** to change the storage parameters; the Store Parameters window displays. Job storage location is the only parameter you can modify.
   If you click **No**, the existing storage parameters for the job will be used.
4. The Storage Manager stores the job in the selected storage location and updates the storage mode of the job in the Storage Manager list.



Important: When changing a job's storage mode, you cannot modify the predefined Attach Files or Job Handling parameters. You are only allowed to modify its storage location.

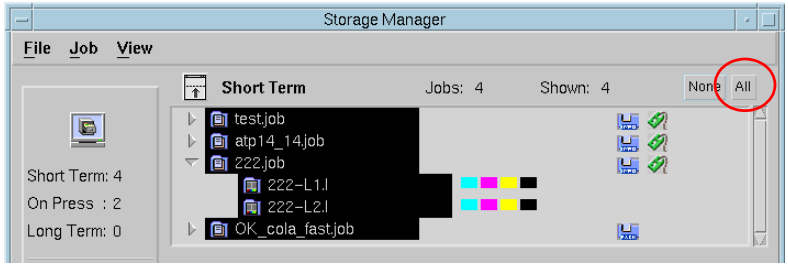
Deleting Jobs from the Storage Database

You can remove stored jobs from the **Storage Manager** list. When you remove a job from the Storage Manager, you can leave the stored files of the job in their storage location or you can delete the stored files.

Note: You can select multiple jobs to perform batch operations with the Delete Data & Remove and Remove from List commands.

To select all the listed jobs in a storage mode area:

➢ Click **All**.



To select individual jobs:

➢ hold down the CTRL key and select the jobs. Do the same to clear a selected job.

To clear all selected jobs:

➢ click **None**.

To remove a job from the Storage database list without deleting the stored files from their storage location:

1. From the Storage Management window, select a job(s).
2. From the Job menu, select **Remove from List**; a confirmation prompt follows.
3. Click **Yes** to confirm.

To remove a Job from the Storage database list and to automatically delete the stored files from their storage location:

1. From the Storage Management window, select a job(s).
2. From the Job menu, select **Delete Data and Remove**; a confirmation prompt follows.
3. Click **Yes** to confirm.

31 Versioning on the Brisque

Overview 388
Using Creo Versioning XT 390
Using the Versioning Module 403
Outputting Version Jobs 414

Overview

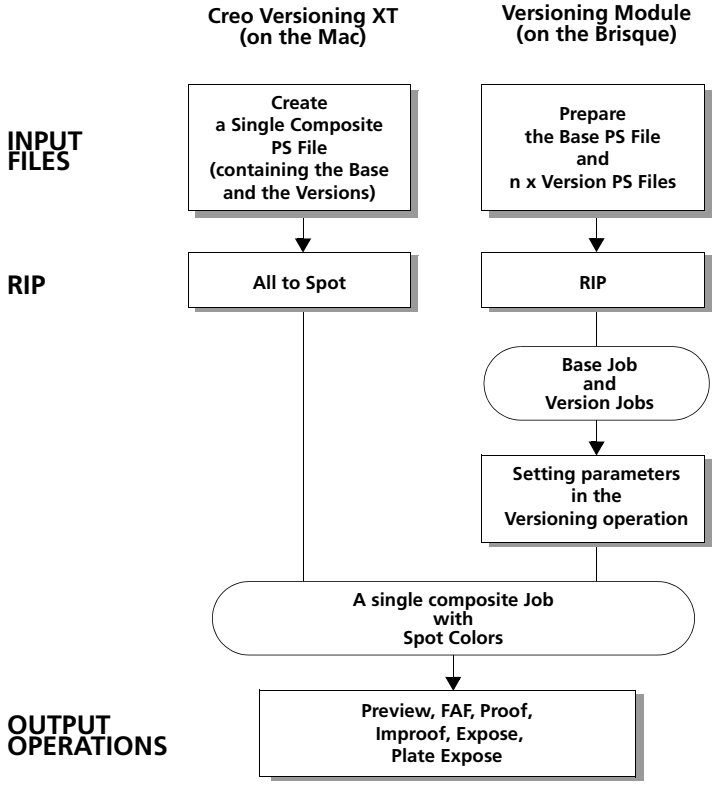
This chapter describes the workflows that support versions or zones on the Brisque.

- A versioned Job contains general data - a Base (composed of LW and CT) and variable data - Versions (usually composed of LW but may also contain CT. Currently, CT is not supported).
- The Base contains the common data and the Versions contain the data that changes (for example, the different languages prepared for the same brochure).

To support versions, you use the Creo Versioning XT (on the Macintosh) or the Versioning module (on the Brisque).

Note: Both workflows are password protected and require a license obtainable from your local Creo Care Center.

The following figure describes the supported versioning workflows.



The Creo Versioning XT

The Creo Versioning XT is a Macintosh-based extension developed for QuarkXPress™ Version 4.1 and higher.

The XTension is designed for customers who have full control over the entire versioning workflow (from the design stage to the creation of the PostScript file). It enables users to keep several named versions of textual content within a single QuarkXPress document.
The creation and assignment of versions is managed via the extension Versioning palette.(The workflow is described in detail in *Using Creo Versioning XT* on page 390).



Note: Only text boxes that were created using the Text tool in QuarkXPress are handled by the Creo Versioning XT.

The Versioning Module

The Versioning module (that uses the Versioning operation on the Brisque) is a workflow designed for customers who receive separated PostScript files from several sources and need to combine them into one composite Job composed of a Base and Versions. (The workflow is described in detail in *Using the Versioning Module on page 403*).

Output Operations

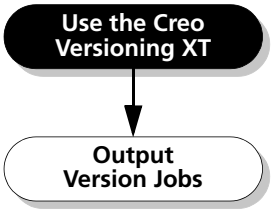
The outcome of both workflows is a single Brisque Job in which the variable data is shown as additional special separations (spot colors) in the LW file.



Note: Variable separations in files that were generated by the Versioning module are always printed as Overprint. Text color in files that were generated by the Creo Versioning XT is printed as Overprint or Knockout, as defined in the Trap Information settings in QuarkXPress. The background color (of the text box) is printed as Overprint.

The output of the versioning process is supported by the following Brisque operations: Preview, FAF, Proof, Improof, Expose, Plate Expose and Screen2Go. (For further details, see *Outputting Version Jobs on page 414*).

Using Creo Versioning XT



The Creo Versioning XT is a Macintosh-based extension developed for QuarkXPress™ Version 4.1 or higher. It is designed for customers who have full control over the entire versioning workflow (from the design stage to the creation of the PostScript file). It enables users to hold several named versions of textual content within a single QuarkXPress document. The creation and assignment of versions is managed via the Versioning palette.

Note: Only text boxes that were created using the Text tool in QuarkXPress are handled by the Creo Versioning XT.

At the end of the design the one composite PS file produced holds both the Base and the version data.

Note: Any element in the QuarkXPress page to which a Version is not assigned will be part of the Base.

Creating the PS File (on the Macintosh)

Before starting, proceed as follows:

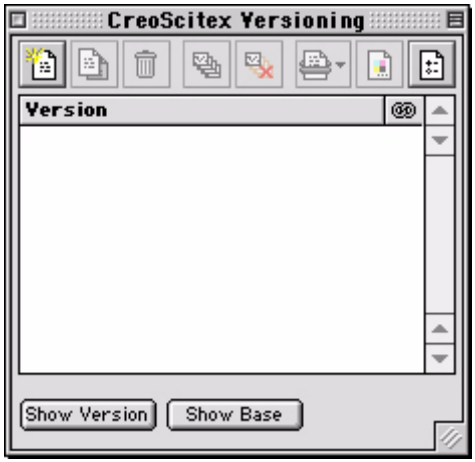
1. Install the Creo Launchpad™ 2.0 (optional).
2. Drag the Creo Versioning XT into the **QuarkXPress XTension** folder.
3. Launch QuarkXPress™ (version 4.1 or higher).
4. Activate the Creo Versioning XT.

Note: If the Creo Launchpad is not in view, first select **Show Creo Launchpad** from the View menu.

Click the **Versioning** icon on the Creo Launchpad.



Or, if the Creo Launchpad was not installed, select **Show Creo Versioning Palette** from the **View** menu; the Creo Versioning palette opens.

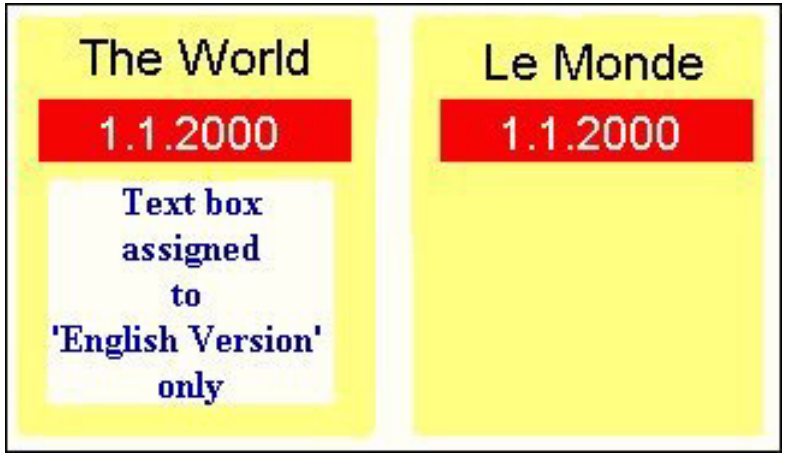


When using the XTension, you perform the following steps:

- Create a new version (refer to *Create a new version* on page 392)
- Assign a text box to the version you created (refer to *Associate Text Boxes to Versions on page 394*)
- Duplicate the version you created in order to edit it (refer to *Duplicate an Existing Version on page 395*)
- Check the colors in the version (refer to *Display Version Color Information on page 397*)

- Print the version to create the composite PS file (refer to *Set Versioning Preferences* on page 400).

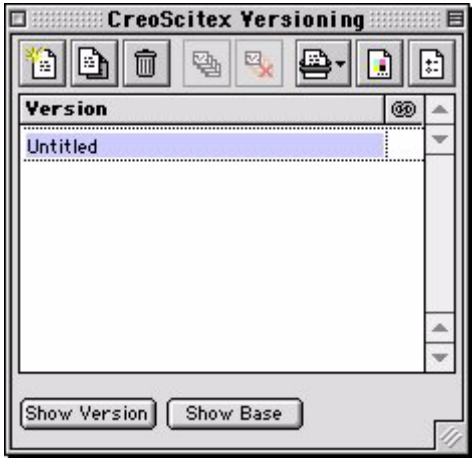
Note: You may change preferences at any stage of work (refer to *Set Versioning Preferences* on page 400).



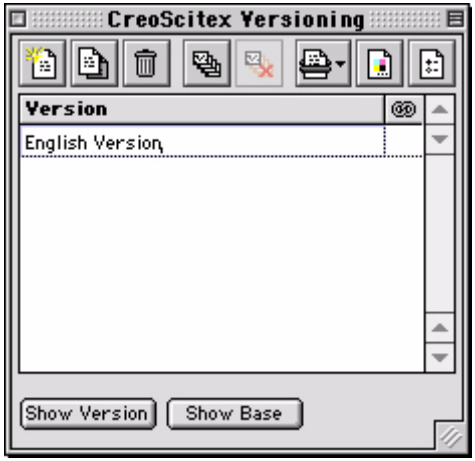
Sample English and French versions

Create a new version

1. Click (**Create new version**). An entry named Untitled appears in the palette.

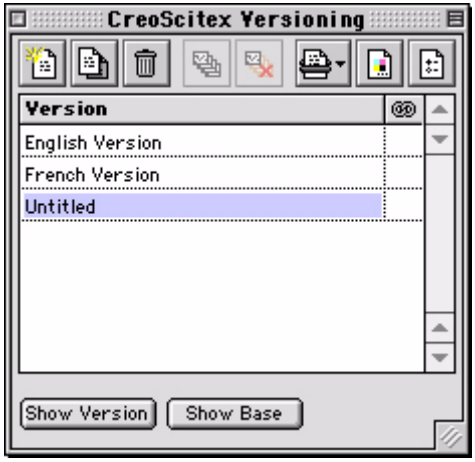


2. Type a new name for the version (for example, `English Version`) renaming Untitled.



3. Press ENTER.

4. Continue in the same manner to create and name as many versions as required.



To delete an existing version:

1. Select one or several versions listed in the palette.
2. Click  (**Delete version**); the following message appears.



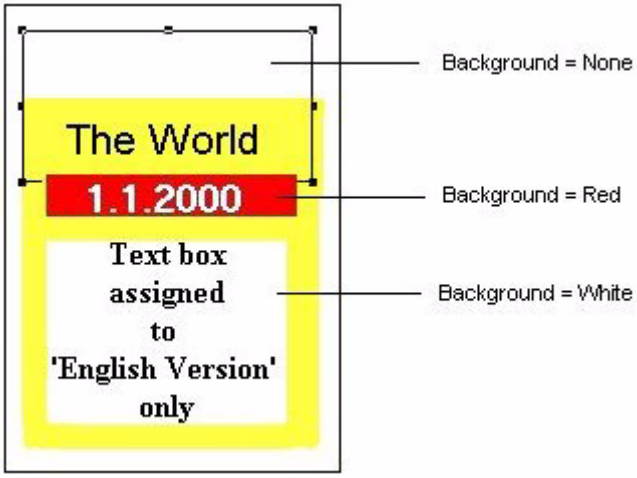
3. Click **Delete**; the names of the selected version(s) are deleted from the list. The data is removed from text box(es) that are associated with the deleted version(s). The text box(es) remain visible and are now part of the Base.

Associate Text Boxes to Versions



Note: All the elements on the QuarkXPress page, except for text elements that were assigned to versions, are part of the Base.

1. Select a text box (created using the QuarkXPress text box tool).



2. Click  (**Add box to version**) to associate the data in the selected text box with the active version (the one selected in the palette).

Note: The background color in the text box also becomes a part of the version.

Or, click  (**Remove box from version**) to disassociate the data in the selected text box from all its associated versions; the following message appears.

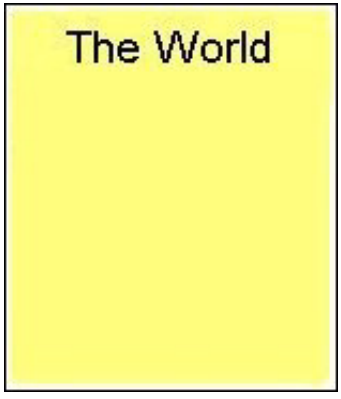


3. Click **Remove**; the data is removed from the selected text box. The text box remain visible and is now part of the Base.
4. Continue in the same manner to associate or disassociate other text boxes.

Note: You may select several text boxes to associate (or disassociate) at once. When disassociating, data remains in the text box that was selected when you clicked **Remove box from version** (and becomes part of the Base).

Duplicate an Existing Version

You duplicate a version when several versions are placed on the same location on the page (for example, to insert text in a different language in each version).



To duplicate an existing version:

1. In the palette, select the name of the version to be duplicated (for example, **French Version**).
2. Click  (**Duplicate version**); the new version, **<original_name > 1**, appears in the list (in this case, **English Version 1**).





Note: You can now rename the duplicated version by typing a new name directly over the existing name.

The duplicated version is associated with all the text boxes of the version that was duplicated.

3. Rename **English Version 1** to **French Version**.
4. If required, change the content of one or several text box(es) in the duplicated version.



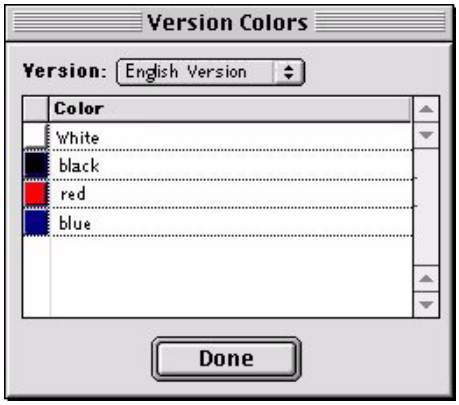
To Edit Version Data:

1. Click Show Version to highlight in gray all the text boxes associated with any version on the page.
   Or, click Show Base to highlight in gray all the elements not associated with any version (elements belonging to the Base).
2. Select the name of the relevant version on the palette; the versioned data appears in the associated text box(es).
3. Select a text box and modify the content as required.

Note: If you delete a text box, the associated versions remain listed in the palette.

Display Version Color Information

1. Click (**Version Colors...**); the Version Colors window displays.



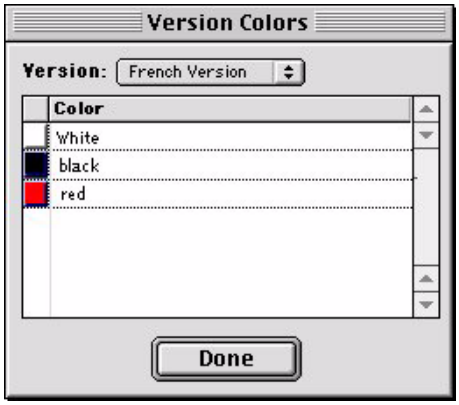
The window lists the colors used in the selected version (for example, the colors in English Version).

Note: The version colors are displayed for informational purposes only. The listed colors represent the number of temporary spot separations that will be created at print time. By default, the background color of all text boxes in QuarkXPress is White.

2. Toggle the **Version** popup to switch to another version (for example, **French Version**).



The window lists the colors used in the selected version.



3. Click **Done** to close the window.

Link Text Boxes

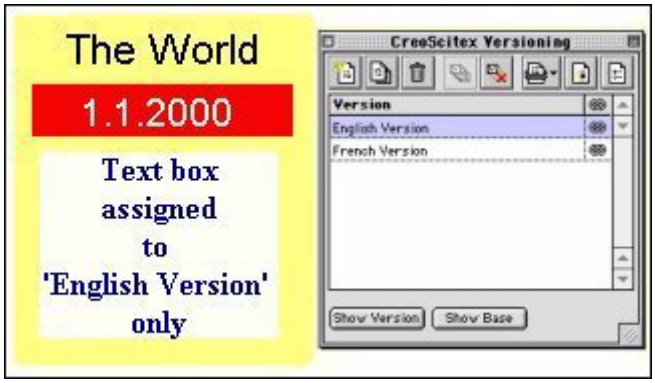
You may want to link a text box of a certain version to share its content with another version.

Note: The **Allow version linking** option in the Versioning Preferences window must be selected in order to perform the following steps.

1. Select one or several text box(es) to be linked (for example, text boxes of French Version).
2. Click the  column of the version to which you want to link the text box(es) (for example, English Version); the following message appears.



3. Click **Link**; the icon appears in the column of both the original version and the linked version. The text box content of the version being linked (in this case, French Version) is lost.



Note: There is no limit to the number of versions that can be linked together. Changing the background color of a linked text box affects it in all its associated versions.

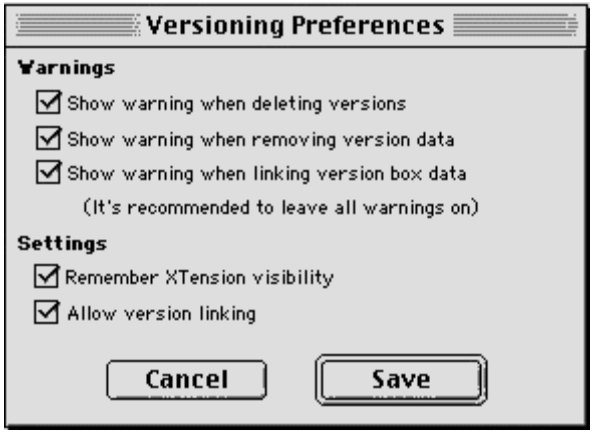
4. To unlink a version, select the text box and click the column of the version to be unlinked. The cursor switches shape.

   The icon is removed from the column.

Note: The data in the selected text boxes is duplicated and now appears in both versions.

Set Versioning Preferences

1. Click  (**Versioning preferences**); the Versioning Preferences window displays (with the following options selected by default).



2. Select or clear the check boxes as follows:

Warnings

- Select one or several of the check boxes if you want to be warned when performing the corresponding action.
- Clear one or several of the check boxes if you do not want to be warned when performing the corresponding action.



Note: It is recommended to retain all warnings.

Settings

- Select **Remember XTension visibility** to retain the state of the Creo Versioning palette (open or closed) for the next time QuarkXPress is opened.
- Clear **Remember XTension visibility** to disable the automatic opening of the Creo Versioning palette the next time QuarkXPress is opened.
- Select **Allow version linking** to enable the linking of text boxes.
- Clear **Allow version linking** in order not to enable the linking of text boxes.

3. Click **Save** to keep your changes.

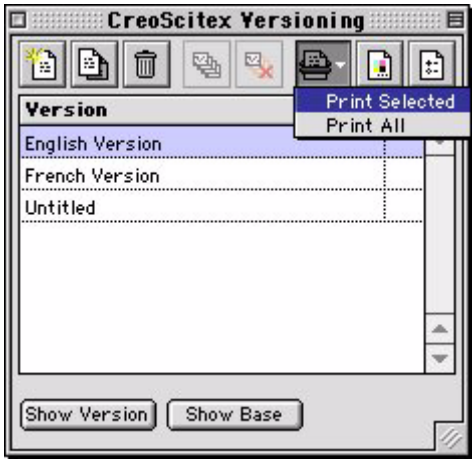
Generate the PostScript File

Note: To initiate the generation of the PostScript file, you click the Versioning palette **Print** button. Printing via the QuarkXPress Print command does not generate versioned PostScript information.

1. Click  (**Print...**).
2. Select the appropriate printing option from the popup.

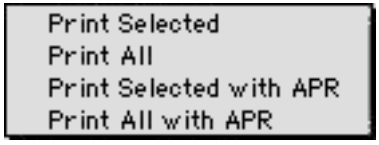


Select **Print Selected** to print the data associated with the version(s) currently selected in the Versioning palette.



Select **Print All** to print the data associated with all the versions on the page.

3. If the Creo Print XT is installed, two additional options appear on the popup, as follows:



Select these options so that, prior to printing, the settings in the Creo Print XT are incorporated (as if you clicked APR Print on the Creo Print XT palette).



Note: The settings in the Creo Print XT are incorporated, even if the palette is closed.

4. The standard QuarkXPress Print window displays. Set the required options and click **Print.**



Note: The Base is printed in any case.

RIPping the Composite PS File



Note: Make sure you obtain the relevant password; in the absence of a password, variable separations are handled as regular (non-versioned) spot separations.

You RIP the single composite PS file using the **All to Spot** option.



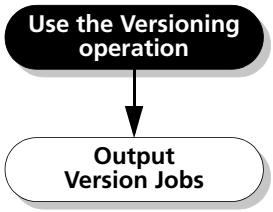
For additional information on RIP operations, see *Chapter 18, RIP*.



Note: Currently, the Specific option is not recommended.

The resulting RIPped file is a single Brisque Job in which the variable data is shown as additional special separations in the LW file.

Using the Versioning Module



The Versioning module (that uses the Versioning operation on the Brisque) is a workflow designed for customers who receive separated PostScript files from several sources.

After RIPping (in the standard way) the Base PS file(s) and version PS files into Base Job(s) and version Jobs, you access the Versioning parameters and set them as required.

The outcome of the Versioning module is one or several composite Jobs (each containing the Base and its versions).

Note: Only one separation is extracted from each version Job and used in the Versioning process (the first separation encountered is extracted, in the following order; spots, process color K, process color Y, process color M, and last is process color C). All Jobs (both version and Base Jobs) must have the same LW resolution.

The Versioning module supports the following modes:

- Job View mode is used if the input consists of one Base Job. The Job can be either single-paged (in which case, the associated versions must also be single-paged) or multi-paged (in which case, the associated versions must also be multi-paged).
- Page View mode is used if the input is composed of several Base Jobs. Alternatively, this mode is used if the input Base Job is single-paged but the associated versions are multi-paged (or vice versa).

Note: The View mode is set in the Versioning window.

Preparing Input Files

Note: A certain version file can be associated with one Base file only.

Prepare the PS files (intended to be RIPped) as follows:

- If you intend to use Job View mode, you do not have to follow naming conventions.
- If you intend to use Page View mode, the file names must follow the naming conventions described below. If they do not, they can be renamed in the Versioning window.

Using Naming Conventions

The naming conventions differ if Base Replacement is required in the Versioning process. Base replacement occurs when one or several pages in the Base file are replaced.



Note: Renaming a multi-paged Job automatically renames all its pages; renaming a page automatically renames all the pages in the same Job and also the name of the Job itself.

Components of File Names

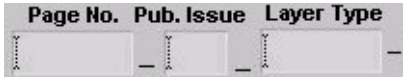
Component	Mandatory	Usage and notes
Page No.	Yes	Page number or page range. Composed of up to seven (7) characters in the following formats: 1, 01, 001, 12, 012, 100, 01-15, 001-015, 003-007, 3-7, 01-8, 120-150 (the dashes separating ranges have to be inserted manually).
Pub. Issue	No	Composed of up to four (4) characters, used by the customer to identify the project.
Layer Type	Yes (version files only)	Composed of two (2) characters: **BS** (for the Base) **TX** (for versions handling text) **PR** (for versions handling prices)
Layer ID	Yes	Composed of up to three (3) characters, used by the customer to identify the language (or price revision).
Base Rep.	Yes (for variable files only)	Base Replacement. Composed of one (1) character, **V**, followed by a number between 1 and 9 (the number associates the variable Base with the related version files).

Note: All naming conventions are not case sensitive. The explanations below relate to the characters preceding the .ps file extension.

Naming Conventions - without Base Replacement

Note: Make sure not to replace a dash by an underscore (or vice versa).

The name of the Base file should be composed of the following components (separated by a dash or an underscore) as shown below:

Name of Base file 

The name of the version file should be composed of the following components (separated by a dash or an underscore) as shown below:

Name of version file 

Examples - Base and version Jobs (for versioning without Base Replacement)

01-25_10E_Tx-Eng.job

01-25_10E_Pr-Lav.job

01-25_10E_Bs.job

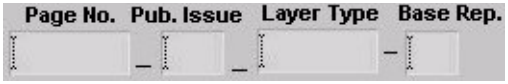
01_5B_Tx-Eng-P1.p

01_5B_Pr-Lav-P1.p

01_5B_Bs.job

Naming Conventions - with Base Replacement

The name of the Base files should be composed of the following components (separated by a dash or an underscore) as shown below:

Name of Base file 

Example - Base and version Jobs (for Versioning with Base Replacement)

In the following example, a non-variable Base Job (A) contains 5 pages, while the variable Base Job (B) contains 1 page. The English version Job contains 5 pages, while Page No. 4 should be merged on the fly with Base Job B. The French and Italian version Jobs, each contain 5 pages, to be merged with Base Job A.

Input Jobs

Non-variable Base Job (A)	Variable Base Job (B)
01-05_bs.job	04_bs_V1.job
|_ 01-05_bs-P1.p	|_04_bs_V1-P1.p
|_ 01-05_bs-P2.p	
|_ 01-05_bs-P3.p	
|_ 01-05_bs-P4.p	
|_ 01-05_bs-P5.p	

English version Job	French version Job (Italian version Job has similar structure)
01-05_tx-Eng_V1.job	01-05_tx-Fre.job
|_ 01-05_tx-Eng_V1-P1.p	|_ 01-05_tx-Fre-P1.p
|_ 01-05_tx-Eng_V1-P2.p	|_ 01-05_tx-Fre-P2.p
|_ 01-05_tx-Eng_V1-P3.p	|_ 01-05_tx-Fre-P3.p
|_ 01-05_tx-Eng_V1-P4.p	|_ 01-05_tx-Fre-P4.p
|_ 01-05_tx-Eng_V1-P5.p	|_ 01-05_tx-Fre-P5.p

Output Jobs

01-05_bs_ver.job	04_bs_V1_ver.job
(P1, P2, P3 & P5 contain Base+ Fre + Itl + Eng; P4 contains Base + Fre + Itl only and no Eng)	(P4 contains Base from 04_bs_V1-P1.p+ Eng from 01-05_tx-Eng_V1-P4.p and no Fre or Itl)

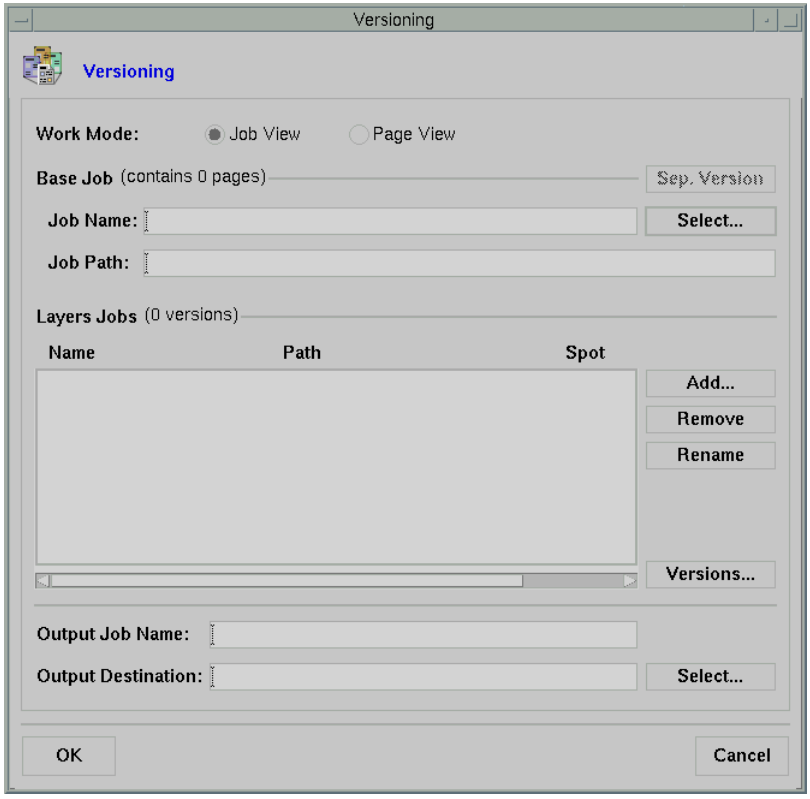
Setting the Versioning Operation Parameters

To access the Versioning parameters:

1. Drag a Base Job or Base Page onto the **Versioning** icon.



Or, right-click the Base Job or Base Page and select **Versioning** from the popup menu; the Versioning window displays.



2. Set the parameters as required, and click **OK** to generate the merged versions.

Note: If the Versioning option was not opened (via Licensing), the related message appears and the versioning process is not carried out (although the set parameters are kept for the next time the window is opened).
If you try to close the Versioning window while the names of files do not follow the required conventions, the system prompts accordingly.

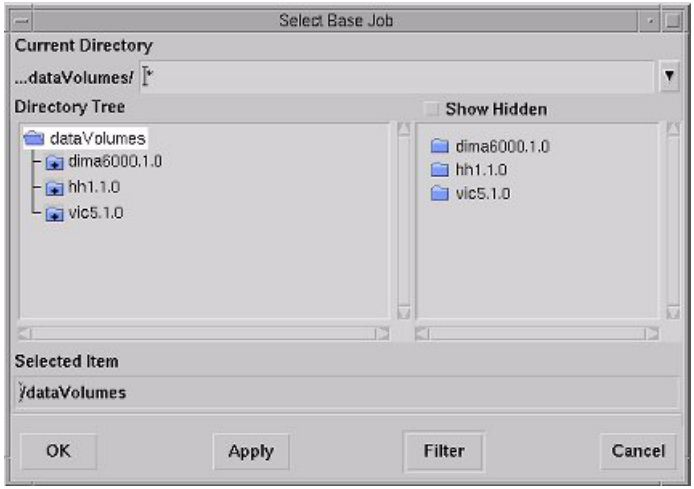
To set the Versioning parameters:

Note: If you dragged a Base Job (or Page) onto the **Versioning** icon, skip to step #2.

1. Click **Job View** to switch to Job View mode, or **Page View** to switch to Page View mode.

   Note: You cannot switch from Page View mode back to Job View mode if: The listed Pages originate from more than one Base Job, some of the Pages of a multi-page Job were not added, a version separation was added from the Base.

2. Click Select... to select the Base Job(s) (in Job View mode) or the Base Page(s) (in Page View mode); the following window displays (in Page View mode, a similar window appears).



3. Access the relevant path, select the relevant Job(s) (for example, 05_10E_bs.job) or Page(s), and click **OK**; the Versioning window reappears.
   In Job View mode, the name of the selected Base Job is indicated in

Job Name and its path in Job Path. In Page View mode, the name of the selected Base Page is indicated in the Name column and its path in the Path column.

4. Click **Sep. Version** to mark separations defined as spot colors within the Base Job (or Page) as versions; the Base Separations window displays.



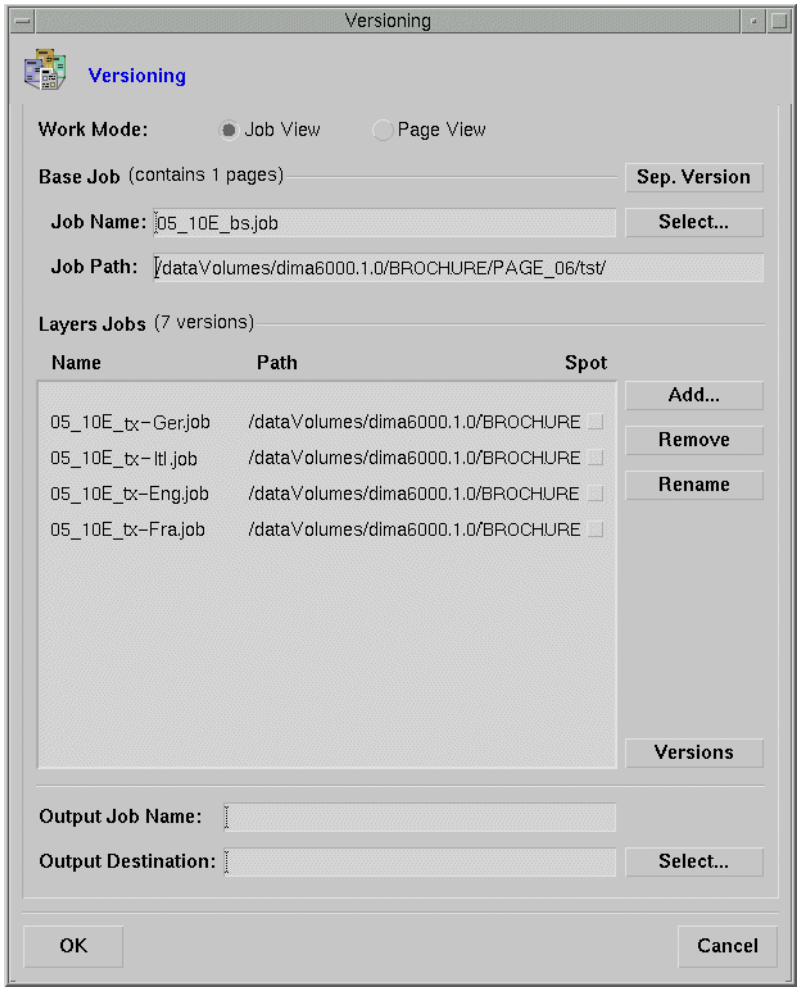
5. Select the check box of each separation that you want to be handled as a version (for example, PANTONE 296 CV); the Versioning window re-displays, listing the selected separations as Layer Jobs (or Pages).

6. Click **Add...** to associate version Jobs (or Pages) with the Base Job (or Page).
In the window that displays, access the relevant path, and select one or several version Jobs or Pages (alternatively, click **All** to select the entire list).
If required, select one or several items and click Remove to remove these items from the list.

7. Click **OK**; the Versioning window re-displays, listing the selected Jobs as Layer Jobs (or the selected Pages as Layer Pages).

Note: Only a short path is indicated for each item; holding the mouse over the name of a Job and clicking the right mouse button displays its full path.

The following figure shows a sample window in Job View mode.



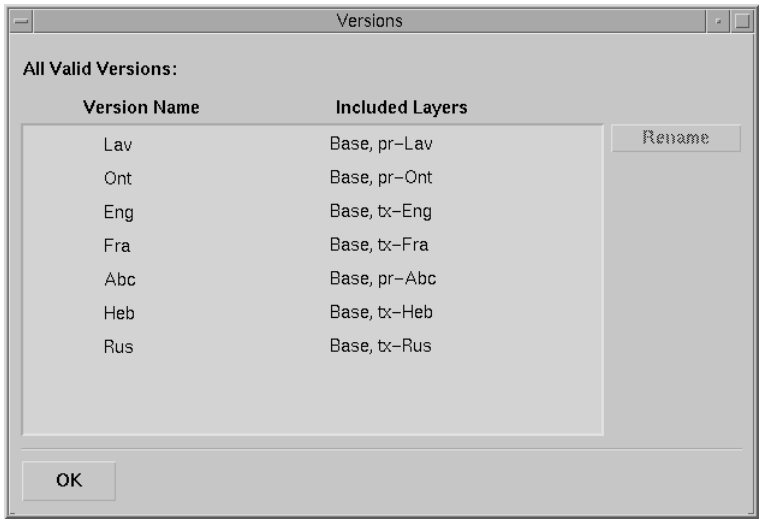
The following figure shows a sample window in Page View mode.



8. If required, select one or several items and click **Remove** to remove these items from the list.

9. Select the Spot check box for every version Job (or Page) that should be output as a version spot. In such a case, the variable separation is handled as any regular spot separation (it will not be merged with the process separation in the Base Job or Base Page).

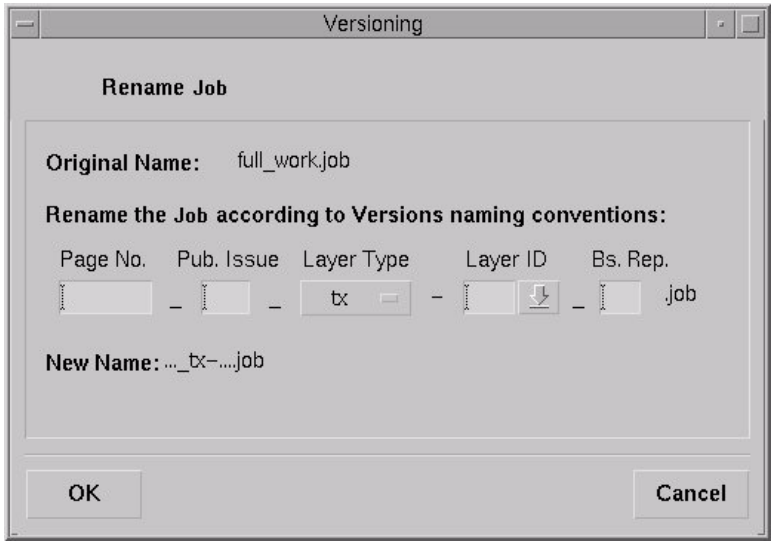
10. Click **Versions** to preview the list of versions that will be generated after you click **OK** on the Versioning window; the following window appears.



The Version Name column lists the LayerID of a version or the name of its file. The Included Layers column lists the layers to be contained in the final version.

11. Click **OK**.

12. If required, select a listed Layer Job (or Page) and click Rename; the following window displays.



Note: If you try to close the Versioning window while the names of files do not follow the required conventions, the system prompts accordingly.

13. Enter the required parameters to compose a new name, and click **OK**. (Refer to *Using Naming Conventions* on page 404).

Note: Renaming a multi-paged Job automatically renames all its pages; renaming a page automatically renames all the pages in the same Job and also the name of the Job itself.

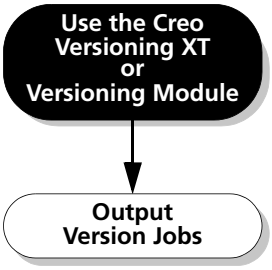
14. On the Versioning window, in **Output Job Name** box, you can enter a different name for the output of the versioning process (the name of the version).

Note: As default, the name of the Base Job is used. If several Base Jobs are listed in the window, the name of the first one is used. Additional output Jobs are generated in case of Base replacement, based on the names of the variable Base Jobs.

15. Click Select... next to the **Output destination** box to specify a destination for the output of the versioning process.

Note: If you keep the original name of the Base Job (or Base Page) and its destination, the suffix _ver is added to the merged file name (for example, **filename_ver.job**).

Outputting Version Jobs



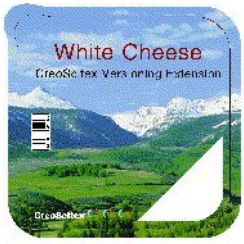
Versioning is supported by the following output operations:

- **Preview** – you can toggle to preview the various versions.
- **FAF** – the version separations are automatically ignored in the Full Auto Frame processing.
- **Proof** – in Automatic mode, each proof contains the Base and one version. In Manual mode, you may decide which versions to proof (and whether to include the Base).
- **Improof** – supports the same functionality as Proof, except for Misalignment Check.
- **Expose** – outputs the Base separations, while one of them is merged on the fly with the variable separations.
- **Plate Expose** – supports the same functionality as Expose.

Preview

1. Drag the Job onto the **Preview** icon; the Preview window displays. The **Sep** tab lists the separations of the Base and the separations of the first version (for example, the English version). The preview section displays the data of the related version.





2. Select or clear the separation check boxes to refresh the preview accordingly.

Note: Selecting a version separation automatically selects all the separations of the version.

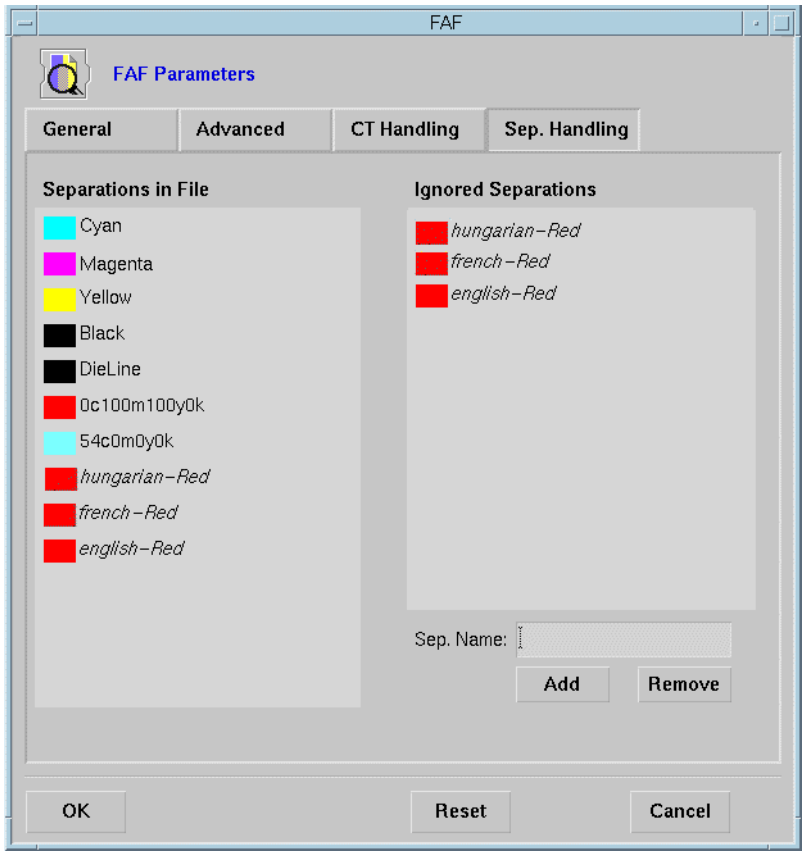
3. To switch to another version (for example, the French version), select its name from the **Version** menu; the **Sep.** tab refreshes to list the separations of the selected version and the preview section displays the related version.





FAF

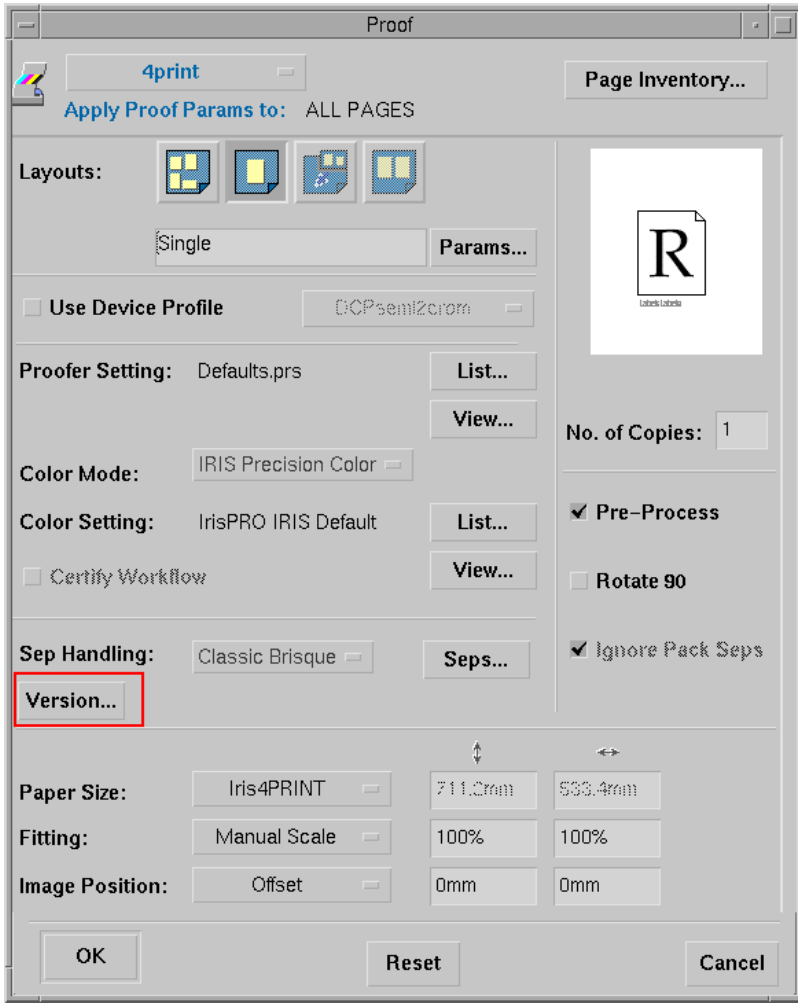
1. Drag the Job onto the **FAF** icon; the FAF window displays.
2. Click the **Sep. Handling** tab; the Separations in File column lists all the separations of the Job (Base and versions). Since only Base data is trapped, the version separations are automatically listed under the Ignore Separations column (they will not be trapped).



3. Click **OK**.

Proof

1. Drag the Job onto the **Proof** icon; the Proof window displays.

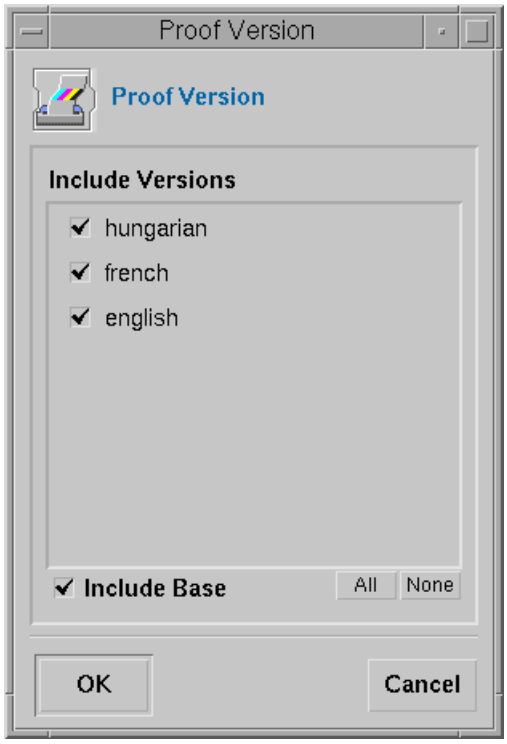


In Automatic mode, each proof contains the Base and one version (the 1st proof contains the Base + version n_1, the 2nd contains the Base + version n_2, and so on until n proofs are generated).

2. Click **OK** to use Automatic mode or switch to Manual mode.

To switch to Manual mode:

1. Click **Version...**; the Proof Version window displays.



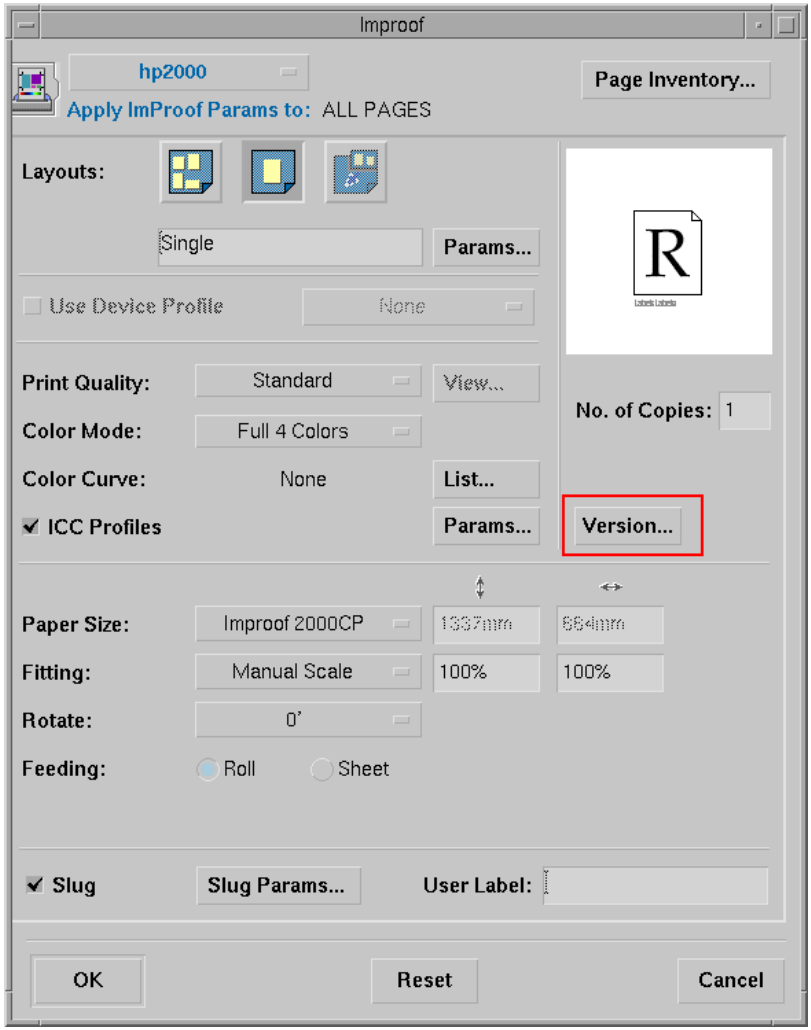
   The names of all the versions in the Job are listed and their check boxes are selected.

2. Clear the check boxes of versions that you decide not to proof (if required, click **All** or **None** accordingly).

3. Clear **Include Base** check box, if you want to proof versions without proofing the Base.

Improof

1. Drag the Job onto the **Improof** icon; the Improof window displays.

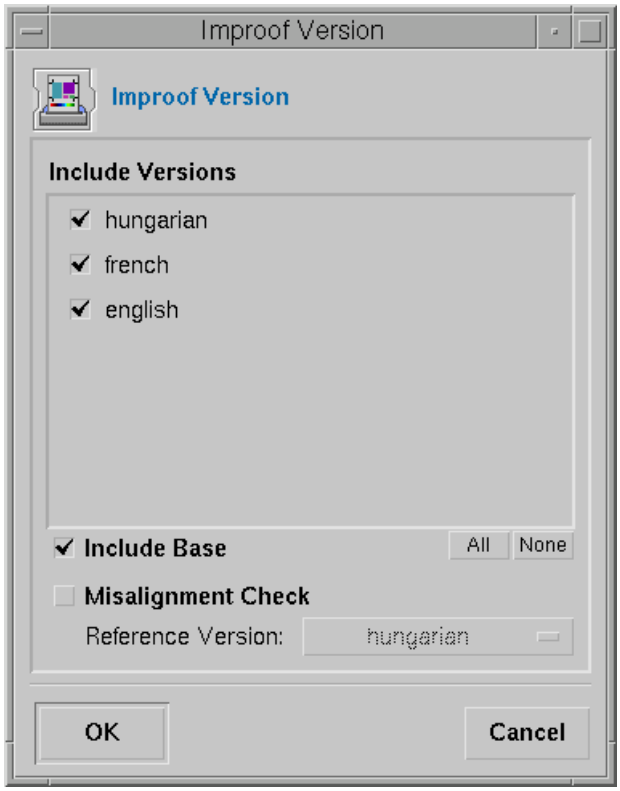


In Automatic mode, each proof contains the Base and one version (the 1st proof contains the Base + version n_1, the 2nd contains the Base + version n_2, and so on until n proofs are generated).

2. Click **OK** or switch to Manual mode.

To switch to Manual mode:

1. Click **Version...**; the Improof Version window displays.

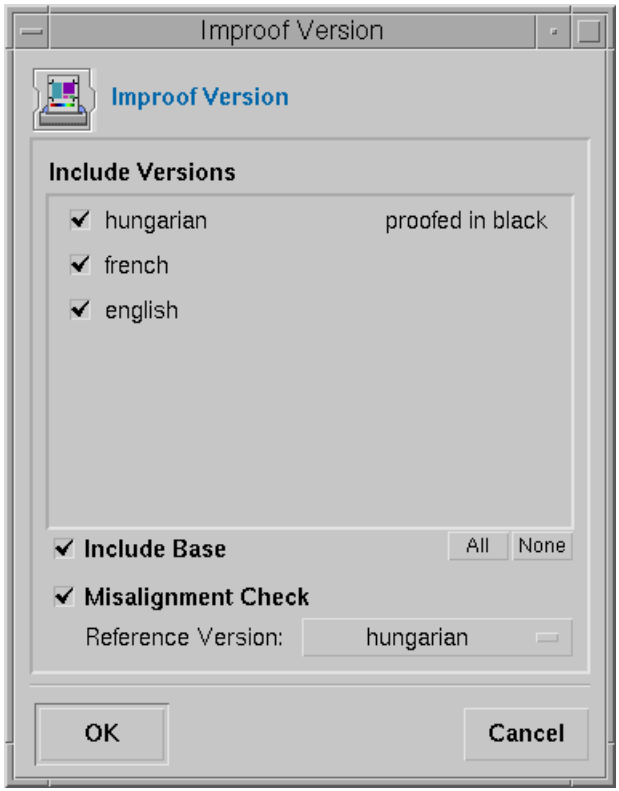


   The names of all the versions in the Job are listed and their check boxes are selected.

2. Clear the check boxes of versions that you decide not to proof (if required, click **All** or **None** accordingly).

3. Clear the **Include Base** check box if you want to proof versions without proofing the Base.

4. Select the **Misalignment Check** check box to proof versions one on top of the other, in order to check misalignment; the **Reference Version** list box is enabled.



5. Select the reference version (the version to which to compare the other versions). This version will be proofed in black (as indicated on the window). Other versions (that are selected on the window) will be proofed as C, M, and Y (up to 4 versions per proof).

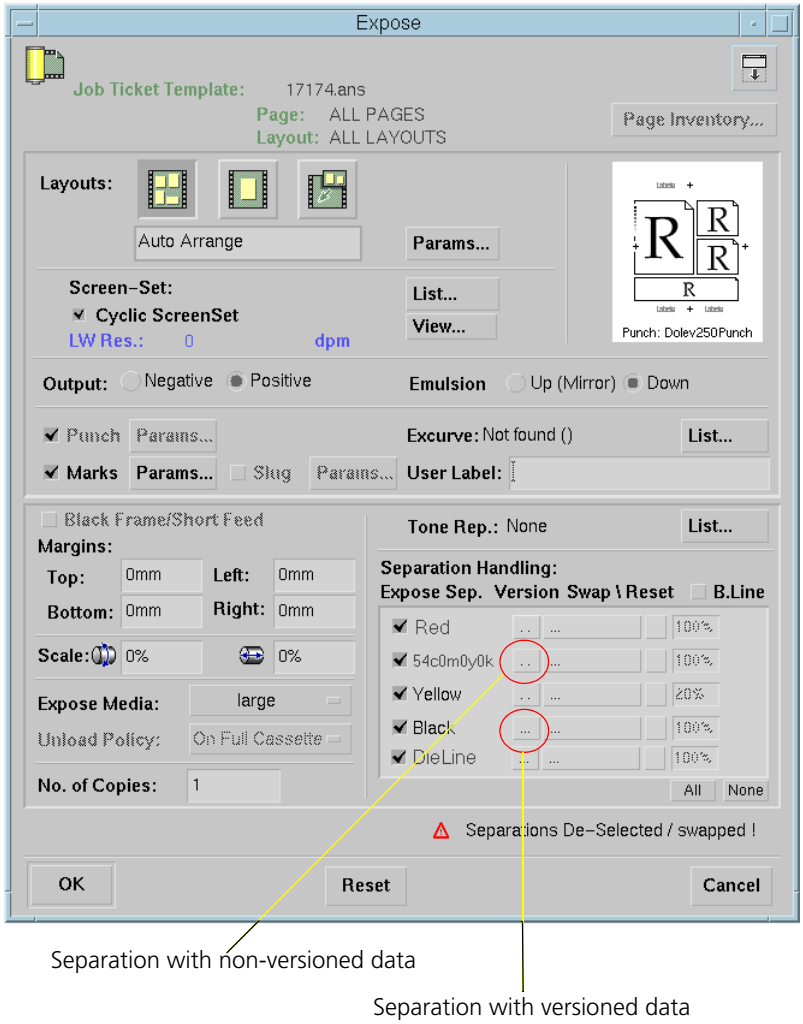
Note: The Base will be proofed as a gray separation in the background (if **Include Base** is selected on the window).

Expose

1. Drag the Job onto the **Expose** icon; the Expose window displays. The Separation Handling section lists all the Base separations.



Note: If a version separation was set to be a spot but is not part of the Base, it is listed as well.



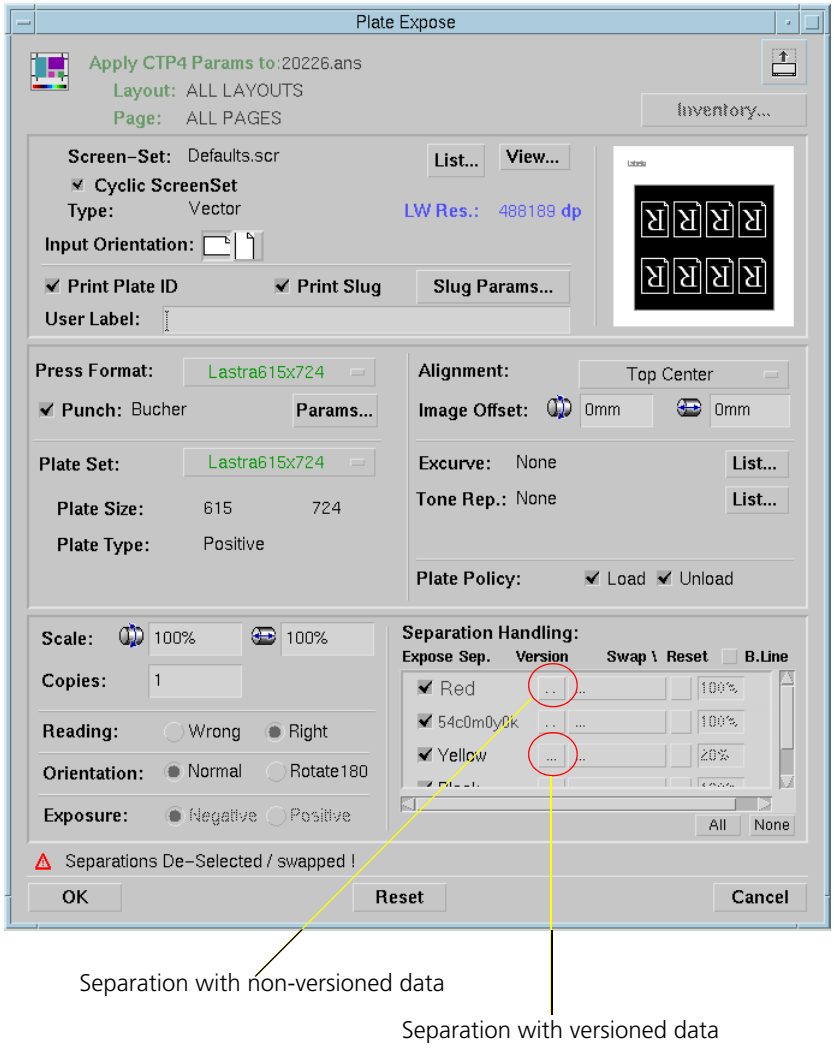
2. Click ... next to the Base separation to set which variable separations you want to merge (on the fly) with this Base separation (for example, in this case, Red is a spot separation in the Base); the Merge With window displays, listing all the versions.



3. Select or clear the names of versions whose separations (in this case, Red) you want to merge with the Base separation.

Plate Expose

1. Drag the Job onto the **PlateExp** icon; the Plate Expose window displays. The Separation Handling section lists all the Base separations.



2. Click the ... next to the Base separation to set which variable separations you want to merge (on the fly) with this Base separation; the Merge With window displays, listing all versions.



3. Select or clear the names of versions whose separations (in this case, Red) you want to merge with the Base separation.